MECHANICAL DENTISTRY.

A

PRACTICAL TREATISE

ON

MECHANICAL DENTISTRY.

BY

JOSEPH RICHARDSON, D. D. S., M. D.,

PROFESSOR OF MECHANICAL DENTISTRY IN THE OHIO COLLEGE OF DENTAL SURGERY.

WITH

ONE HUNDRED AND TEN ILLUSTRATIONS.

PHILADELPHIA:
LINDSAY & BLAKISTON.
1860.

PRINTED BY HENRY B. ASHMEAD.

TO

JAMES TAYLOR, M. D., D. D. S.,

PROFESSOR OF THE INSTITUTES OF DENTAL SCIENCE IN THE OHIO COLLEGE OF DENTAL SURGERY,

AS AN

ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PROFESSIONAL EMINENCE AND PRIVATE WORTH,

This Volume is gratefully inscribed,

BY

HIS FRIEND AND FORMER PUPIL,

THE AUTHOR.

PREFACE.

In the preparation of the following Treatise, the author has endeavored to present, in as concise and methodical a form as possible, the material facts and principles which relate to the Mechanical Department of Dental Practice in its present advanced condition. In the accomplishment of this undertaking, the primary and leading purpose has been to furnish the Student and more inexperienced Practitioner with a Practical Guide to the manipulations of the laboratory, with accompanying elucidations of the Elementary Principles which underlie the practice of this important specialty. In furtherance of this design, all matters, discussions and commentaries not strictly material, have been carefully excluded.

The arrangement and treatment of the various subjects embraced, are such, it is believed, as will best facilitate the student in the acquisition of a knowledge of the department alluded to, and the practitioner in the intelligent and successful conduction of the manipulations which appertain to this branch of Practical Dentistry.

In the belief that these objects have been mainly accomplished, the work is respectfully submitted to the profession.

J. Richardson.

Cincinnati, October 1, 1860.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER VI.

CHAPTER VII.

CHAPTER VIII.

CHAPTER IX.

CHAPTER X.

PART SECOND.

ARTIFICIAL DENTURES.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER XI.

CHAPTER XII.

CHAPTER XIII.

CHAPTER XIV.

CHAPTER XV.

CHAPTER XVI.

CHAPTER XVII.

MECHANICAL DENTISTRY.

PART FIRST.

METALS EMPLOYED IN DENTAL LABORATORY OPERATIONS, WITH PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS ON THE DIFFERENT MODES OF APPLYING HEAT.

CHAPTER I.

DIFFERENT MODES OF APPLYING HEAT.

The application of heat to the various mechanical processes of the dental laboratory would seem to require a brief description of some of the agencies employed for the purpose. As full a description of the appliances used will be introduced as is compatible with the scope of the present work.

BLOWPIPE.

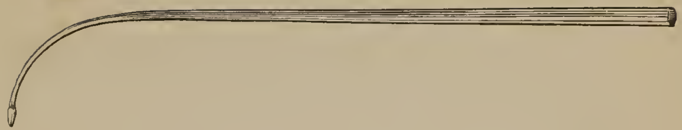
Various modifications in the form of the blowpipe have been introduced from time to time, and are named according to the means used to produce the blast, as, *Mouth*, *Bellows*, *Self-acting* or *Spirit*, and *Hydrostatic* Blowpipe.

In addition to the varieties mentioned, there are others used in producing extreme degrees of heat, as the "*oxygen blowpipe*" with which the flame is blown with a jet of oxygen; and another, with which the two gases, oxygen and hydrogen, are burned, called the "*oxy-hydrogen blowpipe.*" The latter is capable of producing a heat that immediately fuses the most refractory substances, as quartz, flint, rock-crystal, plumbago, &c. With it, gold is volatilized, and iron rapidly consumed when placed in the flame; while platinum, next to iridium, the most infusible of all known metals, has been melted in quantities exceeding one hundred ounces by means of this powerful instrument. As, however, these blowpipes are of no special practical utility in the dental laboratory, any further reference to them will be omitted.

Mouth Blowpipe.—This instrument has been long in use, is simple in its form and construction, and, for general use in the application of moderate degrees of heat, is both convenient and economical. Those accustomed to its use are enabled to produce a continuous blast of considerable force, and soon acquire the facility of regulating the heat produced with equal if not greater precision than can be readily attained in the use of either of the other varieties mentioned.

The most simple form of the mouth blowpipe is shown in Fig. 1. It consists usually of a plain tube of brass, larger at the end applied to the mouth, and tapering

Fig. 1.

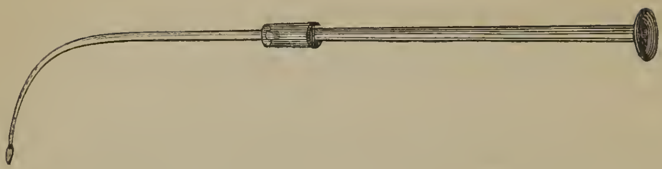


gradually to a point at its other extremity, the latter being curved and tipped at the point with a conical-shaped, raised margin to protect it from the action of the flame: the calibre of the instrument terminates here in a very small orifice. The point of the instrument, as well as that part of it received into the mouth, is sometimes plated with a less oxydable metal than brass, as silver or platinum. The stem is generally from twelve to twenty inches in length, and the mouth extremity from one-half to three-fourths of an inch in diameter.

In operations requiring protracted blowing, a somewhat different form of the instrument will be required, owing to the accumulation of moisture within the tube, which, being forcibly expelled from the orifice, spirts upon whatever is being heated and interrupts the blast; also, on account of the fatigue which in process of time renders the muscles of the mouth and face engaged in the act to a great extent powerless.

The difficulties mentioned may be obviated in a great measure, by employing the form of blowpipe represented in Fig. 2. To the mouth extremity is attached a circular concave flange or collar which receives and supports the lips. To the shaft, near its curved extremity, is

Fig. 2.



adjusted either a spherical or cylindrical chamber, which collects and retains the moisture as it forms within the pipe. By allowing that part of the tube connected with the curved end to pass part way into the chamber, a basin is formed at the depending portion of the latter, which, by collecting the fluids, will effectually prevent them from overflowing and passing into the tube beyond.

There are other modifications of the mouth blowpipe somewhat allied in form to the one last described, but as they are constructed more especially for chemical examinations or analyses, and as they possess no advantages for dental purposes over those already mentioned, a description of them is not deemed necessary.

Mechanism involved in the act of producing a continuous blast with the mouth blowpipe.—As a steady, continuous current of air from the blowpipe is preferable to the interrupted jet, in all those operations where it is desired to produce a steadily augmenting heat, the following remarks, explanatory of the method of producing it, are subjoined in the belief that they will render easier a process not always readily acquired.

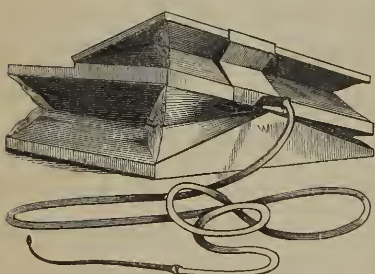
"The tongue must be applied to the roof of the mouth, so as to interrupt the communication between the pas-

sage of the nostrils and the mouth. The operator now fills his mouth with air, which is to be passed through the pipe by compressing the muscles of the cheeks, while he breathes through the nostrils, and uses the palate as a valve. When the mouth becomes nearly empty, it is replenished by the lungs in an instant, while the tongue is momentarily withdrawn from the roof of the mouth. The stream of air can be continued for a long time without the least fatigue or injury to the lungs. The easier way for the student to accustom himself to the use of the blowpipe, is first to learn to fill the mouth with air, and while the lips are kept firmly closed to breathe freely through the nostrils. Having effected this much, he may introduce the mouth-piece of the blowpipe between his lips. By inflating the cheeks, and breathing through the nostrils, he will soon learn to use the instrument without the least fatigue. The air is forced through the tube against the flame by the action of the muscles of the cheek, while he continues to breathe without interruption through the nostrils. Having become acquainted with this process, it only requires some practice to produce a steady jet of flame. A defect in the nature of the combustible used, as bad oil, such as fish oil, or oil thickened by long standing or by dirt, dirty cotton wick, or an untrimmed one, or a dirty wick-holder, or a want of steadiness of the hand that holds the blowpipe, will prevent a steady jet of flame. But, frequently, the fault lies in the orifice of the jet, or too

small a hole, or its partial stoppage by dirt, which will prevent a steady jet of air and lead to difficulty. With a good blowpipe, the air projects the entire flame, forming a horizontal, blue cone of flame, which converges to a point at about an inch from the wick, with a larger, longer, and more luminous flame enveloping it, and terminating to a point beyond that of the blue flame."*

Bellows Blowpipe.—This form of blowpipe, although superseded in a great degree by other modifications more recently introduced, is well adapted to all the minor operations of the shop, provided it is so constructed as to produce a continuous and equable current of air. A very efficient form of this apparatus, contrived by Drs. McDaniels and Roudebush, is exhibited in Fig. 3. It consists of three distinct chambers; two lower ones, separated from each other in the center, and one above, communicating by valvular openings with the former. The basement boards of the lower compartments are accurately joined to each other in the centre with an inclination like that of an ordinary roof; are each about six inches square and have apertures in the centre with valves opening upward. The upper borders of these chambers are formed

Fig. 3.



* "The Practical use of the Blowpipe." Anon.

by the treadle or foot-board, consisting of a plain board, equal in length and breadth to both chambers, and adjusted by means of hinges to the basement pieces where they unite in the middle;—strips of India rubber cloth being glued along the joints on either side to prevent the escape of air from one chamber into the other. The upper chamber is formed from a strip of board of equal length and half the breadth of the treadle, the ends and sides being closed, as also the lower apartments, with pieces of leather so arranged as to admit of expansion and closure of the air chambers. The lower chambers communicate with the upper or receiving chamber by means of an aperture in the top of each of the former with valves opening into the receiver. The moveable top of the upper chamber should be bound down with compressed spiral wires arranged internally, or by strips of India rubber tacked to the borders of the chamber externally so that when the lid of the latter is forced open by the injection of air from the lower chambers, a steady compression of the contained air will be made, forcing it with a steady and continuous impulse into the rubber tube connected with the receiver; the *force* of the current being regulated by the power exerted in depressing either end of the treadle with the foot.

The *modus operandi* of this blowpipe when in use is briefly as follows: One end of the treadle being forced down, the contained air of the corresponding chamber underneath is urged through the valvular opening above

into the receiver, while the air at the same time rushes in through the opening in the bottom of the opposite chamber, filling the latter: the other end of the treadle being pressed down, the air in the chamber below is, in like manner, also thrown into the receiver through the opening on the same side above; thus, by an alternate action of the treadle, the receiving chamber is kept constantly replenished.

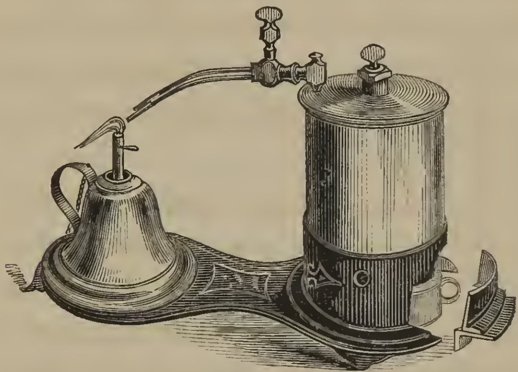
Self-acting or Spirit Blowpipe.—With this instrument the flame is blown with the vapor of boiling alcohol or whiskey. Several varieties have been introduced within the past few years, some of which are well adapted to dental laboratory operations, while others, owing to too great a complexity of mechanism in their construction, by which their action is rendered uncertain and liable to frequent and perplexing interruptions, have not been generally adopted; others, again, are regarded as too unsafe and inconvenient for laboratory uses.

One of the best implements of the kind, simple in its construction and design, and at the same time safe, convenient and manageable, is what is known as "Hollely's Self-acting or Spirit Blowpipe." A description of this apparatus will serve to convey a sufficiently distinct idea of the *principle* involved in the various modifications of the blowpipe under consideration.

The accompanying cut, Fig. 4, exhibits the different parts in their proper relation when in use. It consists of a cylindrical boiler, usually of brass, with a square-

capped safety valve on top, so arranged as not to admit of complete closure, thereby rendering an explosion of the boiler impossible. The pressure of the contained

FIG. 4.



vapor, and, by consequence, the power of the jet may be increased by turning the thumb-screw connected with the valve forward, and lessened by a reverse movement of the same. The valve fixture may be removed by unscrewing it, and alcohol introduced into the boiler through the opening; the latter being from one-half to two-thirds full when in use. To the top of the boiler near the side two pipes are attached communicating with the interior of the boiler, and which are provided with a gauge-cock, by which the operator is enabled, by a partial rotary movement of a thumb-screw, to control, somewhat, the force of the vapor current through the pipes, and also to transfer the jet from one pipe to the other, as he may desire a pointed or spreading flame; or a commingling jet from both pipes may be simultaneously pro-

duced whenever a very large and diverging flame is required.

A small alcohol lamp being lighted, is placed underneath the boiler, when, after the lapse of a few minutes, a current of vapor will be forcibly expelled from the orifices of the pipes, and may be directed against the flame of any of the lamps in common use for heating purposes.

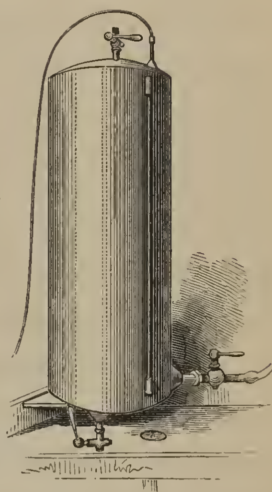
A blowpipe like the foregoing will be found serviceable in all operations requiring a protracted blast, and, in common with the bellows and hydrostatic blowpipes, will be found of especial service to those whose eyes and lungs are injuriously affected, as they sometimes are, by the use of the mouth blowpipe. It is also portable, as the various parts of which it is composed may be readily detached and packed within a small space.

Hydrostatic Blowpipe.—This blowpipe is of comparatively modern origin, and for many purposes in the dental laboratory is the best that has yet been introduced. With it, a constant, equable, and forcible current of air may be produced and maintained for a length of time equal to the capacity of the water-chamber; and for all operations requiring a high and steady heat it is invaluable.

Fig. 5 represents an apparatus of this kind, which is so simple and economical in its construction, that every dentist may, with little trouble and at a trifling cost, provide one for his laboratory.

By reference to the annexed illustration, it will be seen to consist of a tank or cylinder made of sheet-iron, zinc, or copper, of variable dimensions, usually, however, from four to six feet in length and from twelve to twenty inches in diameter. To the side of the cylinder near the bottom a pipe with faucet is attached, called the "supply pipe," and is designed to convey water to the tank; another is attached to the bottom, termed the "waste pipe," and is used to discharge the contained water. To the centre of the top of the cylinder is adjusted a stop-cock to freely admit the ingress of air when the water is being discharged, without which the sides of the cylinder would tend to collapse on the formation of a vacuum within. An India rubber tube is also united to the top of the cylinder on one side, and is attached at its other end either to an ordinary mouth blowpipe or gas jet.

FIG. 5.

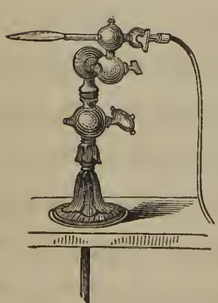


The water being admitted to the tank through the supply-pipe, the contained air is compressed and forcibly expelled through the air-tube and orifice of the blowpipe upon the flame; the force of the jet being regulated by the stop-cock connected with the supply-pipe. When the cylinder becomes filled, or partially so, the faucet on

top should be opened and the water drawn off through the discharging pipe. A small glass tube, communicating with the interior of the cylinder on one side near the bottom, extending up the side, and again entering the cylinder at the top, will be found useful as a guide to determine, at any time, the depth of water in the tank, the water in the tube maintaining the same level with that in the former.

Those unable to command the facilities afforded by water-power, may avail themselves of the following contrivance which combines mainly all the advantages of the blowpipe just described: A cylinder of the form mentioned, but with an open top, is partly filled with water, and another, similarly formed but inverted, or with its closed end above, is made to fit and slide into the first. Weights are then placed on the top of the inverted tank, when the air within the latter will be forcibly compressed and impelled, as in the other case, through an air-tube attached to its upper closed extremity.

Fig. 6.



The oil or alcohol lamp in common use will serve for either of these blowpipes, but a gas-jet, whenever it can be conveniently commanded, is preferable to either. Fig. 6 represents an improved apparatus employed in the application of the air-jet to the gas-flame.

A moveable gas-jet, attached to two short arms of an ordinary gas-pipe, is made to receive within it the blowpipe point connected with the rubber tube, the air-tube, terminating a little within the open mouth of the gas jet; it is thus a tube within a tube, with a space between them for the admission and passage of gas. The gas being admitted by turning the screw connected with gas-pipe, is ignited, and the current of air admitted from the rubber tube by turning a similar screw attached to the air-pipe, when the jet of air will strike the centre of the flame and project it upon the substance to be heated. The connected portions of the air and gas jets are so attached to the main pipe as to admit of an upward and downward motion, while the volume of gas and air is readily graduated by the stop-cocks attached to the former.

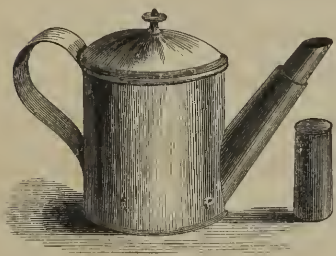
This arrangement is one of the most complete and efficient for blowpipe purposes that has yet been devised. The jet may be elevated or depressed at will, while the force of the air-current and the volume of gas-flame can as readily be increased or diminished. The operator is thus enabled, with the greatest ease, to produce a heat adapted to the most delicate operations, or to instantly change it to a heat so intense that pure gold in considerable quantities is almost immediately fused in the flame. It is, therefore, well adapted to all operations in the laboratory, but will be found of especial utility in the construction of work requiring pure gold as a solder.

LAMPS.

The lamps most commonly used by dentists in blowpipe manipulations are oil and spirit lamps.

Oil Lamp.—When oil is burned, the form of lamp represented in Fig. 7 may be used. It should hold from one to two pints, and should have a spout one inch or more where it joins the body of the lamp, tapering gradually to three-fourths of an inch at the top. The spout should be well filled with wick, but not so tightly as to prevent it from being freely saturated. The best combustible is pure sweet oil, but common lamp or lard oil is generally employed and answer every practical purpose. The wick should be kept well cleaned and trimmed, and fresh oil should be substituted whenever that in use becomes thickened by dirt or otherwise deteriorated.

Fig. 7.

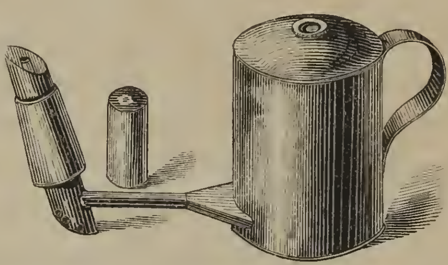


Spirit Lamp.—Alcohol is preferred by many on account of its greater cleanliness, although it does not afford so great a heat as oil. When spirit is employed a somewhat different form of lamp should be used. With one like that described for oil, there is danger of explosion in the event of the flame, mixed with air, communicating with the alcohol contained in the lamp, and which is more liable to happen when the spout is

but loosely filled with wick. To provide against such casualty, it is not unusual to pack the wick too closely, which, by obstructing the flow of alcohol into the spout, lessens the heat of the flame. The proximity of the flame, also, to the body of the lamp, produces undue waste of alcohol by evaporation.

The objections stated may be obviated by employing a lamp of the form shown in Fig. 8. With a lamp like that represented, the spirit is entirely uninfluenced by the heat of the flame, while explosion is rendered impossible. The centre of the upright portion of the spout is traversed by a small tube extending throughout and open at both ends to admit of the application of a jet of aïr to the lower orifice, impelling the flame from the centre and thereby intensifying the heat. Around this central tube the wick is arranged; the space occupied by the latter communicating with the body of the lamp through the horizontal arm of the spout.

Fig. 8.



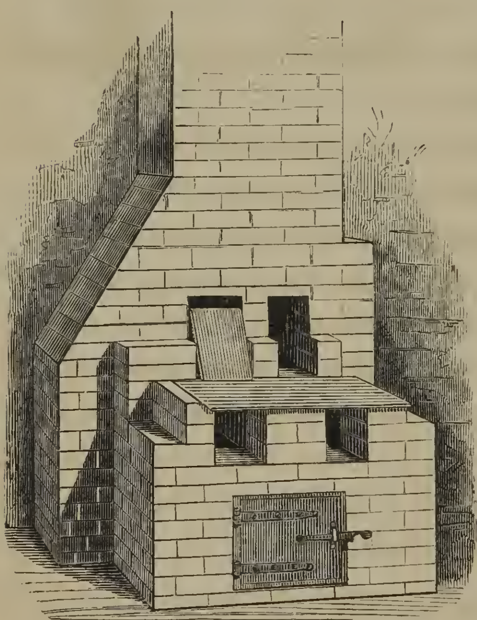
FURNACES.

It would be inconsistent with the design of the present work to introduce a description of any form of furnace other than those commonly used by the dentist. Those

used in the arts, or for chemical and pharmaceutical purposes, embrace almost endless varieties, and have no special adaptation to the uses required of them in the dental laboratory.

Draught or Wind Furnace.—A very convenient, portable and economical furnace may be made of sheet-iron, of any desired shape and dimensions, though usually of small size and cylindrical in form. A light grate, or heavy piece of sheet-iron perforated with holes to admit of the passage of air, should be adjusted near the bottom, while above and below the grate are two openings; the lower one communicating with the ash-pit, and the upper one for the introduction of fuel and substances to be heated. By surmounting this simple apparatus with a pipe, or connecting it with the flue of a chimney, it will be found efficient in many of the minor operations of the shop, as melting metals, heating pieces preparatory to soldering, annealing, &c.

Fig. 9.



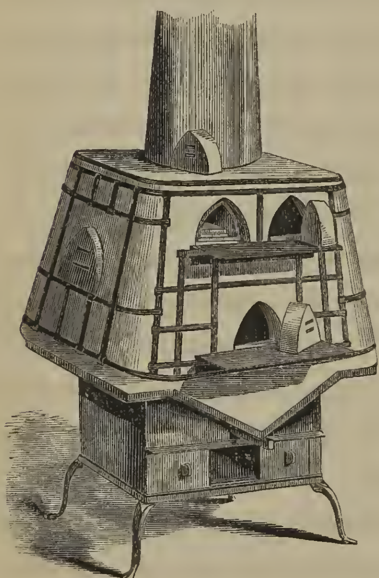
A more durable and serviceable draught furnace, however, may be built of masonry, a convenient form of which is represented in Fig. 9. The construction of this stationary fixture is so plainly exhibited in the cut, that any extended description of it is deemed unnecessary. The upper holes represent the entrance to the fire-chambers which are distinct from each other; the lower ones communicate with the ash-pit which is common to both chambers. Two fire apartments are here shown; one for melting and refining the more precious metals, heating up operations for soldering, &c.; the other being used exclusively for fusing the baser metals, as zinc, antimony, lead, &c. These furnaces are sometimes constructed with a single fire-chamber, but the one exhibited is, in every way, preferable.

Baking Furnace.—The chief purposes to which these furnaces are applied are, the manufacture of porcelain teeth, single and in sectional blocks; the preparation of silicious compounds; and the construction of what is known as "continuous gum work." The most recent and approved form of this furnace is exhibited in Fig. 10.

The body of the furnace rests upon a cast-iron framework or basement which serves the purpose of an ash-pit. The grate immediately over this inclines from each side of the furnace toward the bottom and centre of the ash-pit, to afford more ample room for fuel directly underneath the lower muffle. The upper portion or body of the furnace is made of fire-clay, and contains

three muffles arranged horizontally; the upper two, termed "annealing muffles," are designed, more especially, for drying substances, partial heating preparatory to final baking, and to receive substances from the lower muffle to be gradually cooled. The lower or main muffle is for general baking purposes requiring the employment of extreme degrees of heat. Each muffle is provided with fire-clay slabs or slides, on which substances to be heated are placed and introduced into the muffles; and also plugs of the same material to close the openings to the former. Openings are made on each side of the furnace, intermediate between the muffles, for the introduction of fuel, and to afford ready access to the latter with tongs or other implements. These entrances are also provided with plugs which are applied during the process of heating. This furnace should be connected with a flue having a strong and unobstructed draught.

Fig. 10.



FUEL.

Under this head are comprehended such combustible substances as are used for fires or furnaces, as *wood*, *coal*,

charcoal and *coke*. For dental furnace operations, only the latter two are, as a general thing, admissible.

Bituminous, or *pit-coal*, is unfit for the uses required of fuel by the dentist, and is, therefore, seldom used.

Anthracite coal, if carefully selected, may be employed, provided it is clean, free from slate, and does not yield a fusible ash. As charcoal and coke are the fuels chiefly used in the processes of the laboratory, these substances will be more particularly described.

Charcoal.—Charcoal is obtained by igniting wood and then excluding it from the air while burning; the volatile products are thus driven off while the carbon remains. When combustion has proceeded slowly for a certain length of time, the openings to the bed or mound are closed, and the wood allowed to char.

When it is desired to maintain a high heat in a small compass, the charcoal best adapted to the purpose is that obtained from what is termed *hard* wood, as the beech, the oak, the alder, the birch, the elm, etc. A cubic foot of charcoal derived from these woods weighs, upon an average, from twelve to thirteen pounds; while a similar bulk obtained from *soft* wood, as the fir, the different kinds of pine, the larch, the linden, the willow, and the poplar, averages only from eight to nine pounds.* There is, therefore, economy in the use of the former when purchased by the bulk; and of this class the beech-wood charcoal is the best, on account of its greater specific

* Ure.

gravity. The more heavy charcoals require a stronger draught than those of a lighter character, as a more generous supply of oxygen is necessary to their perfect combustion. Charcoal should be kept as dry as practicable, since it rapidly absorbs moisture from the atmosphere, by which its calorific energy is materially impaired.

Coke.—This substance, like charcoal, is a carbonaceous residuum obtained from pit-coal that has been exposed to ignition for some time excluded from the contact of air, the volatile products of the coal, like those of wood, having been driven off by the heat. Coke differs in appearance as well as in quality. The principal part of that obtained from gas-houses is of a dull, iron-black color, very spongy and friable, and is more rapidly consumed, and produces less heat than the harder and more compact kinds. The best coke for furnace use is that used by brassfounders, and has a steel-gray color with a somewhat metallic lustre; is compact in its structure, and splits into pieces having a longitudinal fracture.

Coke does not readily ignite, and, at first, generally requires the admixture of charcoal to effect its combustion; it also requires a strong draught to burn it, but when thoroughly ignited, it produces an intense and persistent heat. It is the principal fuel used in baking mineral teeth, porcelain blocks, and the silicious compounds employed in the fabrication of continuous gum work.

Professor Piggot, in his remarks on the comparative value of fuels, observes: "Practically, for the purposes of the chemist, the best fuel is charcoal or coke, or a mixture of the two. The ash of charcoal being infusible, it passes through the bars of the grate as a white powder. Should potash, however, be in large excess, it corrodes the bricks, by forming with them a silicate of potash, which runs down the walls and chokes the bars. In small quantities, this action is beneficial, as it furnishes a protective varnish, and unites the bricks and lutes, by forming a sort of cement, which intimately combines with them.

"Coke contains a very variable amount of ash, which is composed chiefly of oxide of iron and clay. The latter is not fusible by itself, but may soften. When pure, it forms a harmless slag, which injures neither the furnace nor the crucibles. Usually, however, the oxide of iron predominates. In this case the ash is very injurious, for it is reduced to a protoxide, which is not only fusible, but powerfully corrosive to all argillaceous matters, so that both the crucibles and furnaces suffer."*

In order that the greatest amount of heat may be evolved from these fuels, it is necessary that the conditions necessary to secure their perfect ignition should be strictly observed; these have reference to an unobstructed circulation of air that oxygen may be freely supplied to them. To this end the furnace should be

* Dental Chemistry and Metallurgy, p. 274.

kept clean, the bars of the grate unbroken, and a good draught obtained. The condition in which the fuel is applied will also modify the results: thus, for example, if the lumps are too large they will absorb heat, and caloric will be lost; if too small, they will be too rapidly consumed. It is essential, also, to have the fuel as free as possible from dust and dirt, as these fine particles, in any considerable quantities, obstruct the draught and prevent a thorough ignition of the mass. Coke, especially, should be preserved clean, and should be broken into fragments not larger than an inch or an inch and a half in diameter, and, as nearly as possible, in the form of blocks or cubes, as these leave more open spaces for the free circulation of air.

SUPPORTS.

There are many processes in the dental laboratory requiring the application of heat, for which a suitable holder or support should be provided. A very convenient form of holder used in soldering, may be made of a circular or semi-eliptical piece of heavy sheet-iron, the margin being serrated and turned at right-angles, forming a cup. To the under side and centre of this, an iron rod, ten or twelve inches long, may be permanently riveted; or it may be made to revolve on the handle, so that the heat may be thrown directly upon any particular part of the piece to be soldered without disturbing the latter.

A small *hand-furnace* is sometimes used, and will be found a very convenient and useful apparatus, not only for soldering, but for preparatory heating. It consists of a sheet-iron cylinder, three or four inches in diameter, and five or six inches deep, with a light grate or perforated plate of the same material adjusted near the bottom, and an opening on one side, underneath the grate, for the admission of air. The upper part of the cylinder is surmounted by a funnel-shaped top, which may be readily removed by a handle attached to it; while to the bottom of the furnace is attached an iron rod five or six inches long, and terminating in a wooden handle. The piece to be soldered is placed inside on a bed of charcoal, the top adjusted to its place, and the former ignited; when the operation is sufficiently heated, the top may be lifted off, and the piece remaining in the furnace, soldered with the blowpipe in the usual manner; the furnace thus serving the purpose of a holder.

A support in very common use consists simply of a large, close-grained piece of charcoal invested in plaster one-half or three-fourths of an inch thick, one end or side being left open and scooped out to receive whatever is being heated. Or a plaster cup two or three inches deep may be made, and its interior partly filled with a mixture of plaster, sand, asbestos, and pulverized charcoal.

CRUCIBLES.

Crucibles are small conical-shaped vessels used by the dentist principally for the purposes of melting and refining metals used for plates, compounding metallic alloys, preparing and compounding the various ingredients employed in the manufacture of porcelain teeth and continuous gum work, etc. They combine in a high degree the properties of infusibility, exemption from the attack of substances fused in them, the power of resisting sudden alternations of temperature, and impermeability to fluids and gases. The Hessian crucibles, which are in most common use among dentists, are composed of silica, alumina, and oxyd of iron. For a more particular description of the various components entering into the structure of crucibles, as well as the manner of manufacturing them, the reader is referred to Piggot's "Dental Chemistry and Metallurgy," and other works treating more fully of the subject.

CHAPTER II.

GOLD.

Gold has been known from a period of great antiquity, having, according to the writings of Moses, been wrought into articles of jewelry more than three thousand years ago. As a base or support for artificial dentures, it has entirely superseded the use of the various animal substances formerly employed, and, by the mass of practitioners at the present time, it continues to be the most highly esteemed metal for the purpose mentioned, notwithstanding the more recent introduction of approved processes in which, as a base, this metal is wholly discarded.

Gold is found only in the metallic state, and occurs either crystallized in the cube, and its allied forms, or in threads of various sizes, twisted and interlaced into a chain of minute octahedral crystals; also in spangles or roundish grains. These latter, when they occur of a certain magnitude, are called *pepitas*, some specimens of which have been obtained of great size. In 1810 a mass of alluvial gold weighing twenty-eight pounds was found in the gravel pits of the creeks of Rockhole, in North Carolina. A lump of gold ore weighing three cwt., was forwarded from Chili, South America, as a contribution

to the World's Exhibition in London. New Granada, California, Russia, and Australia, have each produced pepitas or masses of gold weighing respectively twenty seven and a half, twenty-eight, seventy, and one hundred and six pounds.

Geological Situations.—The crystalline primitive rocks, the compact transition rocks, the trachytic and trap rocks, and alluvial grounds, are the formations in which gold occurs. Unlike many other metals, it is never in such large quantities as to constitute veins by itself, but is either disseminated through the rocky masses, or spread out in thin plates or grains on their surface, or confined in their cavities in the shape of filaments or crystallized twigs. The minerals composing the veins are either quartz, calcspar, or sulphate of baryta. The ores associated with the gold in these veins are principally iron, copper, arsenical pyrites, galena, and blende. The most abundant sources of gold, however, are in alluvial grounds, where it is found distributed in the form of spangles in the sands of certain plains and rivers, especially at their re-entering angles, at the season of low water, and after storms and temporary floods. Sufficient reasons have been advanced in support of the belief that gold, found in alluvial situations, belongs to the grounds traversed by these rivers, instead of being washed, as was formerly supposed, from the mountains in which their waters have their origin.

Geographical Distributions.—The European mines,

more particularly distinguished for their richness, are in Hungary and Transylvania, especially the former. Gold also occurs, but more sparingly, in Ireland, Sweden, Siberia, Germany, Russia, and Spain. In *Asia* and *Africa*, the mines which yield most abundantly, are situated in the southern portions of these continents. From the latter, the ancients derived the greater portion of their gold. Several of the *South American* provinces yield this metal in considerable quantities. Washings are also common in several States of the Union, but California stands unrivaled, except by Australia, in the immense productiveness of its mines; and its resources in respect to this rare and valuable metal are reckoned inexhaustible.

Properties of Gold.—Pure gold is distinguished from all other metals by its brilliant orange-red or yellow color, being the only simple metal that possesses this complexion. It is susceptible of a high polish, but is inferior in brilliancy to steel, silver, or mercury. Its specific gravity varies somewhat, according as it is fused or hammered; the former having a density of 19·26; the latter ranging from 19·4 to 19·65. It is only excelled in density, therefore, by platinum, the specific gravity of which is 21·25.

Gold surpasses all other metals in malleability. The average thickness of ordinary gold leaf is $\frac{1}{282000}$ of an inch, but the ultimate degree of attenuation of which pure gold is susceptible, exceeds considerably this estimate.

It is also distinguished for its ductility. A single grain of gold may be drawn into wire 500 feet in length, while an ounce may be made to extend 1,300 miles. It is somewhat softer then silver, and possesses great tenacity, though inferior in this quality to iron, copper, platinum or silver. A thread of gold $\frac{78}{1000}$ of an inch in diameter will sustain a weight of 150 pounds. Gold fuses at 2016° with considerable expansion and, on cooling, contracts more than any other metal.

On account of the want of affinity of gold for oxygen, it remains unaltered in the longest exposure; is incapable of being oxydized in any heat that may be applied to it; and is only volatilized with great difficulty in the resistless heat of the oxy-hydrogen blowpipe. It is unaffected by the most concentrated of the simple acids, but is readily soluble in *aqua regia* or nitro-muriatic acid, and nitrofluoric acid.

It will thus be seen that gold possesses, in an eminent degree, those general properties which render it peculiarly fit for the purposes to which it is applied in the practice of dental prosthesis.

Influence of Alloying on the Properties of Gold.—The term *alloy* signifies a compound of any two or more metals, as brass, which is an alloy of copper and zinc.

Alloys, in respect to their uses, are practically new metals, and differ in many important respects, both in their chemical and physical characteristics, from the constituent metals of which they are composed. A more

particular account of the influence of alloying upon the general properties of metals, and their management and behavior in the process of compounding, will be given under the head of alloys of the baser metals. As gold combines readily with most metals, some of the more prominent conditions which distinguish its alloys will be given.

The *malleability* of gold is, strictly speaking, always impaired by its union with other metals. This effect is eminently characteristic of certain contaminations, as those with arsenic, tin, antimony, bismuth, lead, &c.; while with certain other metals, as silver, copper and platinum, unless in excess, this property of gold is so little affected, as in no material degree to interfere with its being worked into any desired form for dental purposes. The *ductility* of gold is also usually diminished by its incorporation with foreign metals; sometimes in a remarkable degree. Gold is always rendered *harder*, and its *tenacity* is generally increased, by alloying; while its *density* varies with the particular metal or metals with which it is combined. Thus, the alloy of gold with either zinc, tin, bismuth, antimony or cobalt, has a density greater than that of the mean of its constituents; while the alloys of gold having a less specific gravity than the mean of their components are those with silver, iron, lead, copper, iridium or nickel. Gold is ordinarily more *fusible* when alloyed; the alloy always melting at a less heat than that required to fuse the most refractory constituent, and oftentimes less than the more

fusible component. The alloy of gold and platinum furnishes an example of the former; the platinum, which in its uncombined state is infusible in the highest heat of a blast furnace, forming a fusible compound with gold, the melting point of which is far below that of platinum. Gold solder, composed of gold, copper and silver, affords a familiar illustration of the latter; the alloy melting at a less heat than that required to fuse its least refractory component, silver. Gold, which in its pure state has less affinity for oxygen than any other metal, is rendered more or less oxydable when combined with other metals.

That gold alloys tend to be formed in definite proportions of their constituents would appear from the phenomenon observed in the native gold of the auriferous sands, which is an alloy with silver in the ratio of 1 atom of silver, united to 4, 5, 6, 12 atoms of gold, but never with a fractional part of an atom. The same circumstance is noticed in connection with the amalgam of silver and mercury. But as alloys are generally soluble in each other, the definiteness of this atomic combination is obscured and disappears in most cases.

Properties of Particular Alloys of Gold.—The metals with which gold is liable to become contaminated in the dental laboratory are zinc, tin, lead, antimony, bismuth, iron or steel, mercury and arsenic; as also excess of silver, copper and platinum. As several of these metals when alloyed with gold, even in very minute quantities, are highly destructive in their influence upon those properties which adapt this metal to the various wants

of the mechanical operator, and as their separation is often attended with considerable difficulty, annoyance and loss of time, it is practically important that care should be taken to prevent, as far as practicable, the admixture of any one or more of them with the gold scrap, filings or sweepings, which are to be re-converted into proper forms for use. The accidental intrusion of these metals, however, is, to some extent, unavoidable, and as an acquaintance with the more prominent characteristics or sensible properties of the resulting alloys sometimes furnishes valuable indications in the selection of the proper re-agents employed in their purification, a description of individual alloys is introduced.

Tin, *antimony*, *bismuth*, *lead* and *arsenic* are peculiarly prominent in their effects upon the malleability of gold; either of these metals in exceedingly minute quantities rendering gold intractable.

One part of *antimony* with nine of gold, forms a pale, brittle alloy, and in the proportion of one part of the former to 1920 of gold, the resulting compound is too brittle to admit of successful lamination.

An alloy of *arsenic* with gold containing $\frac{1}{240}$ of the former is a gray brittle metal; while in the proportion of $\frac{1}{900}$, the malleability of the gold is seriously impaired without suffering any change of color. So energetic is the influence of this metal on gold that the latter is rendered brittle when subjected even to the vapor of arsenic.

Tin, *lead* and *bismuth* are somewhat analogous to

arsenic in their influence upon the malleability of gold, either of them, in almost inappreciable quantities, rendering the latter metal unmanageable under the rollers. One part of lead or bismuth to 1920 of gold converts the latter into an unmalleable metal; while tin exceeds either in its remarkable tendency to render gold hard and brittle. Alloys of gold with tin are of a light color; those with lead are of a darker complexion.

Zinc with gold forms a brittle alloy, and when combined in equal proportions, is exceedingly hard, white, and brittle. Uniting or incorporating itself less intimately with the gold than either lead or tin, however, it not unfrequently happens that portions of the ingot will be brittle while others remain, in some degree, malleable; so that the bar, when rolled out in the form of plate, will be perforated or cracked at those points where the zinc preponderates, while remaining portions of the plate retain a moderate degree of softness and pliability.

The working properties of gold are not sensibly affected by the incorporation of very small quantities of *iron*, as an alloy of these metals, in the proportion of one part of the latter to eleven of gold, remains malleable.

Platinum, in itself a highly refractory metal, is, as before stated, rendered fusible in combination with other metals. When combined with gold in small proportions, the latter is rendered harder and more elastic without having its malleability practically impaired. Platinum very readily affects the color of gold, the smallest quantities rendering the alloy pale and dull-colored.

Silver unites with gold in every proportion, and is the chief metal employed in the reduction of gold to the required forms for dental uses. It renders gold more fusible, and imparts to it increased hardness without materially affecting its malleability. The alloy is light colored in proportion to the amount of silver introduced.

Copper, like silver, is usually combined with gold in the formation of plate, solders, etc., and hardens and renders gold tougher without practically impairing its malleability. It imparts to the alloy a deeper red color, and in the form of plate is capable of receiving a polish excelling in richness and brilliancy any other metal.

The foregoing alloys of gold, it will be perceived, are such as result from the incorporation with gold of minute proportions of any one of the base metals mentioned, and possess certain physical characteristics that indicate, with tolerable certainty, the particular alloying component. Thus, for example, if the alloy is light-colored and very brittle, the presence of tin may be suspected; if brittle and dull-colored, lead is indicated; if grayish or dull-colored, but still malleable, tough and elastic, platinum is probably present; if unequally malleable, or brittle in spots, the presence of zinc may be inferred.

Alloys of gold, however, embracing several or all of these metals in varying proportions, are sometimes accidentally formed, in which case the more distinctive features which characterize the binary compounds are lost or obscured.

CHAPTER III.

REFINING GOLD.

Elements Employed.—The separation of foreign metals from gold by what is termed the "dry method," or *roasting*, is effected by the action on them of either oxygen, chlorine, or sulphur, converting them into oxyds, chlorides, or sulphurets. Certain compound substances are used for this purpose which, when heated and decomposed, yield these elements in sufficient quantities for the purposes specified. The refining agents in common use are *nitrate of potassa*, (nitre, or salt-petre,) which yields oxygen; *chloride of mercury*, (corrosive sublimate,) which yields chlorine; and *sulphuret of antimony*, (crude antimony,) which yields sulphur. Other compounds contain these elements, but those mentioned are generally preferred, because they contain them abundantly, are readily decomposed by heat, and do not materially interfere with the process of separation by the introduction of troublesome components into the alloy.

Before considering specifically the different modes of refining alloys of gold, it will be convenient to classify the different forms of gold as they occur in working this metal in the laboratory.

1. Plate-scrap or clippings, and plate-filings. These,

if proper care is taken to prevent the introduction of fragments of platinum, impure filings, or particles of base metals, only require, provided they were originally of suitable fineness, to be re-melted and again converted into plate or other forms for use.

2. Mixed filings, and fragments containing solder, platinum, etc. These, when melted alone, produce an alloy more or less impoverished in proportion to the quantity and quality of the foreign metals introduced in finishing pieces constructed of gold, and should be either separately refined by roasting, or reduced to pure gold by the "humid method," to be described hereafter.

3. Sweepings. This form embraces many impurities, earthy and metallic, and should first be thoroughly washed to remove the earthy constituents, after which the remaining metals may either be mixed with class second, or separately refined.

It is evident from the above classification that much time and labor may be saved by preserving these forms of gold separately as they accumulate in the shop. Separate lap-skins or receptacles, therefore, should be appropriated to the working of gold, one to receive scrap and unmixed plate-filings which may be re-converted into plate without refining; another to collect solder-filings, and such impure fragments as require purification.

Separation of foreign metals from gold.—The most troublesome ingredients which find their way into gold alloys are what are commonly called *base* metals, as tin,

lead, zinc, iron, antimony, bismuth, etc. In attempting to separate these metals from gold, it is not a matter of indifference what re-agent is employed, inasmuch as distinct affinities exist which may be advantageously consulted. If, for example, zinc or iron, or both of these metals are present in small quantities, any compound which yields oxygen will, by virtue of the affinity of the latter for these metals, effect their separation by converting them into oxyds; hence, when these metals are to be got rid of, nitrate of potassa is employed. But oxygen has but a feeble affinity for tin, and when this metal is present, its separation is better effected by some compound which parts with chlorine in the act of decomposition; chloride of mercury is therefore used for the purpose. When the alloy of gold contains a number of these metals at the same time, and is very coarse, sulphuret of antimony, which is a powerful and efficient re-agent, should be resorted to, unless the operator should prefer, and which is the better way, to reduce the alloy to pure gold by the "humid method."

After all traces of iron or steel have been removed from the gold fragments and filings by passing a magnet repeatedly through them, the latter should be placed in a clean crucible, lined on the inside with borax, and covered either with a piece of fire-clay slab, or broken crucible. Sheet-iron has been recommended for the latter purpose, but should never be used, as, when highly heated, scales form on the surface, and are liable to drop

in upon the fused metals. If the operation of roasting is likely to be protracted, an inverted crucible, with a hole in the bottom, may be securely luted to the top of the one containing the metals; the refining agents and fluxes being introduced through the opening in the upper crucible. These are then placed in the furnace on a bed of charcoal, or what is better, a mixture of charcoal and coke; the latter being built up around the crucible, and over it when covered with a second crucible; care being taken that no fragments of fuel are permitted to fall in upon the fused metals. Small portions of borax may first be added, and when the metals are fluid, the refining agents may be introduced in small quantities from time to time, and the roasting continued from half an hour to an hour, according to the coarseness of the alloy. The roasting may be conducted first with borax and nitre to effect partial separation, when the crucible may be removed from the fire, and the metals allowed to cool gradually. The crucible may then be broken, and the button of gold at the bottom removed and separated from the slag that covers it with a hammer. The button is then put into a fresh crucible and re-melted. If there is any known base metal present likely to render the gold brittle, the particular re-agent which will most readily attack it may now be used. If, however, as is generally the case, the alloy is of uncertain composition, or contains various metals having distinct affinities, the process becomes, to some extent, experimental, and it

may become necessary to use first one refining agent and then another, until sufficient separation is effected. Generally, it will be sufficient to use the nitrate of potassa alone, as most metals are oxydable. After roasting with nitre for half or three-fourths of an hour, adding small portions at a time, the melted metals may be poured into ingot moulds previously warmed and oiled. If, after hammering, annealing, and rolling the ingot, it should still be found brittle, it must be remelted, and chloride of mercury used as the refining agent. This will remove any traces of tin which may be present.

If the alloy, however, is greatly impoverished, it may be more advantageously treated with sulphuret of antimony; in which case the metals should be melted in a large crucible with about twice or three times their weight of the native sulphuret, which should be added in small quantities at a time. The heat decomposes the sulphuret of antimony; the sulphur uniting with the base metals forming sulphurets, and the antimony uniting with the gold forming a leaden-colored alloy. The antimony may be parted from the gold alloy in the following manner: Place the mixture in a clean crucible, and when melted, force a current of air with a pair of bellows upon its surface; this oxydizes the antimony, which passes off in the form of vapor. The current should be mild at first, as too great a draught is apt to carry off portions of gold by a too hurried volatilization of the antimony. A current strong enough to produce visible

fumes will be sufficient. When these cease, the crucible may be covered, and as the melting point of the gold rises with the escape of antimony, the fire should be urged to a stronger heat, and before pouring, a forcible current of air should again be thrown upon the surface of the melted metals to effectually dissipate any remaining portions of the antimony.

If, after treatment with the re-agents enumerated, the alloy should be found malleable, but stiff or elastic, and dull-colored, it is probably due to the presence of platinum; and any further attempts to reduce it by roasting will prove unavailing. It must then be subjected to the process which will be hereafter described for the separation of gold and platinum.

When it is desired to reduce the alloy to pure gold, which is generally advisable whenever the gold to be refined consists of very coarse filings, fragments of plate containing large quantities of solder, linings with platinum pins attached, particles of base metals, etc., the "humid process," as it is called, should be employed. The solvents in common use for this purpose are the nitric, sulphuric, and nitro-muriatic or hydrochloric acids; but as the desired results can be more conveniently and directly obtained by the use of the latter, or hydrochloric acid, this most available method alone will be given. The following practical remarks on the process are copied from an article on the "Management of Gold,"* by Professor George Watt.

* Dental Register of the West, Vol. xii. p. 251.

"When the alloy is composed of metals differing but little in their affinities for oxygen, chlorine, etc., we resort to one of the "wet methods." And, in this connection, we will only describe the one which we consider the most convenient and effectual for the practical dentist. It is effectual in all cases, as it always gives us pure gold.

"Let us, then, suppose that our gold alloy has become contaminated with platinum to such extent that the color and elasticity of the plate is objectionable. The alloy should be dissolved in nitro-muriatic or hydrochloric acid, called *aqua regia.* The best proportions for aqua regia are three parts of hydrochloric acid to one of nitric. If the acids are at all good, four ounces of the aqua regia will be an abundance for an ounce of the alloy. The advantage of using the acids in the proportion of three to one, instead of two to one, as directed in most of the text books, is, that when the solution is completed, there is but little, if any, excess of nitric acid. If the acids be "chemically pure," four parts of the hydrochloric to one of the nitric, produces still better results.

"By this process the metals are all converted into chlorides; and, as the chloride of silver is insoluble, and has a greater specific gravity than the liquid, it is found as a grayish-white powder at the bottom of the vessel. The chlorides of the other metals, being soluble, remain in solution. By washing and pouring off, allowing the chloride of silver time to settle to the bottom, the solution may be entirely separated from it. The object is

now to precipitate the gold while the others remain in solution. This precipitation may be effected by any one of several different agents, but we will mention only the proto-sulphate of iron.

"This salt is the common green copperas of the shops, and, as it is always cheap and readily obtained, we need look no farther. It should be dissolved in clean rain-water, and the solution should be filtered, and allowed to settle till perfectly clear. Then it is to be added gradually to the gold solution as long as a precipitate is found, and even longer, as an excess will the better insure the precipitation of all the gold. The gold thus precipitated is a brown powder, having none of the appearances of gold in its ordinary state. The solution should now be filtered, or the gold should be allowed to settle to the bottom, where it may be washed after pouring off the solution. It is better to filter than decant in this case, as, frequently, particles of the gold float on the surface, and would be lost in the washings by the latter process.

"Minute traces of iron may adhere to the gold thus precipitated. These can be removed by digesting the gold in dilute sulphuric acid; and, when the process is properly conducted, thus far, the result is *pure gold*, which may be melted, under carbonate of potash, in a crucible lined with borax, and reduced to the required carat."

CHAPTER IV.

ALLOYS OF GOLD FOR DENTAL PURPOSES.

Gold, in its pure state, is rarely employed by the dentist in laboratory processes, on account of its softness and flexibility; it is, therefore, usually alloyed with such metals as impart to it—without practically impairing either its malleability, pliancy or purity—the degree of hardness, strength and elasticity necessary to resist the wear and strain to which an artificial piece constructed from it is unavoidably exposed in the mouth.

Reducing metals.—The metals with which gold is usually combined are copper and silver. It is sometimes reduced with silver alone; many regarding the introduction of copper into the alloy as objectionable, as plate derived from it is supposed to be more readily tarnished and to communicate to the mouth a disagreeable metallic taste. This is unquestionably true, if, as is sometimes the case, the copper used is in excess; when, in addition to the effects mentioned, gold, so debased, may become a source of positive injury to the organs of the mouth, as well as to the general health. The small proportions of copper usually employed in forming gold plate, however, are not likely to produce, in any objectionable degree, the consequences complained of, unless the fluids of the mouth are greatly perverted. If gold coin is used

in the formation of plate, it may be sufficient to add silver alone, inasmuch as copper is already present; though, usually, additional quantities of the latter metal are added.

Required fineness of gold plate.—Alloys of gold to be permanently worn in the mouth, should be of such purity as will most certainly, under all the contingencies of health and disease, resist any chemical changes that would tend to compromise either the comfort or health of the patient. Evils of no inconsiderable magnitude are sometimes inflicted, either through ignorance, carelessness or cupidity, by a disregard of this important requirement. If the general health of the patient remained always uniformly unimpaired, with the secretions of the mouth in their normal state, gold degraded to eighteen or even sixteen carats fine, would undergo no material changes in the mouth. But it must be remembered, that, in addition to corrosive agents introduced into the mouth from without, a variety of diseases, local and constitutional, effect important changes in the otherwise bland and innoxious fluids contained therein, which, from being alkaline or neutral, become more or less acidulated. Indigestion, with acid eructations; gastro-enteritis; ague; inflammatory and typhoid fevers; brain affections; eruptive diseases; rheumatism; gout, &c., are some of the local and constitutional disorders almost uniformly imparting to the mucus and salivary secretions an acid re-action. These readily attack the

impoverished gold too frequently employed as a base for artificial teeth; and as a natural sequence to such practice we find supervening, inflammation of the mucous membrane and gums, with chronic periodontitis and loosening of the teeth; apthous ulcers; gastric irritation; general nervous disorders; decay of the teeth; fœtid breath; disagreeable metallic taste in the mouth, &c. Gold plate intended to be introduced into the mouth, should not, therefore, as a general thing, be of a less standard of fineness than twenty carats. It may exceed this degree of purity in some cases, but will rarely or never, unless alloyed with platinum, admit of being used of a higher carat than the present American coin, which is 21·6 carats fine.

Formulas for gold plate used as a base for artificial dentures.—Any of the following formulas may be employed in the formation of gold plate to be used as a base or support for artificial dentures. The relative proportions of the alloying components may be varied to suit the peculiar views or necessities of the manipulator. The estimated carat of the appended formulas are based on the fineness of the American gold pieces coined in 1837 and thereafter.

GOLD PLATE EIGHTEEN CARATS FINE.

Formula No. 1.	*Formula No.* 2.
18 dwts. pure gold,	20 dwts. gold coin,
4 dwts. fine copper,	2 dwts. fine copper,
2 dwts. fine silver.	2 dwts. fine silver.

GOLD PLATE NINETEEN CARATS FINE.

Formula No. 3.

19 dwts. pure gold,
3 dwts. copper,
2 dwts. silver.

Formula No. 4.

20 dwts. gold coin,
25 grs. copper,
40+ grs. silver.

GOLD PLATE TWENTY CARATS FINE.

Formula No. 5.

20 dwts. pure gold,
2 dwts. copper,
2 dwts. silver.

Formula No. 6.

20 dwts. gold coin,
18 grs. copper,
20+ grs. silver.

GOLD PLATE TWENTY-ONE CARATS FINE.

Formula No. 7.

21 dwts. pure gold,
2 dwts. copper,
1 dwt. silver.

Formula No. 8.

20 dwts. gold coin,
13+ grs. silver.

Formula No. 9.

20 dwts. gold coin,
6 grs. copper,
$7\frac{5}{7}$ grs. platinum.

GOLD PLATE TWENTY-TWO CARATS FINE.

Formula No. 10.

22 dwts. pure gold,
1 dwt. fine copper,
18 grs. silver,
6 grs. platinum.

The union of platinum with gold, as in Formula No. 10, furnishes an alloy rich in gold, while it imparts to the plate derived from it a reasonable degree of stiffness and elasticity; preserves in a good degree the characteristic color of fine gold; and does not materially impair its susceptibility of receiving a high polish. The amount of gold coin given in Formula No. 9 may be reduced with platinum alone, adding to it from eight to twelve grains; in which case, although the carat of the

alloy is lowered, its absolute purity remains unaffected, and plate formed from it will better resist any changes in the mouth than gold coin itself.

Formulas for gold plate used for clasps, wire, stays or linings, metallic pivots, &c.—Gold used in the formation of clasps, stays, &c., is improved for these purposes by the addition of sufficient platinum to render it firmer and more elastic than the alloys ordinarily employed in the formation of plate as a base. The advantages of this elastic property, in its application to the purposes under consideration, are, that clasps formed from such alloys will adapt themselves more accurately to the teeth, as, when partially spread apart on being forced over the crowns, they will spring together again and accurately embrace the more contracted portions. In the form of stays or backings, additional strength being imparted, a less amount of substance will be required; the elasticity of these supports, also, will not only lessen the chances of accident to the teeth themselves in mastication and otherwise, but preserve their proper position when temporarily disturbed by any of the forces applied to them. The same advantages last mentioned are obtained from this property in the use of metallic pivots.

Formula No. 1.	*Formula No.* 2.
20 dwts. pure gold,	20 dwts. coin gold,
2 dwts. fine copper,	8 grs. fine copper,
1 dwt. fine silver,	10 grs. silver,
1 dwt. platinum.	20 grs. platinum.

The alloy derived from either of these formulas will be twenty carats fine.

Gold Solders.—Solders are a class of alloys by means of which the several pieces of the same or of different metals are united to each other. They should be more fusible than the metals to be united, and should consist of such components as possess a strong affinity for the substances to be joined. They should also be as fine as the metals to which they are applied will admit of without endangering the latter. Solders of different degrees of fineness, therefore, should always be provided, from which the one most suitable for any given case may be selected.

The use of solders of doubtful or unknown composition should be avoided, and hence they should be compounded either from pure gold or gold coin.

The following formula taken from Prof. Harris' work on "Dental Surgery," page 664, recipe No. 3, may be used in connection with eighteen or twenty carat gold plate, and is sixteen carats fine.

6 dwts. pure gold,
2 dwts. roset copper,
1 dwt. fine silver.

Recipes Nos. 1 and 2, page 663 of same work, are too coarse to be introduced into the mouth; the former being a fraction below fourteen carats, while the latter is still more objectionable, exceeding but little twelve and one-half carats.

Formula No. 1 of the following recipes is a fraction over fifteen carats fine; and No. 2 furnishes a solder eighteen carats fine.

Formula No. 1.	*Formula No.* 2.		
6 dwts. gold coin,	Gold coin,	30	parts.
30 grs. silver,	Silver,	4	"
20 grs. copper,	Copper,	1	"
10 grs. brass.	Brass,	1	"

Zinc, as will be observed by the incorporation of brass in the above formulas, is sometimes employed, principally with a view of rendering the alloy more fusible. Its employment under any circumstances is objected to by many, on the ground that it more readily tarnishes in the mouth, is more brittle, and furnishes more favorable conditions for galvanic action. These objections only hold good when zinc is used in excess. When employed in quantities sufficient only to make the gold flow readily and evenly at a diminished heat, it is claimed that the base metal used in these alloys is chiefly consumed in the process of soldering, leaving a residuum of gold equal, or nearly so, in fineness to the plate. If such is the case, they are desirable alloys for soldering purposes, inasmuch as the importance of having the various parts of a piece of dental mechanism differ as little as possible in their affinity for the acids of the mouth is generally recognized.

Method of reducing gold to a lower or higher standard of fineness, and of determining the carat of any given alloy.—In the process of compounding gold for dental purposes, the manipulator should always aim at exactness in the quantity and relative proportions of the reducing components, and should be able to determine precisely the

purity of the metals he employs. Gold alloys are too often arbitrarily compounded, and used without any adequate knowledge of their quality or properties; and formulas, taken on trust, are employed without any certain knowledge of the quality of the alloys they produce.

That we may know certainly the quality of the gold alloys used in the laboratory without resorting to the inconvenient process of analysis or assaying, they should always be made either from pure gold or gold coin, the standard of these being definitely fixed. But as the process of procuring pure gold is somewhat tedious and troublesome, gold coin is very generally employed for the purpose. The amount of alloy necessary to reduce either pure or coin gold to any particular standard, whether higher or lower, and the method of ascertaining the carat or fineness of any given alloy, may be readily determined by a few simple rules. The following practical remarks on the method are copied from an article on "Alloying Gold,"* by Professor G. Watt.

"1. *To ascertain the carat of any given alloy.*—The proportion may be expressed as follows:

"As the weight of the alloyed mass is to the weight of gold it contains, so is 24 to the standard sought. Take, for example, Harris' No. 3 gold solder:

Pure gold, . . .	6 parts
" silver, . . .	2 "
" copper, . . .	1 "
Total, ...	9

* Dental Register of the West, Vol. x. p. 396.

"The proportion would be expressed thus,—

$$9 : 6 :: 24 : 16.$$

"From this any one can deduce the following

"Rule.—Multiply 24 by the weight of gold in the alloyed mass, and divide the product by the weight of the mass; the quotient is the carat sought.

"In the above example, 24 multiplied by 6, the quantity of gold, gives 144, which, divided by 9, the weight of the whole mass, gives 16. Hence, an alloy prepared as above, is 16 carats fine.

"As another example, under the same rule, take Harris' No. 1 solder.

22 Carat gold, . . .	48 parts.
silver, . . .	16 "
copper, - . .	12 "
Total, ...	76

"Now, as the gold used is but 22 carats fine, one-twelfth of it is alloy. The one-twelfth of 48 is 4, which, subtracted from 48, leaves 44. The statement then is:

$$76 : 44 :: 24 : 13{\cdot}9.$$

"This solder, therefore, falls a fraction below 14 carats.

"2. *To reduce gold to a required carat.*—The proportion may be expressed as follows:

"As the required carat is to 24, so is the weight of the gold used to the weight of the alloyed mass when reduced. The weight of gold subtracted from this, gives the quantity of alloy to be added.

"For example, reduce 6 ounces of pure gold to 16 carats.

"The statement is expressed thus:

$$16 : 24 :: 6 : 9.$$

"Six subtracted from 9 leaves 3, which is the quantity of alloy to be added. From this is deducted the following

"RULE.—Multiply 24 by the weight of pure gold used, and divide the product by the required carat. The quotient is the weight of the mass when reduced, from which subtract the weight of the gold used, and the remainder is the weight of alloy to be added.

"As another example under the same rule, reduce 1 pennyweight of 22 carat gold to 18 carats.

"As the gold is only 22 carats fine, one-twelfth of it is already alloy. The one pennyweight, therefore, contains but twenty-two grains of pure gold. The statement is, therefore, thus expressed:

$$18 : 24 :: 22 : 29\tfrac{1}{3}.$$

"Twenty-two subtracted from $29\frac{1}{3}$ leaves $7\frac{1}{3}$. Therefore, each pennyweight of 22 carat gold requires $7\frac{1}{3}$ grains of alloy to reduce it to 18 carats.

"3. *To reduce gold from a lower to a higher carat.*—This may be done by adding pure gold, or a gold alloy finer than that required. The principle of the rule may be set forth in the following general expression:

"As the alloy in the required carat is to the alloy in the given carat, so is the weight of the alloyed gold used, to the weight of the reduced alloy required. This principle may be practically applied by the following

"Rule.—Multiply the weight of the alloyed gold used by the number representing the proportion of alloy in the given carat, and divide the product by that representing the proportion of alloy in the required carat; the quotient is the weight of the mass when reduced to the required carat by adding fine gold.

"To illustrate this, take the following example:

"Reduce 1 pennyweight of 16 carat gold to 18 carats.

"The numbers representing the proportions of alloy in this example are found by respectively subtracting 18 and 16 from 24. The statement is, therefore:

$$6 : 8 :: 1 : 1\tfrac{1}{3},$$

from which it follows that to reduce one pennyweight of 16 carat gold to 18 carats, there must be one-third of a pennyweight of pure gold added to it.

"But, suppose that, instead of pure gold, we wish to effect the change by adding 22 carat gold. The numbers, then, respectively representing the proportions of the alloy would be found by subtracting, in the above example, 16 and 18 from 22, and the statement would be

$$4 : 6 :: 1 : 1\tfrac{1}{2}.$$

"It follows, then, that to each pennyweight of 16 carat gold, a half pennyweight of 22 carat gold must be added to bring it to 18 carats.

"By the above rules we think the student will be able, in all cases, to calculate the fineness or quality of his gold, and to effect any reduction, whether ascending or descending, which he may desire."

To facilitate the student in accurately compounding gold alloys from coins of that metal, the following table, giving the weight in grains, fineness, and value of the gold coins of different nations, is given in this connection.

TABLE OF COINAGE OF DIFFERENT NATIONS.

NATION.		Weight.	Fineness.	Value.
		Grains.	Thous.	d. c. m.
ARGENTINE REPUBLIC.				
Doubloon, Province of Rio de la Plata,	1828–32	418	815	14 66
" " "	1813–32	415	868	15 51
The same variation of fineness and weight in coins of the same date are to be found in the silver coinage of this republic.				
AUSTRIA.				
Ducat of Maria Theresa,	1762	53·5	985	2 26 9
Sovereign of Maria Theresa,	1778	170	917	6 71 3
Ducat of Leopold II.,	1790	53·5	986	2 27 2
" of Francis I.,	1809–34	53·7	983	2 27 4
Quadruple of Francis I.,	1830	215·5	983	9 12 2
Sovereign of Francis I.,	1831	174·5	898	6 74 8
" of Ferdinand I.,	1838	174·5	901	6 77 1
Half-sovereign of Ferdinand I.,	1839	87	902	3 38
Ducat of Ferdinand I.,	1838	53·7	985	2 27 8
Quadruple of Ferdinand I.,	1840	215·5	985	9 14
Hungary ducat of Ferdinand I.,	1839	53·7	986	2 28 1
BADEN.				
Ten guilder (five guilder same quality) of Louis, Grand Duke,	1819	105·5	900	4 08 6
BAVARIA.				
Ducat of Maximilian Joseph and Charles Theodore,	1764–97	53	980	2 23 7
Ducat of Maximilian Joseph II.,	1800	53	984	2 24 6
" of Louis,	1832	53·5	987	2 27 4
BELGIUM				
Forty francs,		199	895	7 67
Twenty francs in proportion, same fineness Sovereigns same as Austrian coinage.				
BOLIVIA.				
Doubloon,	1827–36	416·5	870	15 58
BRAZIL.				
Moidore of Maria I. and John III.,	1779	125·5	914	4 94
Half-Joe of Peter II.,	1833–38	221·5	915	8 72 7
The other moidores and half-joes are of the same fineness with the moidore of 1779, varying slightly in weight.				

TABLE OF COINAGE OF DIFFERENT NATIONS.—*Continued.*

NATION.		Weight.	Fineness.	Value.
		Grains.	Thous.	d. c. m.
BRITAIN.				
The gold coins of this kingdom are of the uniform fineness of 915·5, but below the legal standard about one-thousandth. The par value of the pound sterling is about $4 84. Sterling gold is worth 94·6 cents per pennyweight.				
BRUNSWICK.				
X. Thaler of Charles,	1745	202	898	7 81 2
" of Charles William Ferdinand,	1805	204	896	7 87 2
" of Wm. Fred. and George, Regent,	1813–19	204·5	896	7 89 1
" of Charles,	1824–30	205	896	7 91
" of William,	1831–38	205	894	7 89 3
V. Thaler of Charles,	1748–64	102	903	3 96 6
CENTRAL AMERICA.				
Doubloons,	1824–33	417	833	14 96
CHILI.				
Doubloons,	1819–34	417	867	15 57
"	1835 and seq.	417	872	15 66
COLOMBIA.				
Doubloon of eight escudos, Colombia, Bogotan Mint,	1823–36	416·8	870	15 61 7
" " Popayan Mint,	1823–36	416·5	858	15 39
" of New Granada, Bogota,	1837	416·8	870	15 61 7
Half-doubloon of Ecuador, Quito,	1836	209	844	7 59 6
Quarter-doubloon of Colombia, Bogota,	1823–36	104	865	3 87 4
" of Ecuador, Quito,	1835	104	844	3 78
Eighth-doubloon of Colombia, Bogota,	1823–36	51	865	1 90
" " Popayan,		51	852	1 87 1
These last coins vary in fineness from 849 to 854, and in weight from 44½ to 61½. The sixteenth-doubloons are of the same quality.				
DENMARK.				
Specie ducat of Frederick V.,	1749	53·5	988	2 27 6
" of Christian VII.,	1795–1802	53·7	979	2 26 4
Current ducat of Christian VII.,	1783	48	876	1 81 1
Christian d'or of Christian VII.,	1775	103	905	4 01 4
Double Frederick d'or of Frederick VI.,	1813–39	204·5	895	7 88 2
EGYPT.				
Sequin fundoukli of Achmet III.,	1115 (1703)	53	958	2 18 7
" of Mahmoud I.,	1143 (1730)	39	940	1 57 9
" "	"	39	848	1 42 4
" of Mustapha III.,	1171 (1757)	39	781	1 31 2
" of Abdul Hamed,	1187 (1773)	39	786	1 32
" "	"	39	645	1 08 3
" of Selim III.,	1203 (1789)	39	690	1 15 9
Half-sequin fundoukli of Mahmoud II.,	1233 (1818)	18	670	51 9
Bedidlik, 100 piastres, of Abdul Majeed,	1255 (1839)	132·2	874	4 97 6
Nusflix, 50 piastres, "	"	66 1	875	2 49 1
Kairia Hastreen, 10 piastres, "	"	27	874	1 01 7
The first date given above is the year of the Hegira; the second, the Christian era.				

Table of Coinage of Different Nations.—*Continued.*

Nation.		Weight. Grains.	Fineness. Thous.	Value. d. c. m.
France.				
Louis d'or of Louis XV.,	1726–73	124	897	4 79
" of Louis XVI.,	1786–92	116·5	900	4 51 6
Double Louis d'or of Louis XV.,	1744	250	902	9 71 1
" of Louis XVI.,	1786–92	235	901	9 11 9
Napoleon, 20 francs, of Napoleon,	1803–14	99·2	899	3 84 1
The subsequent gold coinage of France is of the uniform fineness of 899, except the twenty franc pieces of Louis Philippe, coined in 1840–41, which are 900.				
Greece.				
Twenty drachms of Otho,	1833	89	900	3 45
Hanover.				
Ducat of George III.,	1776	53·5	993	2 28 8
Pistole or five thaler of George III.,	1803	102	896	3 93 6
" " "	1813–14	102	890	3 91
Ten thaler of George III.,	1813–14	204·5	890	7 83 8
" William IV. and Ernst. August.	1835 & seq.	205	895	7 90 2
Hesse.				
Ten thaler of Frederick II.,	1773–85	202	890	7 74 2
Five thaler of Frederick II.,	1771–84	101	893	3 88 4
" of William IX.,	1788–89	101·5	892	3 89 9
" of William I.,	1815–17	101·5	894	3 90 8
Hindostan.				
Mohur of Bengal,	1770	190	982	8 03 5
" "	1787	191	989	8 13 4
" "	1793	191	993	8 16 8
" "	1818	204·7	917	8 08 4
" of Madras,	1818	180	917	7 10 9
" of Bombay,	1818	179	920	7 09 2
Half-mohur of Bengal,	1787	95	984	4 02 6
Star pagoda of Madras,		52·5	800	1 80 9
Pondicherry pagoda of Pondicherry,		52·5	708	1 60 1
Porto Novo pagoda, of Portuguese Company,		52·5	740	1 67 3
Mecklenburg Schwerin.				
Ten thaler of Frederick Francis,	1831	204·5	896	7 89 1
Mexico.				
Dubloon of Mexico, Augustin, Emperor,	1822	416·5	864	15 49 8
" " Mexican Republic,	1824–30	416·5	865	15 51 6
Other doubloons minted at Mexico weigh 417 grains, and are from 867 to 869 thousandths fine. The doubloon of Guanaxuato varies from 860 to 867 in fineness.				
Doubloon of Durango.		417	868	15 58 8
" "		417	865	15 53 4
" "	1833–36	417 5	872	15 67 9
" of Guadalaxara,		416	865	15 49 7

Table of Coinage of Different Nations.—*Continued.*

Nation.		Weight.	Fineness.	Value.
		Grains.	Thous.	d. c. m.
Milan.				
Zecchino, or Sequin, of Maria Theresa and Joseph II.,	1770–84	53·5	990	2 28 1
Doppia, or Pistole, of Joseph II.,	1783	97·5	908	3 81 3
Forty lire of Napoleon,	1805–14	199	899	7 70 6
Sovereign of Francis I.,	1831	174·5	898	6 74 8
" of Ferdinand I.,	1838	174·5	901	6 77 1
Half-sovereign,	1839	87	902	3 38
Naples and Sicily.				
Six ducat, of Ferdinand IV.,	1783	135	893	5 19 2
Onzia of Sicily of Charles,	1751	68	859	2 51 6
Onzia of Ferdinand I.,	1818	58	995	2 48 5
Twenty lire of Joachim Napoleon,	1813	99	900	3 84 8
Netherlands.				
Ducat,	1770–1810	53·5	980	2 25 8
" of William I.,	1833–39	53·7	981	2 26 9
Ten guilders of William I.,	1816–39	103·5	899	4 00 7
Persia.				
Toman of Fatha Ali Shah, Kajar,	1230–40 (1814–24)	71·2	991	3 04 2
" of Mohammed Shah, Shakinshah,	1255 (1839)	53·7	965	2 23 3
Half-toman of Mohammed Shah,	1252 (1837)	27	968	1 12 1
Poland.				
Ducat of Stanislaus Augustus,	1791	53·5	984	2 26 6
Portugal.				
Moidore of Peter II.,	1689	165	908	6 45 2
" "	1705	165	928	6 59 4
" of John V.,	1714–26	165	913	6 48 8
Half-joe,	1727–77	217	914	8 62
" of Maria I. and Peter III.,	1778–85	220	913	8 65
" of Maria I.,	1787–1804	221	914	8 69 9
" of John VI.,	1822–24	221	909	8 65 2
Joannese of John V.,	1730	439	912	17 24 2
Crown of Maria II.,	1838	148	912	5 81 3
Prussia.				
Frederick d'or of Frederick II.,	1752–82	102	901	3 95 8
" of Frederick William II.,	1795–96	102	897	3 94
" of Frederick Wilhelm III.,	1799–1812	102	901	3 95 8
Double Frederick d'or of Fred. Wilhelm III.,	1800–11	205	898	7 92 3
" " "	1831	205	903	7 97 2
Ducat of Frederick William II.,	1787	53·5	979	2 25 6
Rome.				
Sequin of Pius VI.,	1775–83	52·5	996	2 25 2
Doppia of Pius VI.,	1777–86	84	906	3 27 8
" of Pius VII.,		84·5	901	3 27 9
Gold scudo of Republic,	1799	910	833	32 64 6
Ten scudi of Gregory XVI.,	1836	267·5	900	10 36 8

TABLE OF COINAGE OF DIFFERENT NATIONS.—*Continued.*

NATION.		Weight.	Fineness.	Value.
		Grains.	Thous.	d. c. m.
RUSRIA.				
Imperial of Elizabeth,	1756	253	915	9 97
The gold coins of Russia, though irregular in weight, are of the same standard fineness during the reigns of Elizabeth and Catharine II.				
Ducat of Paul I.,	1798	66	969	2 75 4
Three roubles of Nicholas,	1838	60·5	917	2 38 9
Half-imperial of Nicholas,	1839	100·5	917	3 96 9
SARDINIA.				
Pistole of Victor Amadeus, &c.,		148	905	5 76 8
Carlino (island) of Victor Amadeus, &c.,	1773	247	890	9 46 7
Marengo of Republic,	1800	98	898	3 79
Eighty lire,		398	898	15 39 2
Genovine of Ligurian republic (Genoa)	1798	388	908	15 17 2
SAXONY.				
Double August d'or of Fred. August. III.,	1784–1817	204·5	896	7 89 1
" " "	1826	205	898	7 92 8
Double Anton d'or of Anthouy,	1830–36	205	900	7 94 6
Ducat of Anthony,	1830	53·7	979	2 26 4
SPAIN.				
Cob doubloon of Philip V., American,	1733–44	416	895*	16 03 4
Doubloon of Ferdinand VI., American,	1751	416	908	16 26 5
" of Charles III., American,	1772–84	416	843†	16 00
" of Charles III. Spanish,	1786–88	416	890	15 58 7
" of Charles IV. and Ferdinand VII., American,	1789–1821	416·5	868	15 57
Pistole of Philip V., Spanish,	1745	103	909	4 63 2
" of Charles III., American,	1774–82	103	895	3 97
" of Ferdinand VII., American,	1813–24	104	872	3 90 6
Escudo of Charles III., Spanish,	1786–88	52	874	1 95 7
" of Charles IV.,	1789–1808	52	868	1 94 4
" of Ferdinand VII., American,	1809–20	52	851	1 90 6
Half-doubloon of Charles III., Spanish,	1780–82	206	896	7 95
" of Charles IV , American,	1789–1808	208	870	7 79 3
" of Ferdinand VII., Spanish,	1810–24	208	865	7 74 8
SWEDEN.				
Ducat of Gustavus III. and Gustavus IV.,	1777–1800	53	977	2 23
" of Charles John XIV.,	1838	54	975	2 26 7
SWITZERLAND.				
Pistole of Berne,	1796	116	901	4 50 1
" of Basle,	1795	118	891	4 52 8
" of Soleure,	1798	116	898	4 48 6
" of Helvetian Republic,	1800	116	897	4 48 1
Ducat of Berne,	1794	52·5	974	2 20 2
" of Basle,		53	943	2 15 2
TUNIS.				
Half-sequin of Abdul Hamed,	1773	19	885	72 4

* Varies from 893 to 898. † Varies from 883 to 893, the oldest pieces being the best.

TABLE OF COINAGE OF DIFFERENT NATIONS.—*Continued.*

NATION.		Weight.	Fineness.	Value.
		Grains.	Thous.	d. c. m.
TURKEY.				
Sequin fondouk of Selim III.,	1789	52.5	800	1 80 9
" zermahboub of Selim III.,	1789	36	800	1 24
Ohikilik of Mahmoud II.,	1822–24	25	833	89 7
Twenty piastres, of Mahmoud II.,	1827	27·5	875	1 03 7
Yirmilik, 20 piasters, of Abdul Medjid,	1840	24·5	832	87 7
TUSCANY.				
Ruspone of Francis III. to Leopold III.,	1738–1800	160	997	6 87
" of Louis I. and Charles I,	1801–07	161	998	6 91 9
" of Leopold II.,	1824–34	161	999	6 92 5
Sequin of Leopold,	1765–79	53	997	2 27 6
" of Leopold II.,	1824–34	53·5	999	2 30 1
UNITED STATES.				
Eagle,	1792–1834	270	916·7	10 67 4
"	1834–1837	258	899·2	9 99 7
"	1837 and seq.	258	900	10
WURTENBURG.				
Ducat of Charles,	1790–1818	53	980	2 23 7

CHAPTER V.

METHOD OF CONVERTING GOLD ALLOYS INTO THE REQUIRED FORMS FOR DENTAL PURPOSES.

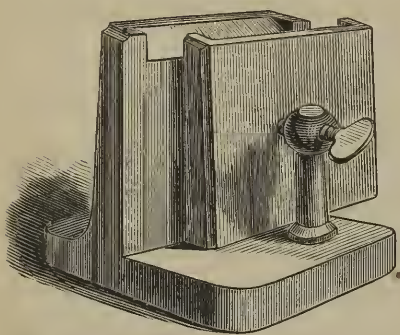
Manner of procuring an ingot.—The gold, with its alloying constituents, is put into a clean crucible, lined on the inside with borax, and placed in the furnace. When the contained metals are perfectly fused, the crucible should be removed from the fire with a pair of tongs, and the contents poured quickly but carefully into the ingot molds; the latter being placed conveniently near the mouth of the furnace, as the molten metals soon become chilled on exposure to the open air. Before pouring, the molds, if made of iron, should be moderately heated and oiled, or coated with lamp-smoke by holding their inner surfaces over the flame of an oil lamp or gas jet.

Ingot molds are constructed of various substances, but those in most common use, and at the same time most convenient, are formed of iron; and for gold, are generally about two inches square, and from one-eighth to one-sixth of an inch thick. (Fig. 11.) They should be slightly concave on their inner surfaces to compensate for the greater shrinkage of the gold in the centre than at the margins of the ingot.

Soapstone is sometimes employed for the same pur-

pose, and is preferred by many. It should also be warmed and oiled before pouring the metals. Molds made from charcoal are also sometimes used,

Fig. 11.



but as they require to be frequently renewed, are not generally employed. Molds are formed from this latter substance by selecting two pieces with even surfaces, or dividing a single piece with a saw, when either the required size and shape of the mold may be cut out in one half, or a strip of sheet-iron, a little broader than the required thickness of the ingot, being bent into proper form, is placed between, and the edges partially imbedded in, the two pieces of charcoal and the latter secured by binding them together with wire. Molds made from this material do not require to be either heated or oiled.

It not unfrequently happens that, at the first pouring, the metals arrange themselves in the ingot in accordance with the density of the several components; those of greater specific gravity passing to the bottom, and the lighter metals remaining above. Whenever this occurs, the ingot must be broken into pieces and re-melted; this should be repeated, if necessary, until the alloy assumes a perfectly homogeneous appearance. It should then be

annealed in hot ashes, which softens the gold and removes the adhering grease.

Forging.—Before laminating the ingot, it should be reduced somewhat in thickness by placing it on an even-faced anvil or other equally smooth and resistant surface, and subjecting it to repeated blows with a tolerably heavy hammer. It should be frequently annealed, and the process of forging continued, alternately hammering and annealing, until the ingot is reduced one-half or more in thickness.

Laminating or rolling.—The reduced ingot, well annealed, is next laminated or spread out into a sheet of greater or less thinness by passing it repeatedly between two strong, highly polished, cylindrical steel rollers. The mills used for the purpose are variously constructed; the plainest forms being very simple in their mechanism, while others, or geared mills, are more complicated, and are constructed with a view to a greater augmentation of power, and precision, and certainty of action. The latter, (Fig. 12,) if of approved pattern, materials and manufacture, are, upon the whole, more economical and reliable than the cheaper varieties. The rollers, for the purposes of the dentist, should be from three to four inches in length.

FIG. 12.

In laminating, the rollers should first be adjusted equi-distant at both ends, and this uniformity, as they are approximated from time to time, should be preserved throughout. At every passage of the gold bar between the rollers, the distance between the latter should be diminished; care being taken that the approximation be not sufficient to clog or impede the free action of the mills. The gold, which in time becomes hard and brittle and liable to crack in the mills, should be frequently and well annealed by bringing it to a full red heat; this restores the pliancy of the gold and facilitates the operation in the press.

When the ingot has been extended in one direction as far as may be desired, it should always be re-annealed before turning it in the mills; a neglect of this precaution will seriously interfere with the working of the gold by twisting or doubling the plate upon itself; and in some instances, provided the gold has not been well annealed throughout the operation, or is in any considerable degree unmalleable, the plate will be torn across and rendered unfit for use.

A thin or retreating edge may be given to the plate at any desired point or points by passing such portions part way between the rollers and withdrawing; repeating this, with the rollers brought a little nearer to each other every time the plate is introduced between them, and decreasing the distance the plate passes each time until it is reduced to as thin an edge as may be desired.

The degree of attenuation obtained by rolling is determined by what is called a *gauge plate,* (Fig. 13.) This instrument is usually circular or oblong in form, and is marked at intervals on its edge by cross-cut grooves or fissures, which successively diminish in size and are indexed by numbers ranging from 6 to 40. The size of the grooves diminish with the ascending numbers. During the operation of rolling, the plate should be tested, from time to time, by the gauge to determine when it has undergone sufficient attenuation.

FIG. 13.

Thickness of gold plate required as a base for artificial dentures.—In prescribing the thickness of plate proper for the purpose indicated, no estimate can be given that will apply to all cases, as certain conditions of the mouth, to be mentioned hereafter, will suggest some modifications in this respect. Usually, however, plate for entire upper sets should correspond in thickness with number 26 of the gauge-plate; for the under jaw, number 24 may be used; while for partial upper pieces, an intermediate number may be chosen, unless atmospheric-pressure plates are used, when the number recommended for full upper sets may be employed.

Thickness of plate for clasps, stays, &c.—Plate for these purposes should correspond with from 20 to 22 of

the gauge; a less amount of substance, as before stated, being required when the alloy has incorporated with it a small proportion of platinum.

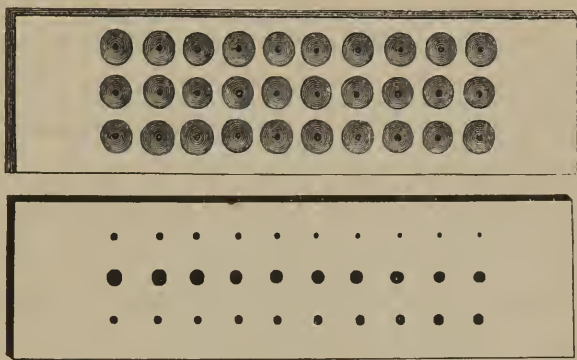
Reduction of gold solders into proper form for use.—The method of converting gold solders into the form of plate, does not differ from that already described in the manufacture of plate as a base, except that when zinc or brass is used, the latter should be added after the other constituents are completely fused, and then instantly poured to prevent undue wasting of the base metals by a too protracted heat.

The solder should be reduced to plate somewhat thinner than that used for upper sets, say 28 of the gauge-plate. It is customary sometimes to roll the solder into very thin ribbons, but this is objectionable for the reason that a greater amount of the alloying metals being exposed in a given surface to the action of the heat in soldering, are burnt out or oxydated, which interrupts the flow and weakens the attachment between the solder and plate.

Method of obtaining gold wire.—To convert gold or its alloys into the form of wire, the operator should be provided with a draw-plate, a vice, and pair of hand-pincers. A draw-plate (Fig. 14) is an oblong piece of steel pierced with a regular gradation of holes, or a series of progressively diminishing apertures, through which the gold bar, reduced to a rod, is forced and made to assume the form and dimensions of the hole through which it is last

drawn. The holes are formed with a steel punch, and are enlarged on the side where the wire enters and

FIG. 14.



diminish with a gradual taper to the other side. A *draw-bench* is sometimes employed in extending the wire, the power being applied by a toothed wheel, pinion, and rack-work, and is moved by the hands of one or two persons. For the purposes of the dentist, however, it will be sufficient to fix the draw-plate securely between the jaws of a bench-vice, and, by seizing hold of one end of the gold rod with a strong pair of clamps or hand-pincers serrated or cut like a file on the inside of the jaws, the wire may be drawn steadily through the plate, passing from the larger to the smaller holes until a wire of the required size is obtained.

In drawing the wire, the motion should be steady and uniform, for if drawn interruptedly or by jerks, the wire will be marked by corresponding inequalities. The gold rod should also be annealed from time to time, and the holes kept well greased or waxed.

The process described above will answer equally well in reducing any of the ductile metals to wire, as silver, copper, platinum, &c., so that any further description of the method, in connection with these metals, will be unnecessary.

Method of constructing spiral springs.—Inasmuch as spiral springs have been, to a great extent, superseded by more approved agencies employed in the retention of artificial teeth in the mouth, and as all the principal dental furnishing houses are supplied with these appliances already prepared for use, the author does not deem it necessary to enter into a description of the various apparatuses used in making them.

The following simple contrivance will meet the limited requirements of those who are obliged or prefer to manufacture their own springs. The wire, obtained as already described, is held between two blocks of wood fastened between the jaws of a bench-vice. By means of a small hand-vice, one end of the wire is clamped to a uniformly cylindrical and well-tempered steel rod or wire four or six inches long, and about the size of a small knitting needle, and which being made to revolve while resting on the blocks of wood, the wire is wound firmly and compactly around it producing a uniform coil.

CHAPTER VI.

SILVER.

General properties of silver.—Pure silver, when planished, is the brightest of the metals. Fused, or in the form of ingot, its specific gravity is 10·47; but when hammered or condensed in the coining press, its density is increased, and its specific gravity becomes 10·6. It fuses at an extreme red heat, generally estimated at 1·873° Fah. It is remarkably laminable and ductile; yielding leaves not more than $\frac{1}{100000}$ of an inch thick, and wire 400 feet of which may be drawn weighing but a single grain. It exceeds gold in tenacity or cohesion, but is inferior to platinum in this respect. A silver wire ·078 of an inch in diameter will sustain a weight of 187·13 pounds. Fine silver is unaffected by moisture or pure atmospheric air, but is readily tarnished with a film of brown sulphuret by exposure to sulphuretted hydrogen. The sulphuret of silver thus formed may be easily removed by rubbing the metal with a solution of *cameleon mineral,* prepared by calcining equal parts of black or peroxide of manganese and nitre. Unlike gold and platinum, it is readily soluble in nitric acid; this and sulphuric acid being the only simple ones that dissolve it. Silver becomes very brilliant when heated; boils and vaporizes above its fusing point; and when cooled slowly, its surface presents a crystalline appearance.

Alloys of Silver.—Silver combines readily with most metals, forming compounds of variable degrees of malleability, ductility, density, &c.

Tin, zinc, antimony, lead, bismuth and arsenic, render it brittle. A very minute quantity of tin is fatal to the ductility of silver. Silver does not easily combine with iron, although the two metals may be united by fusion. Gold, copper, platinum, iridium, steel, manganese, and mercury, also form alloys with silver.

An alloy of nine parts of silver and one of copper is the Government standard of the United States coinage since 1837. To this, three cent pieces form an exception; these being composed of three parts silver and two of copper. The coins of silver having a greater average fineness than those of our own country, are Brazil, Britain, Chili, France, Greece, Hindostan, Persia, Portugal, Rome, and Tuscany. A common impression prevails that the Mexican silver coin contains more than an average percentage of silver, and is therefore sought after on account of its supposed purity. This is true of some pieces coined at different periods, but the average fineness of the Mexican, as well as Spanish coins, is exceeded by those of the United States mints.

Reduction of silver to the required forms for dental purposes.—Owing to the very soft and flexible nature of silver in its pure state, it is usual, when converting it into plate or other forms for use, to employ an alloy of the metal. Hence silver coins, which are made harder

by the copper they contain, are generally selected for the purpose. The employment of silver, thus debased, as a base for dental substitutes is regarded by many as unsafe and injudicious. Although the influences of an alloy so readily acted upon as this by the various agents which affect it chemically, cannot always be certainly predicted in every case, yet no reasonable doubt can be entertained but that, under the favoring conditions which usually exist in the mouth, the evils accruing, directly and indirectly, to the organs of the mouth, and through them to the general system, are positive and undoubted. If used at all, therefore, it should be alloyed with the least practicable amount of copper, or what is better, pure silver should be reduced with platinum alone, in sufficient quantities to impart to the plate an adequate degree of strength and elasticity. The tendency of silver to tarnish in the mouth when alloyed with copper, may be diminished by boiling the finished piece in a solution of cream of tartar and chloride of soda, or common salt, or by scrubbing it with aqua ammonia, which removes the superficial particles of copper, and exposes a surface of fine silver. When platinum is introduced as the sole alloying component, the purity of the silver is not only preserved, but the alloy is less easily acted on chemically, while the plate derived from it is rendered sufficiently inflexible and elastic. From three to five grains of platinum may be added to one pennyweight of pure silver.

On account of the strong affinity of sulphur for silver, the fuel most proper to be used in melting it is charcoal. The various processes employed in the conversion of silver into the required forms for use are similar to those described for gold, and need not be recapitulated.

Formulas for silver solders.—Silver solders are usually composed of silver, copper, and zinc, in variable proportions. Alloys formed from the following formulas are such as are generally employed in soldering silver plate derived from the coins of that metal. Three-cent pieces, composed of two parts silver and one of copper, may also be used for the same purpose.

Formula No. 1.

Silver	66 parts.
Copper	30 "
Zinc	10 "

Formula No. 2.

Silver	6 parts.
Copper	2 "
Brass	1 "

When the material to be united is composed of pure silver and platinum, silver coin alloyed with one-tenth zinc may be used as a solder.

In compounding silver solders, the silver and copper should be first melted, and the zinc or brass afterwards added, when they should be quickly poured to prevent undue waste, by oxydation, of the more fusible component. The ingot, when cold, should be rolled into plate a little thicker than that recommended for gold solder.

CHAPTER VII.

PLATINUM AND THE PLATINOID METALS.

Platinum is a grayish-white metal, resembling in some measure polished steel. It is harder than silver, and has a density greater than any other known metal, its specific gravity being 21·25. It remains unaltered in the highest heat of a smith's forge, and can only be fused by means of the oxy-hydrogen blowpipe and galvanism. A white heat does not tarnish it, nor is it in any way affected by exposure either in the air or water. It is insoluble in any of the simple acids; nitro-muriatic acid being the only one that dissolves it. It is sufficiently malleable to be hammered into leaves so thin as to be blown about by the breath. It may be drawn into wire the two-thousandths of an inch in diameter, and a still greater attenuation may be obtained by coating the wire with silver, drawing it out, and dissolving off the latter metal.

Platinum is very soft and flexible, and when rolled into thin sheets, say 28 or 30 of the gauge-plate, and well annealed at a strong white heat for eight or ten minutes, it may be readily forced into all the inequalities of a zinc die without producing any appreciable change in the face of the latter.

The following interesting and practical observations on

the method of melting and welding platinum scraps, are taken from a recent dental publication,* by E. A. L. Roberts. By this process, the operator will be enabled to re-convert his waste scraps of platinum into convenient forms for use, and which he could not otherwise avail himself of on account of the infusible nature of this metal in its uncombined state.

"Platinum used by dentists should be soft, tough, and without flaws. These qualities can be attained only by thorough melting and welding. The welding must be done at a white heat. When the surface is cool enough to be visible, the metal is too cool to be welded, and every blow is injurious, because it has a tendency to shatter and shake it to pieces. The necessary delicacy of this process, and the uncertainty of success, has led some writers to declare that platinum is incapable of being welded. The platinum must be perfectly clean, and must be heated in a muffle. When welded, the metal should be handled with tongs plated with platinum, and hammered with a clean hammer on a clean anvil, both of which should be as hot as possible, without drawing the temper of the steel. The hammer used in welding should weigh about a pound, to prevent drawing the metal; but when welded, the metal may be forged with a heavier hammer.

"The scraps or sponge should be condensed in a square mold, very compactly, two pieces of which, weighing

* Dental Instructor, vol. i. p. 10.

from ten to twenty ounces, may be put into a muffle together. When the heat becomes so great, that on opening the door the metal becomes invisible, bring one of the pieces in the tongs, quickly to the anvil, give it three or four quick, sharp blows, in rapid succession. Return the piece to the muffle, and proceed with the other piece in like manner, and thus alternately, till both are thoroughly welded.

"We use one of our improved tooth-furnaces of the largest size, fourteen by ten inches, inside measure.

"Platinum should never be thrown into water while hot, as that tends to make it crystallize. It should be thoroughly hammered, as it makes it tough and fibrous. The following process gives the best results in melting this metal. Condense the scraps, sponge or filings in an iron mold. Lay the condensed mass on a concave fire-brick, and heat it to whiteness. Take the brick from the muffle, and place it in a sheet-iron pan, coated with plaster and asbestos. The pan should be deep enough and broad enough to catch all the globules and other loose particles of the metal. Place it under the jet of the oxy-hydrogen blowpipe, in the following manner:

"The pan is provided with a handle, opposite to which is a ring, which is to be attached to an iron hook and rod, suspended from the ceiling by a slip of India rubber, which enables the operator to hold the pan conveniently at any distance from the jet of the burning gases. The hydrogen is first lighted, and gives a powerful flame, but

as the oxygen combines with it, the flame subsides into an intense focus of heat, in which the metal is soon brought to a state of fusion. Begin at one end and melt along toward the other, till the whole is fused in one mass. The platinum in this condition, when cool, is quite crystallized and sonorous. It breaks very easily, like spelter-zinc. Heat it very hot and forge it. A continuation of this process renders it soft, tough, and fibrous. When reduced to the width desired, and to the thickness of one-fourth of an inch, it should be made very hot, and passed instantly through the rollers."

Platinum, in mechanical practice, is chiefly employed as a base for continuous gum work; it is also used as a coloring ingredient of porcelain, and for pins in the manufacture of mineral teeth; and, to a limited extent, in some of the minor operations of the shop.

Pure gold is the only proper solder for this metal.

Alloys of platinum.—Platinum unites with most of the base metals, forming alloys of variable degrees of hardness, elasticity, brittleness, color, fusibility, &c., but their practical value to the dentist is not sufficient to justify a separate description of their properties.

Alloyed with *gold* it forms a straw-colored alloy, the shade depending on the quantity of gold added. *Silver* hardens it, the resulting alloy being unaffected by sulphur.

Platinoid metals.—The platinoid metals, palladium, iridium, osmium, rhodium, and ruthenium, are native

contaminations, the alloys of these metals having a close general resemblance to platinum.

Among the platinoid metals, palladium is the only one that has been used for dental purposes, and that only to a limited extent. It is of a steel-gray color, and when planished, is a brilliant steel-white metal not liable to tarnish in the air. Though closely resembling platinum, it may be readily distinguished from the latter metal by the following tests: 1. It has little more than one-half the density of platinum. 2. If a piece of it is heated to redness, it assumes a bronze-blue shade of greater or less intensity, as it is cooled more or less slowly; but if it is suddenly chilled by immersing it in cold water, it instantly resumes its original luster. 3. When a drop of the tincture of iodine is let fall upon its surface and evaporated over the flame of a lamp, a black spot remains, which does not occur with platinum. Palladium melts at about 9500° Fah., and does not oxydize at a white heat. Its specific gravity is from 11·8 to 12·14.

CHAPTER VIII.

ALUMINIUM.

Aluminium is the metallic basis of alumina, the latter being the characteristic ingredient of common clay. It is only within the past few years that the attention of chemists has been directed to the production of this remarkable metal with a view to its general introduction into commerce and the arts. Prior to the researches of M. Deville, who, under the patronage of the present Emperor of the French, commenced his researches in 1854 for the production of this metal on a large scale, the small quantities produced and the corresponding exorbitant prices it commanded, rendered it entirely unavailable for other purposes than merely scientific experiment. The improvements in the method of obtaining it, however, which have been recently introduced, cannot fail, by rendering its production more economical, to supply it in much larger quantities and at a corresponding reduction in the cost of the metal.

The following account of the properties of this metal is taken from a paper read before the Society of Arts, London, by its Secretary, P. Le Neve Foster. It embodies the most authentic and complete description of the properties of aluminium that has yet been published.

"One of the most striking properties of aluminium is

its extreme lightness, its specific gravity being 2·6, nearly that of glass, whilst that of platinum is 21·5, gold 19·5, silver 10·5, copper 8·96, zinc 7·2, tin 7·3.

"The metal is malleable, ductile, almost without limit; it can be reduced to very thin sheets, or drawn into very fine threads. Its tenacity, though superior to that of silver, is less than that of copper; but no very accurate experiments have been made in this respect.

"When pure, it is about as hard as silver. Its elasticity is not great. It files readily, and is said not to injure the file. It conducts electricity with great facility, so that it may be considered as one of the best conductors known, almost equal in this respect to silver, and more than eight times a better conductor than iron. It melts at a temperature a little above that of zinc, between zinc and silver. In its chemical qualities it would seem to take an intermediate rank between what are termed the noble metals and the common metals, being, as Deville states, one of the most unalterable of metals.

"It might be imagined that it would as readily reassume its oxygen as it parted with it with difficulty when in its state of oxyd. This, however, is not the case; it appears to be as indifferent to oxygen as either platinum or gold. In air and in oxygen it undergoes no sensible alteration, and it even resists it at the highest temperature which Deville could produce in a cupelling furnace, a temperature higher than that employed in assaying gold. Water has no action, according to Deville,

on aluminium, neither at its ordinary temperature, nor when boiling, nor even upon the metal at a low red heat, near its melting point. According to Professor Crace Calvert, this statement must be received with some degree of caution, as in experiments he has made he considers that oxydation does take place slowly when the metal is immersed in water for any considerable length of time. It is not affected by sulphur or sulphuretted hydrogen, like silver, nor is acted upon to any considerable degree by any of the oxy-acids in the cold; nitric acid, whether strong or weak, at its ordinary temperature, in no way affects it, though when boiling it acts upon it slowly. Small grains of aluminium, plunged in sulphuric acid for three months, remained apparently unaltered. The vegetable acids, such as acetic, oxalic, and tartaric acids, have scarcely any effect on it at all. The true solvent of the metal is hydrochloric acid, which attacks it rapidly. It appears to resemble tin when brought into contact with hydrochloric acid and the chlorides. Its absolute harmlessness permits of its being employed in a vast number of cases where the use of tin would not be desirable on account of the extreme facility with which that metal is dissolved in the organic acids.

"Figuier, in his Scientific Year Book for 1858, just published, states that the caustic alkalies, potash and soda, and even ammonia, dissolve aluminium sensibly. He also states that common salt and acetic acid, (vinegar,)

especially when mixed, attack and dissolve aluminium. He adds, that the mixture of salt and vinegar for seasoning a salad, made in a spoon of aluminium, feebly but inevitably attacks it.

"All these points, however, deserve to be inquired into, as there seems some discrepancy between different writers on them."

Alloys.—"Aluminium, like iron, does not unite with mercury, and scarcely at all with lead. It, however, forms a variety of alloys with other metals. It can be alloyed with iron, and when aluminium becomes cheaper, it will be curious to see what effect mixtures of this metal with iron will have upon its quality, whether for good or for evil. It seems to unite readily with zinc, and these have been found to give the best promise as solders for aluminium; but, unfortunately, when melted, neither of them are sufficiently liquid, and do not run readily. The joints made will not bear a blow. A variety of alloys with nickel have been made, and that consisting of 100 parts of aluminium and 3 of nickel, is found to work readily, and to have gained hardness and rigidity, as compared with the pure metal. The alloys, however, with copper are the most striking; they are light and very hard, and capable of a fine polish. In the same degree that copper adds to the hardness of aluminium, so does the latter, when used in small quantities, give hardness to copper, without, however, injuring its malleability. It renders it susceptible of a fine

polish, and, according as the proportions are varied, the color of the alloy becomes deep or pale gold. Alloys of copper with five and ten per cent. of aluminium, resemble gold perhaps more than any other metallic alloy hitherto employed. They do not tarnish sensibly by exposure to the air. Aluminium can be deposited by the battery, and by the same agent it can be gilt or silvered."

Some attempts have been made to render aluminium available as a base for artificial teeth, but with only partial success. When in the form of plate, no suitable solder has yet been discovered by which the several parts of a dental appliance may be securely united to each other; and experiments in casting this metal have practically failed, owing to its extreme lightness and consequent want of fluidity. More experience in its proper management, and a further acquaintance with its capabilities in yet unknown forms of combination with other metals, may ultimately demonstrate its applicability to dental purposes.

CHAPTER IX.

COPPER, ZINC, LEAD, TIN, ANTIMONY, AND BISMUTH.

COPPER.

Copper is one of the metals most anciently known; is of a brownish-red color, with a tinge of yellow; has a faint but nauseous and disagreeable taste, and imparts, when exposed to friction, a smell somewhat similar to its taste. Its specific gravity ranges from 8.8 to 8.9. It is both malleable and ductile, but excels in the former property, finer leaves being obtained from it than wire. It is inferior to iron in tenacity, but surpasses gold, silver, and platinum in this respect. Copper melts at 1996° Fahrenheit.

Alloys of Copper.—Copper unites readily with most metals, forming alloys of great practical value in the arts, but which have but a limited application in dental laboratory processes. Many of these alloys are curious and instructive as illustrating the singular and unaccountable influence of alloying upon the distinctive properties of the component metals. Copper and tin, for example—the former of which is highly ductile, and the latter equally malleable—when combined in the proportion to form speculum metal, (9 C—1 T) forms an alloy distinguished for its extreme brittleness, with a surface hard-

ness almost equal to steel. By increasing the quantity of tin until the compound assumes the proportions constituting gun metal, (C 2—T 1) the alloy, though neither malleable or ductile, becomes eminently tough and rigid. Other prominent examples might be given, showing how completely this combining influence defies all calculations in regard to ultimate results. The following summary embraces the names and composition of the more familiar alloys of copper, omitting, as unnecessary in this connection, a description of their individual properties.

Alloys of Copper with Zinc.—*Brass* is an alloy of uncertain and variable composition, consisting usually, however, of 2 to 5 parts of copper and one of zinc. Brass melts at 1869° Farh. *Prince's metal*, and its allied compounds, *Pinchbeck*, *Similor*, and *Manheim gold*, consists of nearly equal parts of copper and zinc. *Mosaic gold* consists of 100 parts of copper and from 52 to 55 of zinc. *Dutch gold*, from which foil of that name was formerly obtained, is formed of 11 parts of copper with 2 of zinc. *Bath metal* is composed of 32 parts of brass and 9 of zinc.

Brass solder consists of two parts of brass and one of zinc, to which a little tin is occasionally added.

Alloys of Copper with Tin.—*Bell metal* usually consists of 100 parts of copper with from 60 to 63 parts of tin. *Cannon metal* is compounded of 90 parts of copper with 10 of tin. *Cymbals* and *gongs* contain 100 parts of copper and 25 of tin. *Speculum metal* consists of 2 parts of copper and 1 of tin.

Copper and arsenic form a white colored alloy, and in the proportion of 9 parts copper and one of arsenic, is white, slightly ductile, and is denser and more fusible than copper.

Genuine *German silver* is composed of copper 40·4; nickel 31·6; zinc 25·4; iron 2·6; but the proportions of the metals of this alloy differ according to the various uses to which this compound is applied.

Chinese packfong consists of 5 parts of copper alloyed with 7 parts of nickel and 7 parts of zinc.

A very useful alloy, employed in making plummer blocks, bushes, and steps for the steel and iron gudgeons and pivots of machinery to run in, is said to consist of 90 parts of copper, 5 of zinc, and 5 of antimony.

ZINC.

Zinc is a bluish-white metal, possessing considerable luster when broken across. The commercial variety is always impure, containing traces of iron, lead, cadmium, arsenic, carbon, etc. It does not easily tarnish in dry air, but soon becomes dull on exposure to moisture. In the condition in which it ordinarily occurs it is a brittle metal, but may be rendered malleable by annealing it at certain temperatures. This change in its condition is effected by subjecting it to a heat of from 220° to 300°, at which temperature it may be rolled into sheets and retain its malleability when cold. The best annealing temperature for zinc is about 245°. A knowledge of

this fact will enable the operator to avail himself of the advantages of this property by annealing his zinc die, by which its liability to crack or part under the hammer is diminished.

The specific gravity of zinc varies from 6·9 to 7·2. It melts at about 773°, and when heated much above this point with contact of air, it burns with a brilliant greenish-white flame, while woolly-looking flocculi rise from the vessel in which it is being heated and float in the air.

Zinc has been long and almost exclusively employed in the formation of dies used in swaging metallic plates employed in mounting artificial teeth, and experience has very justly accorded to it undisputed pre-eminence above all other unalloyed metals for the purpose. A more particular account of its peculiar fitness for dental purposes will be given under the head of Metallic Dies and Counter-Dies.

LEAD.

Lead has a grayish-blue color, with a bright metallic lustre when melted or newly cut, but it soon becomes tarnished and dull-colored when exposed to the air. The specific gravity of commercial lead, which is usually contaminated with other metals, is 11·352. It fuses at 612°. Exposed to a high heat, it absorbs oxygen rapidly, forming on its surface a gray film of protoxide and metallic lead. It is both malleable and ductile, but soft and perfectly inelastic.

Lead, either in its pure state or when alloyed with certain other metals, serves important purposes in the laboratory. In its simple or uncombined state it is useful only in forming counter-dies. Alloyed with antimony in the proportion of from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ of the latter, with the addition sometimes of very small portions of copper, tin, and bismuth, it forms different grades of *type metal*, which is harder than lead and very brittle, and is sometimes used for dies; and sometimes, though very rarely, for counter-dies. When used as a counter to a zinc die, it is improved for the purpose by adding to it an equal quantity of lead; it may also be used in the form of a die in connection with a lead counter after rough stamping with zinc.

The alloy known as Rose's *fusible metal* is composed of 2 parts of bismuth, 1 of lead, and 1 of tin, and melts at about 200°. A still more fusible alloy is composed of lead 3 parts, tin 2 parts, and bismuth 5 parts, which fuses at 197°. There are other alloys of lead, to be mentioned hereafter, melting at from 200° to 440°, which may be advantageously employed in forming dies to be used after zinc, where the latter, from its greater shrinkage, fails to bring the plate into accurate adaptation to the mouth.

Soft solder is an alloy composed of lead and tin in the proportion of two parts of the former with one of the latter.

TIN.

Tin is a brilliant silver-white metal, the luster of which is not sensibly affected by exposure to the air; but is easily oxydized by heat. It has a slightly disagreeable taste, and emits, when rubbed, a peculiar odor. It is soft, inelastic, and when bent, emits a peculiar crackling sound called the *creaking of tin*. It is inferior in tenacity and ductility, but is very malleable and may be beaten into leaves the $\frac{1}{2000}$ of an inch in thickness; ordinary *tin foil* being about $\frac{1}{1000}$ of an inch thick. It fuses at 442°; boils at a white heat, and burns with a blue flame to binoxide.

The more common alloys of tin with other metals have already been noticed. It was at one time used as a base for artificial teeth; and, more recently, it has been introduced as a component of "cheoplastic" metal, a compound used for the same purpose. In its pure state, it is sometimes used for counter-dies, and occasionally for dies. When employed for the latter purpose in connection with a lead counter, the latter should not be obtained directly from the die, as the high temperature of melted lead would produce, when poured upon tin, partial fusion of the latter and consequent adhesion of the two pieces. When tin is used in the formation of a die, therefore, either a counter previous obtained from a zinc die should be used, or the "dipping" method employed, by which the counter-die is first obtained from the plaster model, and a die from the counter.

ANTIMONY.

Antimony is of a silver-white color, with a tinge of blue, a lamellar texture, and crystalline fracture. It is brittle and easily pulverized. The specific gravity of the purest variety is 6·715. It fuses at about 810°, and when heated at the blowpipe, it melts with great readiness, and diffuses white vapors, possessing somewhat of a garlic smell.

Antimony enters as an ingredient into the composition of type and stereotype metal, music plates, and Britannia metal. It is also a component of certain fusible alloys analogous to those already mentioned under the head of lead, and which, in the form of a die, are sometimes used on account of their slight degree of shrinkage.

BISMUTH.

Bismuth is a white-colored metal resembling, in some degree, antimony. It is soft, but so brittle as to be easily pulverized. Its specific gravity is 9·83, which may be increased somewhat by hammering. It melts at 480° Fah., and may be cooled six or seven degrees below this point without fixing; but the moment it begins to solidify, the temperature rises to 480°, and continues stationary till the whole mass is congealed. When the temperature of the metal is raised from 32° to 212°, it expands $\frac{1}{720}$ in length.

Bismuth has the property, in a high degree, of increasing the fusibility of the metals with which it is

incorporated, and is a common ingredient of the more fusible alloys, some of which melt in boiling water. One part of bismuth with 24 of tin is malleable, but the alloy of these metals becomes brittle by the addition of more bismuth. Bismuth unites readily with antimony, and in the proportion of one part or more of the former to two of the latter, it expands in the act of cooling.

There are many other metals and alloys besides those already enumerated, but which have not been particularly described on account of their inutility in the laboratory for dental purposes. Among these may be mentioned, *iron*, *brass*, *bronze*, *&c.*, which are only employed for auxiliary purposes, and are both inconvenient and impracticable for dies on account of their infusible nature and consequent contraction; *nickel*, on account, also, of its extreme infusibility and its tendency to render the alloy, of which it is a component, less fusible; *sodium*, on account of the changes produced on it by exposure to the air; *potassium*, on account of its extreme sensitiveness to the influence of low temperatures, being semi-fluid at 60° Fah., nearly liquid at 92°, and entirely so at 120°; *arsenic*, because it volatilizes before fusing: *cadmium*, with no advantages above tin, on account of its scarcity and costliness, &c.

CHAPTER X.

GENERAL PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS, AND THEIR TREATMENT AND BEHAVIOR IN THE PROCESS OF COMPOUNDING.

All alloys possess metallic luster; are opaque, conduct heat and electricity; and, in a greater or less degree, are ductile, malleable, elastic, and sonorous. Some alloys, as brass, and gong-metal, are usually malleable in the cold, and brittle when hot.

Metals sometimes unite in atomic ratios, forming compounds of definite or equivalent proportions of their component metals; as certain alloys of copper and zinc; gold and copper; gold and silver; mercurial alloys, &c.; while, on the other hand, many are formed in all proportions, like mixtures of salt and water.

Metals differ in respect to their affinity for each other, and do not, therefore, alloy with equal facility; thus it is difficult to unite silver and iron, but the former combines readily with gold, copper, or lead.

The ductility of an alloy is, in general, less than that of its constituent metals, and this difference is, in some instances, remarkably prominent, as in the case of certain alloys of copper and tin already mentioned.

An alloy is generally harder than the mean hardness of its components, a property which, when taken in connection with their increased fusibility, gives to alloys

peculiar value in the formation of dies for stamping purposes. To the rule stated, amalgams or mercurial alloys are cited as exceptions.

The density of an alloy varies with the particular metals composing it; being generally either greater or less than the mean density of its several components.

It is impossible to predict with certainty the melting point of an alloy from that of its separate constituents, but, generally, the fusibility of the alloy is increased,—sometimes in a most remarkable degree. The alloy of 5 parts of bismuth, 3 of lead, and 2 of tin, is a striking example of this fact; this compound, melting at 197°, while the mean melting point of its constituents is 514°. Silver solder is also a familiar illustration of the influence of alloying on the fusibility of metals; copper melting at 1996°, and silver at 1873°, when combined, fuse at a heat much below that required to melt silver, the more fusible component of the alloy. Again, iron, which melts at a little less than 3000°, acquires almost the fusibility of gold when alloyed with the latter. Examples might be multiplied, but it will be sufficient to add, that, in general, metallic alloys melt at a lower heat than is required to fuse the most refractory or infusible component, and sometimes than the most fusible ingredient.

The color of an alloy cannot, in general, be inferred from that of its component metals; thus, it would be conjectured that copper would be rendered very much paler by adding to it zinc in considerable quantities; but

the fallacy of such an inference is at once shown by an examination of some of the rich-looking gold-colored varieties of brass, as Prince's metal, pinchbeck, and similor, composed each of nearly equal parts of copper and zinc; and Manheim gold, compounded of 3 parts copper and 1 of zinc.

The affinity of an alloy for oxygen is greater than that of the separate metals; a phenomenon that is ascribed by Ure to the increase of affinity for oxygen which results from the tendency of one of the oxyds to combine with the other; by others, it is attributed to galvanic action. According to Faraday, 100 parts of steel, alloyed with one of platinum, is dissolved, with effervescence, in dilute sulphuric acid too weak to act with perceptible energy on common steel. It is offered in explanation of this fact, that the steel is rendered positive by the presence of platinum. A similar illustration is afforded by the action of dilute acid on commercial zinc, which is usually an alloy of zinc with other metals.

The action of air is, in general, less on alloys than on the separate metals composing them. To this, however, there are exceptions, as the alloy of 3 parts of lead and 1 of tin, which, when heated to redness, burns briskly into a red oxyd.

Some points of practical interest suggest themselves in connection with the behaviour and proper management of alloys in the process of compounding.

As metallic alloys can only be formed by fusion, and

as the affinity of the metals composing them for oxygen is greatly increased by heat, especially those denominated base, it is important that this tendency, which is incompatible with the proportional accurateness of the compound, should be, as far as practicable, guarded against. Hence, various substances having a greater affinity for oxygen than the metals to be united, as oil or grease, rosin, powdered charcoal, etc., are generally added, coating the surface of the liquid metals, and which by affording a protective covering, preserves, with little change, the proportions of the alloy.

Some difficulty is occasionally experienced in obtaining a perfectly uniform alloy, on account of the different specific gravities of the metals composing it—each metal assuming the level due to its density. This partial separation is common to gold and silver, provided they have not been adequately stirred before pouring. This result is not so likely to occur when the metals employed are in small quantities, and are suddenly cooled; but when used in considerable masses, and allowed to cool slowly, it is much favored by permitting the metals to fix themselves in the order of their separate densities. Hence, whenever a notable difference in the specific gravity of the metals exists, the fused mass should be briskly stirred immediately before the instant of pouring it, and should be made to solidify quickly. If uniformity be not obtained in this manner, it will be necessary to re-melt and repeat the process, if necessary, until the alloy is rendered sufficiently homogeneous.

In alloying three or more metals differing greatly in fusibility, or that have but little affinity for each other, it is better to first unite those which most readily combine, and afterward, these with the remaining metal or metals. If, for example, it is desired to unite a small quantity of lead with brass or bronze, some difficulty would be experienced in forming the alloy by direct incorporation of the metals; but the union could be readily effected by first melting the lead with zinc or tin, and then adding the melted copper.

PART SECOND.

ARTIFICIAL DENTURES.

Before considering particularly the distinct and special methods employed in the construction of artificial dentures, such preliminary processes as are common in some degree to all, will, for the sake of convenient arrangement, and the avoidance of unnecessary repetition hereafter, be first considered. These processes relate, 1. To the treatment of the mouth preparatory to the insertion of artificial teeth. 2. The manner of obtaining impressions of the mouth. 3. The manner of procuring and forming plaster models of the mouth. 4. Metallic dies and counter-dies.

CHAPTER I.

TREATMENT OF THE MOUTH PREPARATORY TO THE INSERTION OF ARTIFICIAL DENTURES.

It rarely occurs that all the structures of the mouth are in such condition as will render it proper to insert an artificial appliance without some preparatory treatment. This important requirement cannot, in any material respect, be disregarded by the practitioner without endangering the utility and permanence of the substitute,

and inflicting upon the patient a train of consequences alike distressing and pernicious. Every experienced dentist is familiar with the fact, that an artificial substitute resting upon diseased roots of teeth, and impinging continually upon gums already irritable and inflamed, soon becomes a source not only of annoyance and discomfort to the patient, but is rendered, in a great degree, inefficient in the performance of some of its more important offices. There is, besides, a perpetual and cumulative aggravation of the morbid conditions, and sooner or later irretrievable destruction of the remaining natural organs will be induced. These consequences cannot be wholly averted by the most skillful manipulation, but they may be greatly magnified by a defective execution of the work, or by a faulty adaptation of the appliance to the parts in the mouth.

Patients not unfrequently attempt, by every artifice or pretext that caprice or timidity may suggest, to persuade the operator against his own clear convictions of duty, but, unless under circumstances of peculiar exigency, he should be careful to guard himself against the imputation of incompetency or bad faith, by being peremptory and unyielding in his demands upon the patient to submit to the necessities and just requirements of the case, and no ordinary circumstance should influence him in opposition to his better informed judgment.

The conditions, usually met with, to which it will be necessary to direct attention in the treatment of the

mouth, are, the presence of useless and diseased remains of teeth; accumulations of tartar; diseased states of the gum and mucous membrane; and caries.

Useless and diseased remains of teeth.—It may be stated as a general rule of practice, that all the remaining natural teeth that are not susceptible of being restored to a state of comparative health and usefulness, should be removed before inserting an artificial substitute. Especially should this course be pursued whenever the remaining roots are found partially or wholly necrosed, and the peridental membranes and surrounding tissues inflamed and suppurating. Such should be extracted if for no other reason than that they are offensive in the mouth, and tend, in a greater or less degree, to compromise the general health.

In respect to the utility, comfort, and permanence of a dental appliance, the expediency of removing the roots of teeth prior to the introduction of the former, is apparent. If a dental substitute is adapted with necessary accuracy to all the parts which it covers, it will be plainly seen that the forces applied to the base at every occlusion of the jaws in the act of mastication, instead of being equalized or diffused, will be expended mainly on the fangs, inasmuch as they afford so many fixed points of resistance, whilst the adjacent soft tissues, yielding to the pressure, permit the artificial piece to bear with undue and unequal force upon the roots. The consequences of this action are inevitably pernicious. In a

comparatively short time, inflammation and suppuration are induced about the fangs, which ultimately become loosened and painfully sensitive to the slightest pressure; the secretions of the mouth, becoming more and more acrimonious, act persistently and with increasing energy on oxydable materials present in the mouth, as well as upon the remaining natural teeth, inducing rapid and general decay; contiguous parts, through their immediate connection or sympathetic relations with the structures of the mouth, respond to the local disturbances, and the case, in time, becomes complicated with those various distressing maladies about the head and face so commonly associated with diseased conditions of the buccal cavity. At last, the patient, no longer able to endure the offensiveness and distress arising from the presence of the substitute in the mouth, or to properly masticate his food, is compelled to have the offending organs removed. The absorption of the gums and processes which follow this operation, and the corresponding changes which occur therefrom in the form of the alveolar ridge, makes it imperative in all cases, either to reconstruct the same piece or to supply the patient with an entirely new substitute; whereas, if due regard is had to the proper preparation of the mouth in the first instance, the patient may be spared such inflictions, and the operator the discredit which almost invariably attaches to the neglect of the measures recommended.

An additional reason why roots of teeth should be ex-

tracted, is, that their presence prevents, in some degree, an accurate and uniform adaptation of the appliance to all the parts on which it is designed to rest, and this is particularly true of those cases where atmospheric pressure is made available in the retention of the substitute. Any condition of the mouth that prominently modifies the natural and uniform pliancy of the soft parts, will, just to that extent, weaken the attachment of the plate. This fact is made obvious when we reflect that it is only the soft and yielding condition of the mucous membrane and gums that permit the adhesion of the artificial appliance for a single moment by atmospheric pressure; for it will be readily comprehended, that if the tissues on which it rests were as hard and unyielding as bone, a dental substitute, though it were moulded directly to the parts, would not be sustained for an instant by the external pressure of the air.

The retention of every root that may, by treatment or otherwise, be secured in good condition, has been insisted on by a few in the profession, on the ground that they afford a fixed and permanent basis for the dental appliance, and preserve, without change, the customary fullness and contour of the mouth. Individual instances doubtless occur that render this course admissible, but as a rule of practice, it is exposed, though in a less degree perhaps, to the same objections which have been adverted to in connection with diseased roots. However carefully or skillfully such roots may be treated and prepared, or

the substitute applied, entire success and permanent benefit to the patient cannot be reasonably anticipated. It rarely happens that the fangs of teeth, whose crowns have been destroyed by caries or accident, are found without having suffered, at some time and in some degree, from disease of the investing membranes and surrounding structures; and although these conditions may have apparently subsided, or may have been temporarily subdued by treatment, yet observation of such cases leads to the conclusion that, however free from indications of active disease they may appear at the time, the latent predisposition favoring a recurrence of the morbid action usually exists in such cases, and will require no greater provocation than the continued and unequal action of an artificial fixture on them to awaken this predisposition into active development.

From the views here expressed, we are convinced, that as a principle of practice, the fangs of teeth, however apparently free from disease, should be extracted in the first instance. There are, nevertheless, circumstances which clearly justify a departure from the rule we have endeavored to enforce; as in the process of engrafting an artificial crown upon a well-conditioned root; or supplying the loss of one or more of the front teeth, by attaching the artificial organs to a plate, and fixing the latter in the mouth by pivoting to one or more of the natural roots. Either of these methods may, under certain circumstances and within

certain limitations, be preferable to extracting the roots of such teeth and supplying the vacuities by other means.

Removal of salivary calculus or tartar.—The deposits of tartar which so frequently collect at the necks of the teeth and under the free margins of the gum, not only promote inflammation and absorption of the investing membrane and contiguous soft parts, but involve, by degrees, the alveolar processes in the destructive action; so that teeth originally firm become loosened in their sockets, and thus, in their turn, become additional sources of diseased action in the surrounding structures. Hence it becomes absolutely necessary, as it relates to the general health of the mouth, to thoroughly remove, with suitable instruments, all traces of this concretion from the teeth.

If any considerable number of the teeth are found coated with tartar, and it is deposited in large quantities, it will be impracticable, as a general thing, to remove thoroughly all remains of it at a single sitting. The operation should be repeated, therefore, from time to time, until every portion of it is completely separated from the teeth; the latter should then be well polished with suitably shaped burnishers, and the gums, if highly inflamed and turgid, may be either freely scarified at those points where they dip between the teeth, or cleansed and treated with appropriate detergent and remedial agents.

Diseased conditions of the mucous membrane and gums.—It will seldom be necessary to institute treatment for the reduction of inflammation and ulceration of the soft tissues of the mouth after the removal of diseased fangs and tartar, inasmuch as these conditions being generally provoked by, and associated with, the latter, will spontaneously subside with the removal of the exciting causes. If, however, there are other morbid conditions of the soft tissues, or osseous structures of the mouth not immediately arising from the presence of diseased roots and tartar, they should be treated in accordance with the particular pathological conditions present.

Caries or decay of the remaining teeth.—In order that all the teeth which it is deemed advisable to retain in the mouth, may be permanently preserved, it will be necessary to fill, or otherwise treat, such as may be affected by caries. This operation will be attended with more satisfactory results and be accompanied with less pain to the patient, and diminished risk of failure, when performed after the removal of the roots of teeth and tartar, and the restoration of diseased conditions of the mouth to health; as in this case, there will be less irritability of the general system, and reduced sensitiveness of the teeth operated on.

Surgical treatment of the mouth after the extraction of teeth.—In the preparation of the mouth for entire sets of artificial teeth, it frequently becomes necessary to extract the remains of all or nearly all of the teeth of one or

both jaws. In such cases, the ridge is left ragged and broken, with flaps of gum lying in loose folds along the border, and the exposed margins of the alveolar processes projecting from underneath. These parts, if left in this condition, will be productive of more or less inconvenience to the patient; for as the gums close over and contract upon the cutting edges of the processes, irritation and inflammation will be induced at those points where they are most prominent. Immediately after the extraction of the teeth, therefore, any flaps of gum hanging loosely around the sockets should be clipped off, and sharp and protruding portions of processes cut away with excising forceps. If, in the course of a few weeks prominences still remain, over which the mucous membrane is stretched and irritated or inflamed, as is more frequently the case around the sockets of the cuspidati, the membrane should be divided over such points with a lancet, and the sharp points of bone underneath broken down with suitable cutting instruments.

Time necessary to elapse, after the extraction of teeth, before inserting artificial dentures.—The time that should elapse after extracting the natural teeth, before replacing them with artificial substitutes, will depend upon various circumstances. If the appliance is only intended to meet the wants of the individual until all the changes effected by absorption of the gums and processes are fully completed, it may be inserted in from one to

three weeks, depending somewhat upon the number of teeth extracted, the extent of the injuries unavoidably inflicted upon the parts, and the virulence of the diseased action present in the structures of the mouth at the time of the operation. If there are no unusual complications, and the space or spaces to be supplied are such as are made by the loss of only one or two teeth at intervals, the parts quickly assume their normal condition, and the piece to be temporarily worn may be applied within a few days. If, however, a greater number or all of the teeth have been removed, more or less inflammation and tenderness will be present for from ten days to two or three weeks, and which will render the wearing of an artificial piece uncomfortable to the patient, and in some degree, mischievous, by aggravating the morbid conditions already existing. Another objection to the too early introduction of artificial substitutes into the mouth, arises from the fact that the changes which occur in the ridge are much more rapid within the first few weeks after the extraction of the teeth than at any subsequent period, so that the plate, if inserted immediately or within a few days after such operation, will soon lose its bearing upon the ridge and become inefficient for masticating purposes, or may even fail to be retained in the mouth without much annoyance to the patient. Two or more weeks, therefore, should elapse before applying the substitute. In the meantime, the patient should be seen frequently, and such medi-

cal or surgical treatment adopted from time to time as the case may demand.

It has been objected to the insertion of what are termed temporary sets of teeth, that they tend to produce unequal absorption of the parts on which they rest. We cannot but regard this view as mainly speculative. In respect to the upper jaw, at least, there is no such pressure exerted as would result in permanent irregularities in the ridge, for, as the latter recedes in the process of absorption, it is more and more relieved from direct contact with the plate covering it—that portion of the plate resting against the roof of the mouth preventing it from following the retreating gums. Hence it is that such substitutes soon begin to "rock" in the mouth, and are easily dislodged, when pressed upon laterally, in consequence of the want of an adequate marginal bearing. Nor does the objection hold good in reference to the inferior maxilla where the pressure of the substitute upon the ridge is continuous throughout the period of absorption; for if the ultimate form of the ridge were influenced at all in these cases, we should have, at the conclusion of the period, the same irregularities as at first, with simple diminution of substance; for we know of no peculiarities in the physiological condition of the structures that would render one part amenable to this assumed consequence of pressure and another exempt from it. Common observation, on the contrary, clearly shows that the process of absorption and deposition go on, uninterruptedly, and are, in no

appreciable degree, influenced by the presence of the temporary substitute in the mouth.

The advantages of temporary sets of teeth to the patient, on the other hand, are unquestionable. They fulfill, in a tolerable degree, all the requirements of artificial teeth under any circumstances, if we except that of mastication, this function being, more or less, imperfectly performed with such pieces. One of their most important offices consists in maintaining unchanged the customary relation or closure of the jaws. Undue projection, and in many cases, partial luxation, of the inferior jaw results from the loss of all of the teeth, and these conditions may become permanent in their character if long continued.

The time occupied in the *completion* of those changes which occur in the alveolar border after the extraction of all or any considerable number of the teeth, cannot be definitely stated, but will range from five to eighteen months or more, according to the amount of superfluous structures to be removed, the density of the osseous tissues, and the functional activity of the absorbents. In all cases, ample time should be permitted to elapse, in order that no appreciable change in the form of the parts may take place after the appliance has been permanently adjusted.

CHAPTER II.

MATERIALS AND METHODS EMPLOYED IN OBTAINING IMPRESSIONS OF THE MOUTH.

In the process of constructing a dental substitute, it is of the first importance that as accurate an impression as possible should be obtained of all those parts of the mouth with which the appliance is in any way connected. If this important preliminary step is, in any essential respect, imperfectly performed, the ultimate utility of the artificial fixture will either be greatly impaired or wholly destroyed, notwithstanding all the subsequent manipulations may be most carefully and skillfully performed. The operator, therefore, should avail himself of every appliance and facility that will enable him to attain, in this respect, the most perfect results.

The materials ordinarily employed for this purpose, are wax, gutta percha, and plaster of Paris.

Wax.—There are two varieties of this substance in common use,—the *yellow* and *white* wax. The yellow variety is esteemed preferable to the white on account of its superior toughness; the latter being, to some extent, disintegrated, or rendered less tenacious in the process of bleaching, but is frequently used and is preferred by many on account of its color. The more desirable properties of the yellow wax are often impaired by the ad-

mixture with it of tallow, with which it is, for mercenary purposes, frequently contaminated. The presence of tallow may be detected by its characteristic odor, and by the whitish or pale yellow color it imparts to the wax, which, in its pure state, is of a deep, bright straw color.

Wax used for impressions should always be kept in convenient form for immediate use, and may be prepared either by warming it until sufficiently soft and then rolling or pressing it into thin sheets; or having melted it in a properly formed vessel, immerse in it a thin strip of board, previously moistened, and withdraw quickly; this is repeated as the successive layers cool, until a coating of sufficient thickness is obtained. The latter is a convenient method of obtaining sheets of wax of uniform thickness, a form frequently required for various purposes in the dental laboratory.

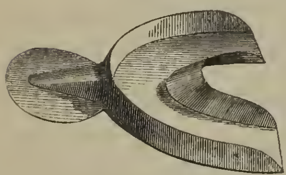
Manner of obtaining an impression of the mouth in wax for partial upper dentures. Until within the past few years, wax has been used almost exclusively for the purpose of obtaining an impression of the mouth in those cases where any number of the natural teeth remain in either or both jaws, and, for this purpose, is ordinarily more convenient and manageable than plaster, and, if carefully manipulated, will secure in most cases a sufficiently accurate impression of the parts.

Before preparing the wax, a suitable cup or holder should be selected for the particular case in hand. These

appliances are usually constructed either of plate or block tin, Britannia metal, or silver, and a sufficient number of the various forms required should be provided to meet perfectly every requirement in respect to the size and form of the jaws of individual cases.

For upper partial or broken sets, the form of cup represented in Fig. 15 may be used. It should be large enough to embrace the alveolar ridge, leaving a space of nearly a fourth of an inch between its outer rim and the external border of the gum.

Fig. 15.



If it is designed to employ an atmospheric pressure plate covering nearly or quite all of the hard palate, a cup of the same general form, but with its central portion extended posteriorly, may be used; or a full cup like that represented in Fig. 17 may be employed. Having selected a cup of the proper form and size, the wax should be warmed in a spirit flame until it acquires about the consistence of freshly made putty. Wax is sometimes softened by immersing it in hot water, but the dry heat is preferable, as the former seems to impair, to some extent, its toughness and continuity. In taking the impression, the operator should place himself behind and to the right of the patient, and should be sufficiently raised above the latter to enable him to manipulate with the greatest ease and certainty, and, at the same time, to command as full and unobstructed a view of the inte-

rior of the mouth as possible. The cup, with the wax arranged, should then be introduced into the mouth without unnecessary delay. To do this properly and without subjecting the patient to annoyance, will occasionally require some care and expertness on account of the disproportionate size of the cup and orifice of the mouth. An ample and expanded jaw, for example, is frequently associated with a small mouth, and if in addition to this the sphincter muscle of the mouth happens to be rigid and unyielding, the introduction of a cup of sufficient size may be attended with some little difficulty and embarrassment. This impediment, however, may be readily overcome in most cases by presenting the cup obliquely to the mouth, one side resting against, and pressing outward, the corner of the mouth, while, as the opposite corner is extended with the first and second fingers of the left hand, the cup is passed in with a rotary movement.

When the cup is within the mouth, it should be carefully adjusted over the ridge before pressing it up, so that no portions of the rim may cut into the soft tissues of the mouth; an accident liable to happen without care, and which will make it necessary in most cases to withdraw the cup before the impression is complete. The proper position of the cup in the mouth secured, it should be held firmly with the thumb resting on the handle above, and two or more of the fingers on the under surface, when it is slowly but steadily and forcibly pressed

against the parts above until the ridge is completely imbedded, and the wax carried closely against the roof of the mouth. The cup should then be held stationary with one hand while with the fingers of the other the wax around the margins of the cup should be pressed closely into all the depressions occurring on the outside of the ridge between the remaining teeth, or wherever irregularities may present themselves on the external border of the jaw. The finger should also be passed to the roof of the mouth at the central and posterior edge of the cup, making pressure against the protruding wax upward and forward into the anterior and deeper portions of the palatal arch. When the operation has been conducted thus far, and before removing the cup, gentle upward pressure upon the latter may again be made,—not enough to move the entire body of wax, but only sufficient to correct any partial displacement that may have happened from accidental tilting or lateral movement of the cup during the concluding manipulations.

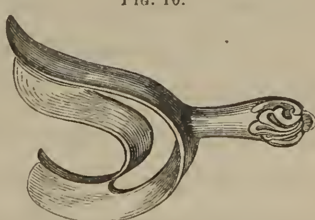
After the wax has remained in the mouth long enough to become in some degree hardened, it should be carefully detached by gentle traction upon the cup, and removed from the mouth in the same manner in which it was introduced; care being taken not to displace the wax or otherwise mar the impression. More or less dragging of the wax, however, will unavoidably occur in proportion as the teeth are irregularly arranged in the arch, or have contracted necks. Imperfections

occurring from these sources may be remedied with tolerable accuracy by subsequent carving of the plaster model, but the better plan, where these conditions prevail to any considerable extent, is to substitute gutta percha for wax, the elasticity of this substance enabling it to regain the form it acquires in the mouth after having been temporarily disturbed or changed in the act of detaching it from the teeth.

Inasmuch as it is necessary, in constructing partial sets of teeth, to be provided with two or more plaster models, and as the latter cannot well be obtained in perfect condition from a single impression, it is better that at least two of the latter should be secured in the first instance.

Manner of obtaining an impression of the lower jaw in wax for partial dentures.—If the case is one where teeth at intervals are to be supplied, the form of cup used in taking an impression for an entire lower denture, (Fig. 18,) may be employed; or if the vacuity exists in the front part of the ridge only, then one like that represented in Fig. 15 will answer the purpose. If, however, as is more generally the case, the front teeth remain, and those posterior to the cuspids or bicuspids are to be replaced, the form of cup exhibited in Fig. 16 should be used; a portion being cut out from the front part

Fig. 16.



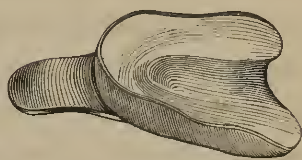
of it, forming a vacuity which receives and permits an unobstructed passage of the front teeth. As the latter are often very long, it is difficult, with the ordinary form of cup, to press the wax down fairly upon the ridge behind without bringing their cutting edges prematurely in contact with the floor of the cup in front. Instead of the opening represented, in the cup, however, it will be sufficient, in most cases, to have it formed with a depression in front of adequate depth to receive the points of the anterior teeth.

In taking an impression of the lower jaw, after having prepared and arranged the wax by softening and filling the groove of the cup flush with the margins, the operator may first take a position to the right and back of the patient, and introduce the cup into the mouth in the manner heretofore described, when he should pass to the front of the patient, and having adjusted the cup properly over the ridge, the first two or three fingers of each hand should be placed upon the top of each side of the cup, and a thumb upon each side and underneath the jaw, and firm and steady pressure made until the ridge is wholly imbedded. The wax may then be pressed in around the margins of the cup, and the impression carefully removed from the mouth in the manner before indicated.

Manner of obtaining an impression of the mouth in wax for entire upper dentures.—The form of cup employed in taking an impression of the upper jaw in the absence of

all the natural teeth, is seen in Fig. 17. A number of these corresponding as nearly as possible in form and size to the various modifications in the configuration and dimensions of the maxillary arch, should be kept conveniently at hand. If the teeth have been recently extracted, the wax should be prepared somewhat softer than usual to prevent displacement of the gums, which, in their unabsorbed condition, possess more or less mobility. The cup should be filled flush with the edges, and built up in the centre if the depth of the palatal vault requires it, and the wax properly trimmed; it is then introduced into the mouth and adjusted to the ridge as already described, and pressed to the jaw with sufficient force to fully encase all the parts to which the substitute is ultimately to be applied. The wax, as the cup is pressed up, has a tendency to roll out at its edges and thus depart from the upper and outer portions of the ridge; hence care must be taken to press the wax in around the marginal portions of the cup, filling up any depressions or fosses that may occur on the external border of the jaw. It is particularly necessary to observe this precaution whenever the ridge overhangs, as is prominently the case for the few first months after the extraction of the teeth.

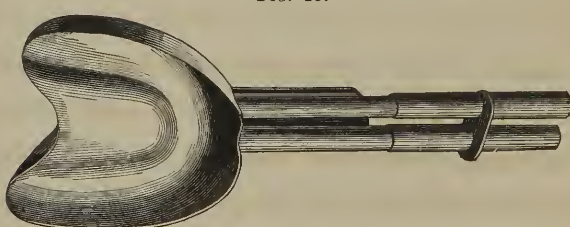
FIG. 17.



If the impression is an accurate one, some difficulty is occasionally experienced in detaching it from the

mouth on account of the thorough exclusion of air from between it and the mouth, the wax being held firmly in place by atmospheric pressure; in which event, it is only necessary to admit the air between the two, and this may generally be readily effected by placing the finger against the jaw on one side and above the wax, pressing firmly toward the centre of the arch and upward, dragging the mucus membrane somewhat from the edge of the cup, and at the same time depressing the latter on the same side. A small portion of air being admitted, it will soon diffuse itself between the adhering surfaces and allow the wax to be readily detached. To harden the wax, and thereby prevent it from dragging at those points where the ridge overhangs, or to prevent any change of form on the application of sufficient force to detach it from the mouth when it adheres with great tenacity, a cup has been constructed with a chamber underneath into which a stream of cold water is admitted. Two short pipes, as will be seen by reference to Fig. 18,

Fig. 18.



communicate with the chamber, and these again connect with a double tube fitting them closely, and united

at the other end, with two gum elastic tubes—one communicating with a vessel of water conveniently placed and provided with a stop-cock, the other leading to a spittoon or other waste place. The two portions of pipe may be disconnected when not in use. After taking an impression with this cup, and before removing the wax from the mouth, the two portions of pipe are connected and a continuous current of cold water passed through the chamber by turning the faucet connected with the tank; when sufficiently hard, the wax is removed from the mouth before disjointing the pipes to prevent the water from flowing upon the patient.

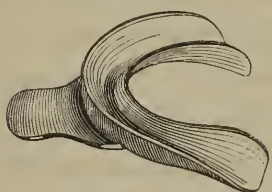
To provide more perfectly against failure of the wax being carried closely against the roof of the mouth in cases where the palatal vault is very deep, a piece may be cut from the central part of the cup; the wax being pressed at this point upward and forward into the deeper portions of the palatal fosse.

The author would express, in this connection, his conviction that it is impracticable, in most cases, to obtain a faultless impression of the mouth in wax for full upper dentures. There are points, not readily accessible to the fingers, where the wax departs from the external and posterior borders of the jaw, and is not, therefore, susceptible of easy correction; besides, when reached and the remedy applied, there is no certain assurance that in pressing the wax in at one point we are not displacing it at another. For this reason, we invariably

use plaster in these cases, and we have sufficient reason to believe that the results are more uniformly successful.

Manner of obtaining an impression of the lower jaw in wax for entire dentures.—The method pursued in securing an impression of the lower jaw in wax for an entire denture, differs in no essential respect from that described when taking an impression for lower partial pieces, the form of cup being represented in Fig. 19. When the parts are imbedded in the wax, the latter should be pressed in around the inner border of the holder, but more especially near the posterior part of the ridge on each side where the latter overhang and approximate each other, forming corresponding excavations underneath. After adjusting the wax to the ridge along the border of the cup, the latter should again be pressed directly down upon the jaw before removing it, to correct any partial deformity that may have occurred during the previous manipulations.

Fig. 19.



Gutta Percha.—This material is rarely used except in obtaining impressions for partial pieces, and is more particularly indispensable whenever a perfect representation of the parts in plaster is essential to the success of any method in which the base is moulded or cast upon the model, as in the case of the "Vulcanite" or "Cheoplastic" processes. It takes the form and position of the

teeth readily, and preserves them unchanged, by virtue of its elasticity, when removed from the mouth.

The general management of this substance in the process of obtaining an impression with it, is in most respects, similar to that of wax, when used for the same purpose. It should, however, be prepared by softening it in hot water, but as the heat required to render it sufficiently plastic is greater than could be well endured without inflicting injury upon the soft tissues of the mouth, and subjecting the patient to pain in its application, it is customary, after having heated it sufficiently and packed the cup, to chill the surface by plunging it into cold water, and then introduce it quickly into the mouth. When the impression is secured, and the gutta percha has become somewhat rigid in the mouth, it should be removed and filled immediately with plaster, as it contracts rapidly in cooling.

Plaster of Paris, or gypsum, or technically, sulphate of lime, has been long employed in taking impressions of the mouth for entire dentures, and more recently and to a limited extent, for partial or broken sets. For entire pieces, it has almost wholly superseded the use of wax, and is better adapted for receiving an accurate impression of the mouth, whenever it is desired to secure a copy of all its parts in their undisturbed relation to each other, than any material that has yet been employed.

When used for this purpose, it should be of the best quality, finely pulverized and well sifted, and should

always be kept in a closed vessel, as the moisture which it attracts from the atmosphere impairs its property of hardening quickly when prepared for use. If impregnated with moisture, it should be first dried in a shallow vessel over a moderate heat before being used.

It is prepared for use by mixing with it a sufficient quantity of water to form a batter of about the consistence of very thick molasses, in which condition it hardens by a species of crystalization in from three to five minutes. The condensation of the plaster mixture is hastened somewhat by the admixture of a small quantity of the chloride of soda or common salt. The best method of preparing plaster, however, for the purpose under consideration, is to combine water with it in sufficient quantity to form, in the first place, a very thin batter, and then to stir or beat it constantly with a small spatula until it becomes sufficiently thickened to admit of its adhering in a body to the vessel in which it is mixed when the latter is inverted, and when one portion will retain nearly its form when heaped upon another. By this process of protracted beating, called sometimes "tempering," it is made tough and pasty, without having its plasticity impaired, and when introduced into the mouth in this condition, it adapts itself readily to the parts; hardens quickly; and is not liable, with ordinary care, to incommode the patient by running back into the fauces. So quickly, indeed, does it condense, that, unless expeditiously introduced into the mouth, it will begin to

"set" before the parts are fairly imbedded. When preparing it for use, therefore, the plaster should be mixed at the chair with the cup conveniently at hand, while the patient should be in proper position and in immediate readiness for the operation.

In view of the liability of the plaster to run back into the fauces when the cup is pressed to its place in the mouth, producing nausea and involuntary retching and which is very liable to occur whenever the mixture is too thin or is improperly manipulated, it is recommended to instruct the patient to avoid swallowing while the plaster is in the mouth. Patients are also advised to breathe through the nostrils, but we see no good reason for this injunction. It should be remembered that, in the act of breathing through the nose, the velum palati or soft palate is depressed to cut off the passage of air through the mouth, and that it is thus brought more immediately in contact with any portions of plaster that may be protruding from the heel of the cup. The stimulus of contact will tend to produce involuntary contractions of the muscles of the soft palate and fauces, and thus portions of soft, or fragments of hard, plaster will be worked or drawn back into the fauces producing the very evils it is designed to avoid. If, therefore, patients are instructed at all in this respect, they should be advised to breathe naturally through the mouth; this channel affording less obstruction to respiration than that through the nostrils in the act of taking an impression.

Manner of obtaining an impression of the mouth in plaster for partial upper dentures.—There are conditions of the mouth incident to the presence of natural teeth within it, which would seem to preclude the use of plaster in taking an impression of the parts. Thus, if any number of the teeth remaining are small at the necks with enlarging crowns, or if they are irregularly arranged in the circle, having either an anterior, posterior or lateral obliquity, it would not only be difficult to detach hardened plaster from teeth so circumstanced, but the force necessary to remove it would inevitably break away portions of plaster from around the teeth. Another apparent objection to the use of plaster in these cases consists in the difficulty with which the impression is separated from the plaster model, it being necessary to cut away the former by piecemeal, as it would be impossible to separate the two in the ordinary way.

The difficulties incident to the detachment of the plaster from the teeth in the mouth, may be obviated in either of the following ways: 1. Take an impression first in wax, and with a metallic die and counter, obtained from a model of the parts, swage a plate of tin, brass, or silver of the size and form of the intended base; coat the palatal surface of this temporary holder with a thin coating of plaster mixture, and apply it to the mouth in the manner usually employed in obtaining an impression.

2. Take an impression of the parts in wax and cut away from the latter all those portions indented by the

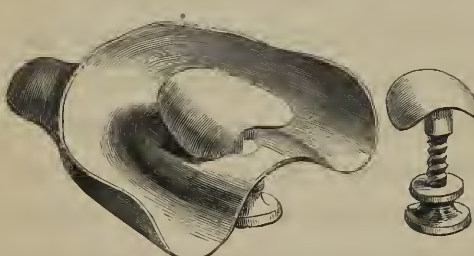
teeth, leaving only so much of the wax surface as corresponds with the palate and interspaces in the ridge; use this as a holder, and secure the impression by coating its surface, as before, with a thin layer of plaster batter. By either of the above methods an impression of those parts, only, on which the substitute is designed to rest, can be taken; the form and position of the teeth must be secured in a separate impression either with wax or gutta percha.

Notwithstanding the obvious objections already stated, many operators prefer, in taking impressions for partial cases, to imbed all the parts in plaster in the same manner as when wax is used, being careful to remove the former from the mouth before it has acquired the usual hardness. If the remaining teeth have contracted necks, or are placed irregularly in the arch, they may be partially encased in wax before applying the plaster; this will facilitate the withdrawal of the impression and preserve the form of the teeth; the wax, receiving the impress of the teeth, coming away with the plaster. The form of the cup used in these cases is the same as that represented in Fig. 17, the edge of which may be turned in a little at points to prevent the plaster from being dragged from the cup. The cup being filled with the plaster mixture is introduced into the mouth and carefully pressed up until all the parts are fully imbedded. When partial hardening of the plaster has occurred, sufficient tractive force should be judiciously applied to the

cup to separate the plaster from the teeth and soft parts, when it should be carefully removed from the mouth. If any portion of the plaster, essential to the form of the impression, should break away, the fragment or fragments may be secured and afterwards applied to the fractured surfaces.

Considerable force is sometimes necessary to separate the plaster from the teeth, and in the effort to remove the former, it is liable to part from the cup and remain fixed in the mouth; in which case it will be necessary to cut it away by piecemeal. This casuality may be effectually prevented by employing the form of cup shown in Fig. 20, contrived by Dr. Samuel Wardle, of Cincinnati, and used by him with entire success. It

Fig. 20.



will be seen to consist of an ordinary holder, the cup portion perforated in the centre through which a small rod passes with a screw cut on one end, and the other surmounted with a concave phlange, around and underneath which the plaster collects. The rod is formed with a shoulder resting on the palatal face of the cup, and is fixed in position by screwing the tap against the lower surface of the holder. A number of these centre pieces with shafts of various lengths, should be provided, in order that any

desired elevation may be given to the cap or phlange; for the latter is designed not only to confine the plaster, but also to carry it up into the roof of the mouth where the latter is very deep.

Manner of obtaining an impression of the mouth in plaster for entire upper dentures.—The form of cup used in securing an impression of the upper jaw for entire sets of teeth, differs in no essential respect from that recommended when wax is used for similar purposes. If the external border of the alveolar ridge is very deep, or there is considerable space intervening between the heel of the cup and the floor of the palate, a rim of wax may be placed along the outer margin of the cup, and extended across its posterior border, in order, more effectually, to confine the plaster within the cup and prevent its escape into the back part of the mouth before it has fairly reached the palatal vault. If the latter is very deep, with a marked excavation in its central and anterior portion, or if it presents somewhat the form of a deep fissure, the plaster may fail to be carried perfectly against the floor of the palate, or the air becoming confined within the central portion of the arch, when the plaster is pressed up, may displace the latter and form corresponding chambers in the impression. If these imperfections are but slight, they may be subsequently remedied either by filling up the cavity or cavities in the impression, or by trimming away at these points from the model. The better plan, however, where these conditions of the vault

prevail, is to take up a small portion of plaster on the end of a spatula and apply it to the deeper portions of the arch just before introducing the cup.

The patient being seated as nearly upright in the chair as possible, with the head inclined slightly forward, the cup is filled with the plaster mixture and introduced quickly into the mouth, when it is pressed up slowly and gently until the parts are completely encased and portions of plaster are seen to protrude from all parts of the margins of the cup, otherwise the impression is liable to be imperfect either on its outer borders or on its palatal face. Immediately after introducing and pressing up the cup, the lip in front should be extended and drawn down over the cup, when gentle pressure, as the plaster is hardening, may be made upon the outside of the lip in front and at either side of the mesial line, to force the plaster more perfectly into the fosses which exist at these points.

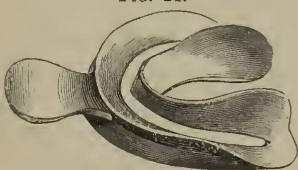
It is essential to perfect success in this operation, that the cup, after the parts are once imbedded, should be held perfectly stationary until the plaster becomes fixed, as the slightest movement, when the plaster is in the act of consolidating, will derange the impression and render it faulty. Again, if after the parts are imbedded, the operator discovers that they are not sufficiently encased, and the plaster has partially set, no further effort should be made to press the plaster up upon the parts, but the cup should be withdrawn and the operation repeated with fresh plaster.

If the operation has been successfully conducted, the plaster will adhere to the mouth, in most instances, with great tanacity, and it will be necessary to observe some caution in removing it; for, if forcibly detached, injury may be inflicted upon the soft parts by tearing away portions of mucus membrane; or the impression may be fractured or otherwise impaired. In addition to the means already adverted to in connection with the method of separating wax impressions from the mouth, resort is sometimes had to the following expedient:—The central portion of the cup being pierced with two or three small holes, a blunt-pointed probe is passed at these points through the plaster, before the latter has hardened perfectly, to the roof of the mouth. Into these passages the external air passes and diffuses itself between the surface of the plaster and the palate, when the impression may be readily detached. The author has succeeded best in detaching impressions in such cases, by upward and interrupted traction upon the handle of the cup, which, by depressing the heel of the same, more readily permits the introduction of air than by either of the methods commonly employed.

Manner of obtaining an impression of the mouth in plaster for entire lower dentures.—Until recently, wax has been almost invariably used in taking impressions of the lower jaw. Plaster, however, may be used for the same purpose, and, by some, is esteemed superior to the former. The ordinary wax holder as shown in Fig. 19,

may be used, and which, being filled with the plaster batter thoroughly beaten until quite tough and pasty, is inverted and quickly introduced into the mouth and pressed down upon the ridge until the latter is completely imbedded; when sufficiently hard it should be removed in the ordinary way. A better form of cup, however, contrived expressly for the purpose by Dr. W. B. Franklin, is exhibited in Fig. 21. It consists of two chambers, or a double groove, communicating with each other by a fissure running from heel to heel of the cup. The groove corresponding with the curvature of the lower jaw is filled with plaster properly prepared; inverted; passed into the mouth; and pressed down upon the parts. As the cup is pressed down, portions of plaster will be forced through the fissure into the upper chamber,—this should be pressed down at all points along the groove with the finger, securing more perfectly, in this manner, the intrusion of the plaster into any irregularities or depressions that may occur in the ridge. Or, the empty cup may be placed in its proper position over the jaw and the plaster introduced into the upper groove and pressed down with the fingers through the fissure on to the ridge, filling the depending chamber.

Fig. 21.



CHAPTER III.

PLASTER MODELS.

After an impression of the mouth has been secured in either of the ways mentioned in the preceding chapter, the next step in the process of constructing an artificial denture, is, to procure from the impression a representation of the parts in plaster. The copy thus secured is called a model, and, if correctly obtained, is a true counterpart or fac-simile of all parts of the mouth represented in the impression.

Manner of obtaining a plaster model from an impression in wax for partial dentures.—The impression in wax should be first trimmed by cutting away superfluous portions that overhang the borders of the cup, care being taken not to mar any essential part of the impression. The surface of the wax imprinted should then be uniformly smeared with a thin coating of oil applied with a camels-hair brush. The oil should not be of too thick a consistence, nor applied in too large quantities, as it will collect in the more depending portions of the impression, and, failing to be displaced by the plaster, will leave the model imperfect at these points, especially at the coronal extremities of the plaster teeth. The cup is now surrounded by some substance that will confine the plaster and give proper form to the body of the model.

For this purpose any material that is easily shaped may be used, as a thin sheet of lead or wax, paper, strips of oil or wax cloth, &c.

Before pouring the plaster, if it is desired to strengthen any of the plaster teeth,—as those adjoining the vacuities in the jaw, or such as are to be used in adjusting clasps, and thus secure them against accident in handling,—adequate support may be imparted to them by placing short pieces of stiff wire vertically in the depressions made in the wax by the teeth, and which may be supported in an upright position by imbedding one end in the wax in the centre of the bottom of each cavity.

When the cup is properly enclosed, a batter of plaster, of somewhat thinner consistence than that used for impressions, is poured in upon the surface of the wax in sufficient quantity to give to the body of the model a depth of from one to three inches according to the particular requirements of the case. The plaster should not be poured directly or hastily into the cavities formed by the teeth, but upon points contiguous to them, and from which it should be allowed to run slowly into the depressions expelling the contained oil or air and filling them perfectly. When the plaster has become sufficiently hard, any portions overlapping the borders of the wax, and not essential to the form of the model, should be cut away and the two separated either by immersion in warm water, or by placing the model over the flame of a spirit lamp or upon a heated surface until the

warmth imparted to the model renders the wax sufficiently soft to allow the former to be removed without fracturing the plaster teeth. The latter methods should be adopted whenever it is desired to obtain duplicate copies from the same impression, as by the use of hot water the impression is destroyed, the latter, however, being generally used when gutta percha is employed. When separated from the impression, the model should be properly trimmed and shaped with a knife blade.

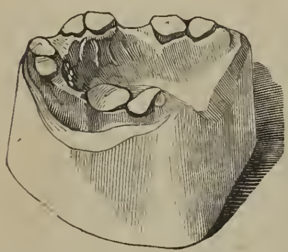
The general form of the body of a model is shown in Fig. 22. The walls, as will be seen, are made as nearly vertical or parallel as will admit of the model being readily detached from the sand in the process of molding; for if made too flaring or divergent, the metallic die obtained from it will be more liable to crack or spread apart under the repeated strokes of a heavy hammer, or to rock under one-sided blows.

During the process of stamping or forcing a metallic base into adaptation to the die,—which is a metallic counterpart of the model—the plate, when cut to the exact pattern of the parts to be covered by it, is frequently forced or dragged back toward the heel of the die, and is thus drawn from the teeth at the sides and in front. This displacement of the plate may be prevented by cutting away all of the plaster teeth from the model, leaving, however, enough of them remaining where they unite with the body of the model to form a shoulder to each tooth, as in Fig. 22. In this case,

10

the plate should be sufficiently ample in its dimensions to partially overlap the border, when, as it is forced into adaptation, distinct indentations will be made in it corresponding exactly with the palatal curvatures of the teeth; the portions of plate covering the cut ends of the teeth are then cut away with plate forceps or other instruments. If, however, the plate is of the exact size required before stamping, one or two plaster teeth upon each side of the model may be allowed to remain, against the anterior face of which the plate is made to rest, holding it stationary.

Fig. 22.



Manner of obtaining a plaster model from an impression in wax for entire dentures.—The same general method is pursued in obtaining a plaster model from an impression in wax of either the upper or lower jaw for entire dentures, as that employed in partial cases. The general form of these pieces is represented in Figs. 23 and 24.

If it is desired to swage a rim to the plate, forming a groove or socket into which the plate extremities of the teeth are received, the model should be formed in the manner represented in the annexed cuts; in which it will be seen that an abrupt shoulder is formed on the external border of the model of the upper jaw, (Fig. 23) but which on the lower, (Fig. 24) is extended round the inner border also, as it is desirable, in the latter case, to

give a rounded edge to the lingual border of the plate, and which is accomplished in part by swaging in the first instance and afterwards by turning the edge down

Fig. 23.

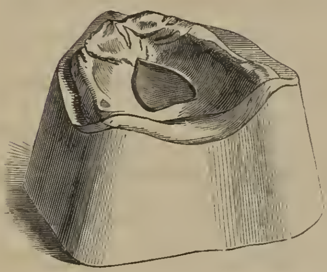
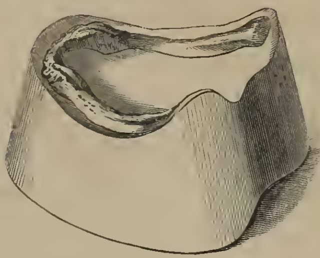


Fig. 24.



upon the plate with pliers or by other means. The model is prepared by adjusting a strip of softened wax around the border and cutting away from its upper surface in such a way as to form a groove, the bottom of which shall be on a line with the extreme edge of the base or plate and which should be indicated upon the model with a pencil mark before applying the roll of wax. Plaster may be substituted for wax, and should always be used whenever heat is applied to the model in the process of obtaining a metallic swage, as by the "dipping" method.

If the model is to be used in molding, the groove should be sufficiently open to permit the ready withdrawal of the sand, otherwise the die at this part will be imperfect; if, however, the face of the model is to be immersed in molten metal, securing first the counter-die, any form may be given to the groove that will best facili-

tate the operation of overturning the margins of the plate.

Rimmed plates are only required when single gum teeth or sectional or entire blocks are employed, or when plate teeth are mounted on a platinum base with continuous gum.

Whenever an air chamber is to be stamped in the base, the model should be prepared for the purpose before casting the metallic swages. The general form and position of the central cavity or chamber in the arch is represented in Fig. 23. The model may be prepared in either of the following ways: 1. The form of the chamber may be cut from the wax or plaster impression; in which case the plaster will be raised at a corresponding point or points upon the model, and will have exactly the same form and depth as the cavity in the impression. 2. Cover the palatal face of the model with a sheet of wax equal in thickness to the required depth of the chamber, and cut out from this, at the desired point, the form of the cavity; fill the latter with plaster, and when hard remove the wax and trim the raised portion to the proper form. 3. Cut a pattern chamber, of the required form and thickness, from sheet wax or lead; place it in proper position in the arch and press down with the fingers or burnisher until it conforms to the contour of the palate; it is then fixed in place either by confining it with a small piece of wire or tack driven through it into the plaster, or by interposing softened wax or other

adhesive material between the chamber and model. A small brush loaded with a varnish mixture passed round the edge of the chamber will insure sufficient adhesion of the latter.

The same general method as that when central chambers are formed is pursued in the preparation of the model when it is desired to construct lateral cavities in the plate. The form and position of these on the model will be indicated by inspection of the form of "lateral cavity" plates as exhibited in the chapter on "Entire Dentures."

There are other modifications in the form of cavity plates, some of which are obsolete; that known as "Cleveland's chamber," is still in limited use and will be described in a subsequent chapter, but does not require a model differing in form from the one described in connection with full dentures with central chambers.

Manner of obtaining a plaster model from an impression in plaster for partial dentures.—The surface of the impression in plaster should first be rendered hard by applying to it, with a camel's-hair brush, a uniform coating of varnish to prevent adhesion of the model. Two kinds of varnish are in common use,—a transparent and colored. The former is preferred for the reason that it penetrates the plaster more thoroughly, giving to it a greater depth of surface hardness, while the latter, if not sufficiently fluid, forms a somewhat superficial incrustation, which is liable to peel off in handling, leaving

portions of the model unprotected. Either, however, if properly prepared and applied, may be employed.

FORMULA NO. I.		FORMULA NO. II.	
Transparent Varnish.		*Colored Varnish.*	
Gum sandarach, .	5 oz.	Gum shellac, . . .	5 oz.
Alcohol, ...	1 quart.	Alcohol, ...	1 quart.

The sandarach and shellac should first be freed from all impurities by careful picking and washing; they are then added to the alcohol and digested over a moderate heat until thoroughly dissolved. Other substances, as gum elemi, Venice turpentine, &c., have been recommended as additional ingredients, but they are not indispensable, and may be omitted without sensibly impairing the properties of the varnish.

After glazing the surface of the plaster impression with varnish, a thin and uniform coat of oil should be applied; it is then enveloped and the model procured in the same manner as when wax is used.

In separating the model from a plaster impression for partial cases, it will be necessary to cut the latter away in pieces, as any attempt to separate the two in the ordinary way would inevitably break away the plaster teeth from the model. The impression should be chipped away with great care to avoid defacing the model. To provide more perfectly against this accident, it is better to coat the impression with the colored varnish, as this will indicate, with greater certainty, the line of contact or union between the two pieces. When separated, the model

should be trimmed and formed in the manner heretofore described.

Manner of obtaining a plaster model from an impression in plaster for entire dentures.—The preparation of a plaster impression of either the upper or lower jaw for full dentures, and the method of procuring a model therefrom, differ in no essential respect, except in the mode of separation, from the manipulations required when the impression has been taken in plaster for partial pieces. A model can, ordinarily, be readily detached from an impression of the lower jaw, but is not always so easily effected in the case of the upper. To accomplish this in the latter case, the model may be taken in the hand and the back of the handle of the cup tapped lightly with an instrument; or a small wedge-shaped instrument may be carefully forced in between the model and impression at the posterior border of the latter until they part slightly, when they may be easily detached; before doing which, however, any overlapping portions of the model which may tend to bind the two pieces together, should be trimmed away. If any portion of the heel of the model is defaced by the introduction of the wedge, it may be afterwards remedied by restoring the contour of the parts with either wax or plaster.

After obtaining a model in either of the ways mentioned, the entire body of it should be glazed and hardened by applying to it a uniform coat of varnish. This protective covering will prevent the surface from wearing;

render it more pleasant to the touch; facilitate its withdrawal from the sand; and give a more perfect mold. A model may be better prepared for permanent preservation by immersing it for a short time in a solution of carbonate of soda, by which its surface is converted into carbonate of lime and thereby rendered hard and durable; care must be taken not to introduce any of the bicarbonate of soda into the solution.

CHAPTER IV.

METALLIC DIES AND COUNTER-DIES.

A METTALLIC DIE is a fac-simile or transcript of the mouth in metal, and is also a copy or likeness of the plaster model.

A metallic COUNTER-DIE is a copy of the impression and is a reversed image of the die and plaster model.

Manner of obtaining a metallic die.—Two general methods are employed in procuring a metallic counterpart of the model: first, by *molding*,—secondly by a process termed "*dipping*."

Molding.—For this purpose sand is usually employed, though other substances, as Spanish whiting, &c., have been recommended. When sand is used, it should be fine and even grained; the best for the purpose being that used by brass founders. It is prepared by mixing with it sufficient water to render its particles somewhat adherent, so that when portions of it are pressed in the hand and then parted with the fingers, it will break away in well defined fragments. Excess of water should be avoided, as the vapor formed by the molten metal, when poured upon it, will displace portions of the latter and form cavities or blisters in the face of the die; nor should the sand be used too dry, as in that case it will crumble away in detaching the model.

Oil has been proposed as a substitute for water, in which case it is recommended to add one quart of the former to a peck of sand. It is claimed that the sand so prepared is always in immediate readiness for use.

The sand properly prepared, the model is next placed with its face uppermost on the molding board and surrounded with a metallic ring. A common "wagon box," of which two or three sizes should be had, will answer every purpose. The sand should first be well sifted to remove the coarser particles, and then filled into the ring, packing it closely with the fingers around and over the model until even with the upper edge of the box. Some care must be observed in the management of the sand when packing it, for if made too compact, the vapor, formed in pouring hot metal, failing to pass out readily through the sand, will be confined within the cavity and form imperfections in the face of the die; or, if too loosely packed, the fluid metal when poured into the mold will, to some extent, permeate the pores of the sand and render the face of the die rough and imperfect.

The box, with the model encased, is then lifted above the board and the model dislodged by tapping it gently underneath with a small mallet or hammer until it parts from the mold. The uncertain and hazardous method, sometimes resorted to, of detaching the model by pressing it alternately backward and forward until loosened, and then lifting it from the sand, should never be practiced, as more or less deformity of the mold is unavoidably produced thereby.

It not unfrequently happens that the ridge on the plaster model of the upper jaw overhangs, forming corresponding depressions above, the excavations occurring more commonly in front and on each side of the mesial line. Whenever this form of the model exists, it will be impracticable to obtain a correct mold in the manner just described, since the sand becoming impacted in these excavations will be broken away and remain with the model when the latter is dislodged.

The difficulty mentioned, however, may be readily overcome in all cases by employing the sectional molding flask invented by Dr. G. W. Hawes, the several parts of which are represented in the accompanying cuts.

Fig. 25.

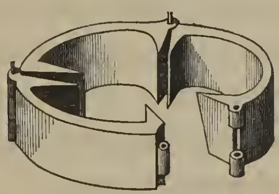


Fig. 26.

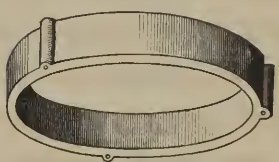


Fig. 27.

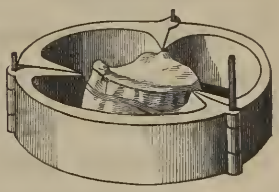


Fig. 25 represents the lower ring, composed of three moveable pieces with phalange extensions, which project in toward the centre. When used, this portion of the flask is closed and the sections kept in place by pins passing through the joints. Inside of this ring the model is placed face upward, the ridge extending a little above the upper plane of the ring. Sand, well sifted, is then

packed in around the model on a level with the most projecting points on the outside of the ridge, as indicated by the dotted line in Fig. 27. The surface of the sand should be trimmed smoothly, and should be cut squarely and at right angles with the ridge, to prevent the sand from breaking away when the model is withdrawn. Very finely pulverized charcoal contained in a loose muslin bag, is now sifted over the exposed surface of the sand, to prevent the next portion contained in the upper ring from adhering. The plain ring (Fig. 26) is then placed over the one containing the model, and is filled with sand well packed over the face of the die. The upper ring is now carefully lifted from the lower one on a line with the pins, thus separating the two portions of sand, and again exposing the uncovered face of the model. One of the pins should then be drawn from the lower ring; the sections of the latter carefully unfolded, and the model withdrawn; when the ring may be again closed and confined by replacing the pin. The upper ring is then re-adjusted in its proper relation to the lower one, and the flask inverted; when the mold, if the process has been accurately conducted, will be found perfect.

In obtaining a mold from the model of a lower jaw, but little difficulty will ordinarily be experienced in obtaining it perfect in the manner first described. The depressions at the posterior and inner border of the ridge are the points most liable to drag or displace the sand,

and when the latter occurs, the surplus metal in the die at such points must be cut away with suitable instruments; or the cavities in the model may be so filled out with wax before molding, as to permit the ready separation of the model without displacing the sand; in which case, also, it will be necessary, afterward, to trim the equivalent metal from the die.

A die is more readily and accurately obtained from a model for partial dentures, by cutting away the plaster teeth as before described. The displacement of sand where the ridge overhangs, will, as a general thing, be unimportant in these cases, as the base but rarely more than partially overlaps the border.

When whiting is used in molding, it is unnecessary to mix water with it, as the moisture which it absorbs from the atmosphere will give to it the proper consistence.

Having obtained a mold in either of the ways mentioned, the metal designed for the die should be melted and poured carefully in upon the more prominent portions on the face of the former. If the metal is raised much above its fusing point, or the sand is quite damp, the former should be poured very slowly into the mold. It is better, however, that the sand should be partially dried before pouring the metal, and the die cast on the instant of the metal becoming sufficiently fluid. An observance of these precautions will protect the sand from the over-action of heat; prevent ebullition of the fused

metal from the too rapid decomposition of the water of the sand; and will give a smoother face to the die, and secure the metal or metals from undue waste by oxydation. The opinion is entertained by some that greater shrinkage of the die occurs when the metallic substance of which it is composed is poured at a temperature much above its fusing point; the fallacy of which is made obvious by a moment's reflection, as a simple example will show that any change affecting the face of the die, as a consequence of contraction, can only occur in the metal between its point of solidification, or liquifaction—for they are identical—and its working temperature. Zinc, for example, melts at 773°. Now if its temperature be raised to 1200°, it will remain fluid until it reaches 773°, and in passing through the intermediate degrees of heat, it will, in obedience to gravity, adapt itself perfectly to all parts of the more depending portions of the mold; and this perfect continuity of the two surfaces will remain unaffected by the contraction of the metal until the latter commences to "set," or solidify, (773°,) after which, and not until then, the zinc begins to part from the face of the mold by contracting upon itself between 773° and the mean temperature of the air. So far as any change, by contraction, in the face of the die is concerned, therefore, it is obviously immaterial whether the zinc be poured on the instant of melting or at 1200°; the result will be the same in either case.

Dipping.—By this process the counter-die is first obtained, and from this the die. For the purpose, two or three sheet-iron pans varying in size should be provided, measuring from three to five inches in diameter, and from two to three inches in depth, the open ends of which should be somewhat larger than the bottoms. The metal for the counter is melted and poured into the pan, and immediately before "setting," the model, being unvarnished and previously well dried, is immersed, face downward, until all parts of the palatal arch and ridge are imbedded in the metal. The chamber, as well as the groove around the outside of the ridge concerned in the formation of a rim to the plate, should, in this case, be formed in plaster.

Ordinarily, the conformation of the ridge above and below is such as to render it impracticable to remove the model from the metallic matrix without injury; hence two or more models will be required whenever this method is practiced.

After the counter-die and model are separated, all traces of plaster should be carefully washed from the matrix, and the latter surrounded with a sheet-iron ring forced slightly into the counter immediately outside of the cavity formed by the model; into this the metal for the die is poured filling the matrix and ring.

If the metal or alloy forming the die fuses at the same, or a higher, heat than that composing the counter, the matrix should be protected from adhering to the die by

coating its surface uniformly either with lamp smoke, or a thin mixture of whiting and water or alcohol.

Counter-Die.—A counter to the die is generally obtained directly from the latter, and may be procured in either of two ways. 1. The die is placed, face upward, upon the molding-board, and sand, prepared as in molding, built up around it, leaving only the ridge and palatal face exposed. It is then encircled with a cast or sheet-iron ring two or three inches deep, its edge embedded in the sand to prevent the escape of the fluid metal; into this the metal for the counter is poured until nearly or quite full. 2. The metal for the counter may first be poured into a sheet-iron vessel of proper size, and, immediately before setting, the face of the die is immersed in the liquid mass, and held perfectly stationary until solidification of the counter takes place. The method of procuring a counter die directly from the plaster model, as in the process of dipping, has already been described.

The metal commonly employed for the counter is lead, although other substances, as tin, type metal, some of the more fusible alloys hereafter to be mentioned, &c., are sometimes employed. When the counter is taken by pouring the metal or metals composing it upon a die fusing at a low heat, some caution should be observed lest the two pieces adhere by partial fusion of the die. In such cases, the surface of the die should be well protected with lamp smoke or whiting; the lead should be poured at the lowest practicable temperature; and the

conduction of heat facilitated by surrounding the die with a heavy cast-iron box or ring. To avoid incurring any risk, however, the counter-die, if composed of a less fusible metal or compound than the die, may be first obtained directly from the model, and the die obtained from this as in the process of dipping; or, a counter of lead, previously taken from a zinc or other more infusible die, may be used.

During the process of forcing a plate into adaptation to the form of the mouth with swages, it not unfrequently happens that the marginal portions of the former become wedged or immovably fixed between the outer border of the die and corresponding portions of the counter before its central portion is forced into contact with the palatal surface of the former, thus rendering it difficult to conform the plate accurately to the parts without the application of sufficient force to deface or otherwise mar the form of the die. In such cases, the central portion of the plate may be first swaged with a *partial counter*, which is made to receive only the palatal portion and upper surface of the ridge of the die. After forcing the central part of the plate into adaptation with the partial counter, the process may afterwards be completed with a full counter after having turned the edges of the plate down upon the outer border of the ridge with a mallet and pliers.

As before remarked, preference is usually given to lead in the formation of a counter-die, mainly on account

of its greater softness. This property in a counter is practically important. In the process of forcing a metallic plate into adaptation to the mouth, partial displacement or yielding of either the die or counter, or of both, necessarily occurs, and it is scarcely necessary to remark that whatever change of form is produced should take place wholly in the counter, otherwise deformity of the die must ensue.

Essential properties of a die.—There are certain properties which it is indispensable that a metallic die should possess, more or less perfectly, in order to answer fully the requirements of the dentist.

1. A die should be sufficiently *hard* to resist any necessary force applied to it in stamping the plate without suffering any material change in the form of its face, by which latter term is meant that portion of the die with which the plate is brought into contact. This property is most indispensable in those cases where the arch of the mouth is very deep, the ruga prominent and sharply defined, and where the alveolar ridge is marked by angular and abrupt prominences and depressions. In such cases, if the die is not sufficiently resistant, the points most prominent upon its face will be bruised or battered down, while the plate will fail to be forced perfectly into the cavities or depressions, and its co-aptation to the mouth, to that extent, rendered faulty. The cases in which a less degree of hardness is admissible is, where the arch of the mouth is broad and shallow, the ruga imperfectly defined, and the ridge regular and symmetrical.

The conformation of the mouth, therefore, will, in respect to the property of hardness, admit of some latitude in the choice of the metal or alloy employed in the formation of a die.

2. Another important property of a metallic die is *non-contraction*, so far, at least, as this is attainable. Inasmuch as the successful adaptation of the plate depends, in a great measure, upon an accurate representation of the precise form of the mouth in the die, it is of the first importance that the latter, other essential requisites being secured, should be composed of some metal or metals having the least possible contraction in cooling. Contraction is, in varying degrees, common to all metals exposed to a decreasing temperature, and it is impossible, therefore, to obtain a perfectly faultless copy of the mouth in metal. Fortunately, as well for the expert as the unskilled manipulator, the unavoidable shrinkage incurred is partially or wholly compensated for by the expansion of the plaster and the yielding condition of the soft tissues of the mouth, but under no circumstances should the accommodation afforded by the condition last mentioned encourage negligence or unskillfulness in the use of all available means necessary to secure the most accurate adaptation of the base. Ordinarily, a moderate degree of contraction will not materially impair the fit of a plate; on the contrary, in the case of the upper jaw, it sometimes favors its adhesion and retention in the mouth. Cases, on the other hand, frequently occur

where the least practicable amount of shrinkage, even at the partial sacrifice of other properties, becomes indispensable in the die.

3. A third important requisite of a die is *fusibility*. Aside from the convenience incident to the use of metals which fuse at a low heat, there is another consideration favoring this property of more practical importance. It is well known that all metals expand by heat and contract by cold. In obedience to this law, metals fusing at a high heat suffer a greater aggregate contraction than those melting at a lower temperature, and, as between two metallic bodies of equal dimensions, liquifying at different temperatures, the difference in contraction will correspond exactly with the difference in the number of degrees through which each passes from the point of solidification to the mean temperature of the air, allowance being made for the difference in their ratios of contraction. Two dies, one composed of copper and the other of zinc will serve to illustrate. Fused copper solidifies at 1900°; in cooling, therefore, it contracts through over 1800° to reach a working temperature; while zinc, fusing at 773° contracts through only about 700° to reach the same temperature. As before stated, the difference in the contraction of metals will be somewhat modified by that in their ratios of contraction, but it will always be found that the more fusible metals have the least aggregate shrinkage whenever any considerable disparity exists between their fusing points. It is in

accordance with the principles here set forth, that the more fusible alloys, some of which melt at remarkably low temperatures, are employed whenever it is important to obtain a die as nearly the exact counterpart of the model as possible.

4. Finally, a die should be sufficiently *cohesive* to resist the repeated blows of a heavy hammer without parting or cracking. Many metals, as antimony, bismuth, &c., in other respects suitable for dies, are objectionable on account of brittleness. But it must not, therefore, be inferred that all metals that are denominated brittle are inadmissible for this purpose; for zinc, which, in its ordinary condition is ranked as a brittle metal, and type metal, which is always so, are in no danger of being forced asunder or of suffering displacement when in the compact form of a die, provided the force used in swaging is judiciously applied or proper form and sufficient depth are given to the body of the die.

To recapitulate briefly: a die should be formed of some metal or alloy that has a surface hardness sufficient to resist compression; that fuses at a low temperature; that does not, in any material degree, contract in the act of cooling; and whose particles adhere with sufficient cohesive force to maintain perfectly its integrity of form under the hammer. Any one or two of these properties are readily attainable in the same die, but no one known metal or alloy combines all of them perfectly. Thus either cast-iron,

brass, bronze, or cannon metal, would form an excellent material in respect to surface hardness, and, in the compact form of a die, would be sufficiently cohesive, but few enjoy convenient facilities for melting them; besides, their great contraction consequent upon their high fusing point, would render their employment entirely inadmissible. Again, certain alloys, as those composed of lead, tin, and antimony or bismuth, are eminently suitable on account of their extreme fusibility and comparative exemption from shrinkage, but they gain these properties at the expense of that degree of hardness necessary to resist compression. Tin, in its uncombined state, is, ordinarily, sufficiently fusible, tenacious, and non-contractile, but is too soft and yielding when forcibly compressed. Antimony and bismuth are sufficiently hard, fusible and non-contractile, but are objectionable on the score of extreme brittleness.

Any metallic substance that combines most perfectly the several properties referred to, is, therefore, best adapted to the necessities of the mechanical operator, and experience has universally accorded pre-eminence in this respect to zinc. It presents a more resistant surface to the blow of a hammer than either copper or brass; three times more so than that of tin; and more than double that of type metal. As it usually occurs in commerce, it may be classed as a brittle metal, but when annealed, it is tough and malleable. It melts at a heat (773°) which may be readily commanded and contracts

but little in cooling. Prof. Austen has demonstrated by actual experiments that an average sized zinc die, measuring two inches transversely, contracts 27·1000ths of an inch from outside to outside of the alveolar ridge, being equivalent in thickness to three ordinary leaves of a journal. Prof. A. remarks: "In the first case, (upper jaw,) the plate would 'bind' and if the ridge were covered by an unyielding mucous membrane, it would prevent accuracy of adaption. In the second case, (under jaw,) the plate would have too much lateral 'play' and consequently lack stability. Again, in a moderately deep arch, say a half inch in depth, the shrinkage between the level of the ridge and the floor of the palate will be nearly 7·1000ths—rather more than one leaf of the Journal. In the deepest arches, this shrinkage becomes a serious difficulty; in the shallower cases, it is not of much moment, as there is no mouth so hard as not to yield the 1 or 2·1000ths of an inch."

As before stated, a moderate degree of shrinkage in the die may, in certain conditions of the mouth, practically favor the adhesion and permanent retention of a plate applied to the upper jaw. The conditions alluded to, and which prevail in a greater or less degree in all cases, are a soft and yielding ridge and comparatively hard and unimpressible palate. Now, if, in the first instance, the plate is swaged into uniform contact with all parts of the jaw, it will be readily perceived that, if pressure is made over the ridge on one side, the latter

will yield, while the central portion of the plate, meeting with a fixed point of resistance at the floor of the palate, will "ride" upon the latter and thus throw the plate from the ridge on the opposite side of the jaw. If, however, a space equal to one or two thicknesses of the plate exists between the latter and the roof of the mouth as a consequence of contraction in the die, the plate, as it is carried against the palate in the act of exhausting the air from beneath it, will, at the same time, forcibly compress the ridge, securing thereby a more resistant basis along the border, and providing more certainly against displacement of the base on the application of forces brought to bear upon it in mastication.

The extent to which the shrinkage of a die may be admitted in any given case, will depend partly upon difference in the conditions heretofore mentioned in the soft parts of the mouth, and in part, also, upon the general configuration of jaw. In a medium sized mouth, with a depth of say half an inch to the arch, a moderately soft ridge and resisting palate, the shrinkage incident to zinc will be unimportant, and in many cases will be advantageous. If, however, the vault is very deep, even though there be a yielding ridge, the unavoidable contraction of a zinc die will throw the plate so far from the arch as to render it difficult for the patient to exhaust the atmosphere from between it and the floor of the palate, and even when the latter is practicable, the plate will bind with such force upon the outer border of the

ridge as not only to produce pain and irritation of the compressed parts, but the resistance afforded at these points will be sufficient, in many cases, to break up the adhesion, and force the plate from the palate. Again, as an extreme case, if the ridge and palate are somewhat uniformly unyielding, and the palatal vault is, at the same time, very deep, a zinc die can only be made available in bringing the base as nearly into adaptation as possible, after which the operation may be completed with a swage having a less degree of shrinkage, and which, as a mere finishing die, need not necessarily be so hard as zinc.

In conforming a plate to the lower jaw, the die should be as free as possible from contraction in all cases. The greatest shrinkage in such cases will be between the posterior extremities of the ridge, giving too much lateral play to the plate; in addition to which the posterior and inner edge of the base, projecting out from the ridge, will obstruct the free action of the tongue, while the latter will tend to lift it from the ridge and render it unstable. These conditions may be partially remedied by turning the edge of the plate in against the ridge with pliers, but this expedient should never be resorted to in any case whenever it is practicable to secure a correct adaptation by swaging.

In all cases in which a zinc die fails to bring the plate into proper adaptation to the parts, either of the following metallic compounds may be used to complete the process after partial stamping with zinc.

Type Metal.—Lead, 5 parts; antimony, 1 part. Fuses at 500°; contraction less than one-half that of zinc; more compressible than the latter, and very brittle.

Babett, or anti-friction metal.—Copper, 3 parts; antimony, 1 part; tin, 3 parts. First fuse the copper, and then add the antimony and tin. Melts at a moderately low heat; contracts but little; is brittle, but may be rendered less so by adding tin.

Zinc, 4 parts; *tin,* 1 part. Fuses at a lower heat, contracts less in cooling, and has a less surface hardness than zinc.

Tin, 5 parts; *antimony,* 1 part. Melts at a lower heat than either of the preceding alloys; contracts but slightly in cooling; is harder than tin, and sufficiently cohesive. It is readily oxydized, and should be poured as soon as melted.

Fusible Alloys.—The following tabular view of the more fusible alloys, the respective properties of which are deduced from actual experiments, is given by Professor Austen, in a paper on "Metallic Dies."* Zinc is introduced into the table for the purpose of comparison.

	Melting Point.	Contractility.	Hardness.	Brittleness.
1. Zinc, ...	770°	·01366	·018	5
2. Lead, 2, Tin, 1, ...	440°	·00633	·050	3
3. Lead, 1, Tin, 2, ...	340°	·00500	·040	3
4. Lead, 2, Tin, 3, Antimony, 1, . .	420°	·00433	·026	7
5. Lead, 5, Tin, 6, Antimony, 1, . .	320°	·00566	·035	6
6. Lead, 5, Tin, 6, Antimony, 1, Bismuth, 3,	300°	·00266	·030	9
7. Lead, 1, Tin, 1, Bismuth, 1, . . .	250°	·00066	·042	7
8. Lead, 5, Tin, 3, Bismuth, 8, . . .	200°	·00200	·045	8
9. Lead, 2, Tin, 1, Bismuth, 3, . . .	200°	·00133	·048	7

* American Journal of Dental Science, vol. vi. p. 367.

Professor A., in commenting on the above table, observes : " The last column contains an approximate estimate of the relative brittleness of the samples given. As in the other columns, the low numbers represent the metals, so far as this property is concerned, most desirable. Those marked below 5 are malleable metals; those above 5 are brittle; zinc, marked 5, separates these two classes, and belongs to one or the other, according to the way in which it is managed." Allusion is here made to the process of annealing zinc, and which has already been adverted to when considering the latter metal in a former part of the work. The special method employed is thus described by the author already quoted. " The simplest way to anneal a zinc die is to place it in the melting ladle with about a table-spoonful of water, removing it in thirty seconds after the water has boiled away. If the fire is a very hot one, remove it immediately on the disappearance of the water. It will often happen that the die is annealed in the process of taking the counter-die. This will more certainly occur when Nos. 7, 8, or 9, (see table,) are used for the counter. For example, take tin: using a mass twice the size of the die, should it be heated to 540°, (100° above melting point,) it would not, allowing for loss of heat by radiation and contact with the cast-iron ring, (if one be used,) heat the zinc beyond 330°. Lead, cast as cool as it could possibly be poured, unless in a very heavy ring, (such as a 'cart-wheel box,') or in quantity too small

for a well-shaped counter, would be apt to raise the zinc at least to 400°, and so impair its malleability, whilst, if poured as hot as many are in the habit of doing, the zinc will remain as brittle as when first cast."*

* To Professor P. H. Austen, whose various contributions relating to the mechanical department of practical dentistry have done much to unfold and elucidate the principles involved in the practice of this important specialty, the author would acknowledge his indebtedness for much of the valuable data and practical suggestions that may be found embodied in the foregoing chapter; and had not the limited space assigned us, compelled a condensation of his views on the subject of metallic dies and counters, we might have done the reader an essential service by transferring to our pages many of his eminently practical observations on this subject entire.

CHAPTER V.

PARTIAL DENTURES.

The almost unlimited modifications in the form of substitutes designed to supply the loss of a portion only of the natural teeth, and the difficulties oftentimes incident to a harmonious arrangement of the teeth of replacement, as well, also, as the impracticability of always securing a perfectly satisfactory and efficient antagonism or closure of the artificial with the natural organs, frequently surround this process with peculiar embarrassments, and often render their successful application extremely difficult. They will, accordingly, be found to demand of the operator the exercise of greater skill, ingenuity, and discrimination than is usually required of him in the construction and application of entire dentures.

The various means employed in fixing or retaining partial sets of teeth in the mouth will be first considered. Either of the following methods may be adopted according to the preferences of the operator, or the requirements of individual cases. 1. *Pivoting an artificial crown to the root of a natural tooth.* 2. *Clasping to the natural teeth* 3. *Wood pivots adjusted to tubed plates.* 4. *Pivoting plate to the roots of the natural teeth.* 5. *Atmospheric pressure.*

PIVOT TEETH.

The process of pivoting or grafting an artificial crown upon the root of a natural tooth has been long practiced, and when skilfully performed with intelligent views of the various conditions which recommend and justify the operation, it affords a valuable and unobjectionable means of substitution. The success of the operation will be greatly modified by the following circumstances:

1. *The condition of the root, its appendages, and surrounding structures.*—If the root to be pivoted is strong, well-formed, and securely attached to the jaw, a living, healthy nerve present, and the peridental membrane free from disease, the operation will be attended, in a large preponderance of cases, with the happiest results, and in respect to utility, comfort, and appearance, is superior to any other mode of substitution. If, however, the nerve of the tooth has been previously destroyed by disease, and inflammation and suppuration of the adjacent tissues have supervened, the probabilities of complete success will be greatly diminished; for although these latter conditions may have been subdued for the time being by appropriate treatment, yet that a latent predisposition favoring their recurrence exists is manifest from the frequency with which unfavorable results follow the operation of pivoting even under circumstances so apparently favorable.

In no case, we are convinced, unless under circumstances of peculiar exigency, should an artificial crown

be attached to a root whenever the latter is complicated with incurable disease of the investing membrane or abscess at its apex. It may be safely affirmed that the failures so common to this method, and the consequent disrepute into which it has deservedly fallen, as ordinarily performed, is fairly chargeable, not so much to unskillful manipulation, as to a want of proper appreciation of the pathological conditions which clearly contra-indicate its employment. The facilities enjoyed by the dentist of the present day in the employment of the various approved methods of replacement, other than the one under consideration, no longer make it either necessary or pardonable to subject the patient to a course of treatment which unavoidably necessitates a perpetual drainage of depraved and offensive pus either through fistulous openings in the gum or through channels provided by art.

As respects the surrounding structures, it is well, with a view of removing any disturbing causes, to institute a careful examination of the mouth before inserting pivot teeth, and if any of the remaining teeth are found carious or incrusted with tartar, or the mucous membrane and gums are inflamed or otherwise diseased, they should be treated in accordance with the indications furnished by the particular morbid conditions present.

2. *Diathesis of the patient.*—Cases frequently occur where there exists a marked constitutional predisposition to inflammation, in some of its various forms, from the

operation of very slight causes; and although it is not always practicable to determine the exact degree of this tendency in all cases, yet some evidence of its existence may be acquired by inquiry of the patient as to the usual terminations of injuries inflicted upon any portion of the body, as, whether they heal kindly by the ordinary process of reparation or tend to inflammation and suppuration. Whenever this predisposition exists in any marked degree, the operation, though other conditions may favor success, is liable at all times to terminate unfavorably, and, therefore, if performed at all, it should be done in the most careful manner and only under circumstances that promise the best chances of success. It is well in cases characterized by a phlogistic habit of body, to first reduce the system somewhat by appropriate antiphlogistic treatment, and in no case should more than one tooth be inserted at a single sitting, and it will be prudent, in many cases, after having prepared the root, to defer the completion of the operation for a few days, or to adjust a tooth temporarily with a pivot loosely fitted, until the irritation, unavoidably produced by filing, drilling, &c., has completely subsided.

3. *Manner of performing the operation.*—The healthy condition of the root and contiguous parts, and the ultimate utility of the substitute, may be very materially prejudiced by careless, hurried, or injudicious manipulation; as where the remaining portions of the natural crown of the tooth are violently removed with excising

forceps, or by the unskillful use of files in dressing the root, or drills in enlarging the central cavity, or by undue or misapplied force in the final adjustment of the artificial crown, or finally, by a faulty position of the tooth of replacement by which the root is subjected to injurious strain either by lateral pressure or premature closure against those of the opposite jaw. By the operation of either or all of these causes, disease of a more or less intractable character may be induced which will impair the usefulness of the artificial organ and subject the patient to much present and future distress and annoyance.

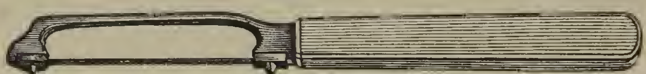
The roots of teeth to which artificial crowns are usually attached.—The operation of pivoting artificial substitutes is necessarily limited in its application, being confined to the front or single-rooted teeth,—usually to the incisors and cuspidati of the upper jaw. The same class of teeth of the inferior maxilla, though sometimes used for the purpose, are not favorably formed or situated, having a posterior inclination in the arch which renders ready access to them with the drill difficult or impossible, while the small size and flattened condition of the roots preclude the use of pivots of sufficient strength. Nor are the roots of the bicuspids of either jaw ordinarily admissible, as the lateral compression of these fangs do not admit of the use of pivots of adequate size and strength to secure them against accident in mastication. Comparatively speaking, the roots best adapted to this pro-

12

cess are those of the superior central incisors, and cuspidati or canine teeth.

Preparation of the root.—In the process of preparing the root for the attachment of an artificial tooth, all remaining portions of the natural crown should first be removed with suitable instruments. If the cervical portion of the tooth is comparatively sound and unbroken, this may be most expeditiously accomplished, and with less risk of injury to the root, by employing a very fine saw attached to a steel frame or carrier as shown in Fig. 28. The saw should be narrow enough to enable it to

Fig. 28.



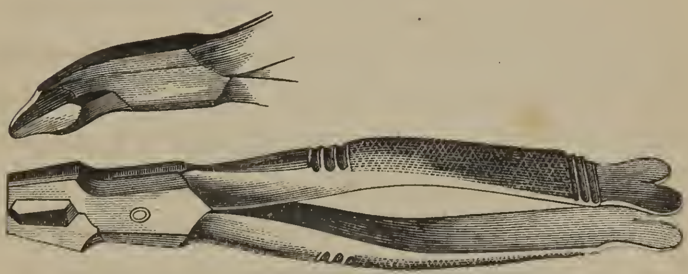
take a curvilinear direction in cutting, as this will enable the operator to separate the crown nearly or quite on a line with the arched margin of the gum, thus dispensing, in a great measure, with the use of the file in the final dressing of the cut end of the root.

The saw should be passed along the side of the tooth to the gum and the crown separated either by cutting directly across to the opposite side, or as nearly on a line with the curvature of the anterior and posterior margins of the gum as possible without wounding the latter. During the operation, the saw should be kept constantly wet, and the crown should be supported by the fingers.

If the remains of the crown are friable, or if they con-

sist of but fragmentary portions of enamel, they may be readily cut away with excising forceps, two forms of which are exhibited in Fig. 29. The one having square

FIG. 29.



transverse cutting edges, closing at right angles with the shaft, is generally employed. Serious, if not irreparable injury may be inflicted by the careless or unskillful use of this instrument, either by producing so violent a concussion as to induce, in some instances, incurable disease or absolute necrosis of the root; or by fracturing the latter in such a way as to unfit it for the reception of a pivot-crown. The forceps, therefore, should never be used to excise the crown with a single cut whenever any considerable portion of the root at the gum remains unaffected by disease, and even when the latter is friable or partially destroyed by decay, they should be used with great caution, cutting or chipping away small portions at a time, until as much of its substance is removed as is practicable with the forceps.

After the use of the saw or excising forceps, any remaining portions projecting beyond the free margins of the

gum should then be removed and proper shape given to the end of the fang with a file. A half-oval file, with a sharp and tolerably fine cut running obliquely across its convex surface, is the best for the purpose, and when in use, it should be kept constantly wet and free from clogging particles of bone. The end of the root should be filed down, anteriorly at least, a little below the free margin of the gum, care being taken not to lacerate its periosteal attachment; in this way the artificial crown, when adjusted to the root, will unite so untimately with the gum in front as to render exposure impossible. The surface of the root, prepared in this manner, will present a concavity corresponding with the festoon of the gum.

If a living nerve remains in the root it will not ordinarily be practicable, unless there is partial obliteration and consequent recession of the pulp cavity as the result of ossific deposits, either to saw off the root on a line with the gum or even transversely, or to file the root even with the gum without inflicting insufferable pain. It will be necessary, therefore, either to remove the nerve through the carious opening in the crown before the latter is removed, or, if not exposed by the operation of sawing or filing, through an opening into the pulp made with a drill or cutting instrument after excision.

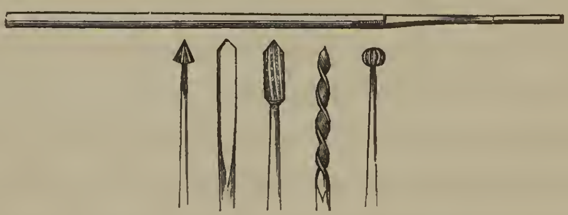
The use of arsenic for the destruction of the nerve preparatory to its removal, though sometimes employed, is liable, under the most cautious management, to result

in periostitis and ultimate suppuration of the surrounding tissues, and should, therefore, never be used if circumstances admit of its removal by direct operation with instruments. By the latter method, the vitality of the root, through its periosteal circulation, will be better preserved. Its extirpation may generally be readily effected with the use of a three or four-sided, barbed, untempered broach, which, being small enough to penetrate freely to the apex of the fang, is thrust quickly to the bottom of the canal, rotated, and withdrawn; when, if the entire nerve does not come away adherent to the broach, the operation may be repeated, with comparatively little pain, until all portions of it are removed. A method more especially recommended by Prof. Taft, in his recent work on "Operative Dentistry," page 234, is the following: "Take a very fine untempered steel wire, round and smooth, not larger than 34 to 36 of Stub's gauge-plate; flatten the extreme point, and turn it to an angle of from thirty to forty degrees; place the edge of this against one wall of the canal at the point of exposure of the pulp; press it steadily up the canal, with its edge bearing against the wall, as far as it will go, and then twirl it suddenly round: thus an excision is effected near the point of the fang, when the pulp with the instrument may be drawn away together; or, if not thus drawn, it may be caught with some fine point, and removed without pain. This manner of introducing the instrument, too, causes less pain than either of the others;

for there are no sharp edges or points presented in passing the instrument up the canal, to cut or lacerate the pulp. In the removal of the pulp from the teeth of young persons, care should be taken lest the instrument pass entirely through the foramen, at the apex of the fang; but with adults, there is little or no danger of such an accident."

The nerve being removed, the canal of the root should be enlarged for the reception of a pivot. This is effected with a suitable broach, or with drills of various forms. When the canal presents the form of a cleft or fissure, a spherical or cone-shaped bur-drill should be used; if, however, the nerve cavity approaches a cylindrical form, the operation will be more speedily performed with a four-sided broach, or what is still better, a spear-pointed or spiral drill; all of which are exhibited in Fig. 30.

FIG. 30.



The natural opening in the fang should be enlarged to the depth of from one and a half to two or more lines, according to the length of the root; and the orifice should be made large enough to admit a pivot of sufficient size to secure the crown firmly in position. The direction of

the drill in cutting should follow closely that of the natural canal in the root, since but a slight deviation in this respect may endanger the integrity of the latter by two great a thinning, or actual perforation, of its walls. In all cases, however, where the direction of the canal will admit of it, the shaft of the instrument should be held steadily on a line with the circle formed by the cutting edges of the adjoining teeth, and either equidistant between the latter or with such a lateral inclination as will give to the tooth of replacement a symmetrical arrangement in the arch. During the operation, the drill should be kept constantly wet, and loose particles of bone should be washed from the cavity by ocsional injections of water.

The unenlarged portion of the nerve canal between the bottom of the pivot cavity and the apex of the root should next be thoroughly closed with gold in the manner usually practiced in fang filling,—all diseased conditions associated with the root, if such exist, having been previously subdued by appropriate treatment.

Fitting the crown.—The pivot crown selected for any given case should correspond, as nearly as possible, in size and general configuration with its fellow of the opposite side, or, where several are inserted, with the form and size of the natural organs which they represent. The tooth or teeth of replacement should also harmonize in color with those immediately adjoining. The cervical portion of the crown applied to the root

should correspond, as nearly as possible, in dimensions with the filed surface of the root, and the adaptation of the two surfaces should be sufficiently accurate at all points to afford a firm basis for the crown, and, at the same time, to exclude perfectly all particles of alimentary or other solid substances, the decomposition of which would tend to the decay or disease of the root, or become offensive in the mouth. To secure such a coaptation of the articulating surfaces, more or less filing of the root and grinding from the base of the crown will be required, so that while uniform contact of the surfaces is secured, the artificial crown will be made to occupy its proper relative position in the arch.

The articulation of the crown and root may be very accurately obtained in the following manner. Attach to the crown a temporary pivot of wood that may be easily applied and removed; coat the surface of the root uniformly with some pigment, as carmine, rouge, or rose pink, and apply the crown, with pivot attached, to the root; the points of contact will be indicated upon the base of the crown by the adherent coloring matter; the colored portions are then ground down somewhat on an emery wheel, and this process is repeated until the entire surface of the base of the crown exposed to the pigment becomes uniformly coated. Whenever it is thought important to preserve the form of the porcelain crown unchanged, the operation may be reversed by coloring the base of the latter and filing from the extre-

mity of the fang until a perfect adjustment of the parts is secured.

Another method, sometimes employed, may be adopted, and will secure an equally accurate bearing of the crown without subjecting the patient to the annoyance of repeated trials of the pivot tooth in the mouth. After having prepared the root in the manner already described, an impression of the root and contiguous teeth is taken, and from this a plaster model is obtained. The drilled cavity in the root will be indicated on the model by a corresponding depression; this may be extended into the body of the latter with an instrument fitting the orifice and held in the exact position as when enlarging the canal in the fang. The model is then varnished, and a pivot being temporarily attached to the crown, the base of the latter may be ground, with or without the use of coloring matter applied to the model, until the articulating surfaces close uniformly, and the crown occupies the required position indicated by the adjoining teeth represented on the model. If the impression is correct, and the manipulations are accurately conducted, a pivot tooth prepared in this manner will be found to fit the root and occupy a proper position in the circle with but little, if any, additional filing or grinding.

Attaching the crown by means of wood pivots.—The usual method of fixing artificial crowns to the roots of teeth is by means of pivots of wood. Thoroughly seasoned white hickory of small growth, fine grained,

and straight compact fibers, is esteemed the best for the purpose. This substance is often used in its natural condition, but it will be much improved, both in respect to strength and durability, if previously well condensed by forcing it through the holes of an ordinary draw-plate, or, what is better, through apertures of various sizes formed with smooth bevelled edges in a piece of ivory, steel, or porcelain of sufficient thickness. Cylinders of wood of uniform thickness throughout are most conveniently formed by splitting the timber into rods five or six inches in length, and from one-eighth to a quarter of an inch in diameter, trimming them with suitable instruments to a size one-third larger than required when condensed, and then passing them through the holes of a draw-plate, on the side where they form a cutting edge, commencing with the larger and passing to those of diminished caliber, until a cylinder of the size mentioned is obtained. These are then compressed in the manner before mentioned. When the draw-plate is used to compress the pivot, the latter should be passed through from the side opposite to the one used in forming the pivot.

One end of the pivot, dressed to the proper size, is made to fit accurately the hole in the crown, care being taken not to fracture the latter when forcing the pivot into place. The depth of the enlarged opening in the root will determine the length to be given to the end of the pivot projecting from the crown, and the former may be readily determined by means of a gauge, (Fig. 31,)

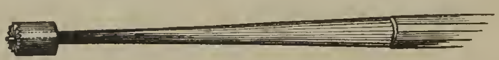
FIG. 31.

consisting of a rod of wire of a size to enter freely the canal in the root, with a moveable slide, to the end of which is attached a circular collar or phalange. The end of the wire being pressed to the bottom of the canal, the phalange, resting against the end of the root, will force the slide back upon the rod, and thus indicate with certainty the depth of the canal. The pivot being cut off at a point distant from the crown equal to the length of the uncovered end of the wire, is then dressed to the size of the orifice in the root. The pivot should be accurately fitted to the canal in the fang, but not so tightly as to require any greater force in adjusting the crown to the root than may be readily applied with the fingers. A pivot thus easily applied, will, when enlarged by the absorption of fluids, be so firmly retained as to render its removal difficult; and even when moisture is excluded, adequate stability will be imparted to the attachment, provided sufficient depth is given to the cavity in the fang.

Before adjusting the crown permanently, the pivot may be wrapt with one or two thicknesses of gold foil, and a thin layer of the same may also be placed between the crown and root. This is done with a view of protecting the pivot and inner walls of the fang from the action of the fluids of the mouth. Other and more plastic substances, which are impermeable and not soluble in

the secretions of the mouth, are sometimes interposed between the root and crown, as Hill's stopping, collodian, mastic dissolved in ether, &c. The following expedient recommended by Dr. S. D. Muse,* will answer the same purpose perfectly, but as it involves the use of "amalgam," it may be regarded as, in some degree, objectionable. The root being prepared in the ordinary way for the reception of a pivot, the central portion of its articulating surface is counter-sunk to the depth of half a line, leaving but a thin border on the outside to support the crown. The counter-sink is made with a bur drill, like that represented in Fig. 32. A pivot previously

Fig. 32.



fitted to the root and crown, and of the required length when the latter is adjusted to the root, is then fitted to the canal in the fang, when the excavation around the pivot is packed with carefully prepared amalgam in sufficient quantities to completely fill the counter-sink. The crown is now applied to the pivot projecting from the root and pressed firmly to its place, the amalgam, as an impermeable cement, luting the joint perfectly.

It not unfrequently happens that considerable enlargement exists at the orifice of the canal, as the result of decay, and which, if not filled, will not only render the attachment of the crown insecure, but form a chamber

* Dental Register of the West, vol. vi. p. 154.

for the accumulation of the secretions of the mouth and other substances, which, decomposing, will render the substitute, in time, exceedingly offensive and pernicious in the mouth. In such cases it will be difficult to conform a wooden pivot accurately to the cavity, but the decayed portion and enlarged canal of the root may first be filled compactly with gold, and a central passage made through this with a drill for the admission of a pivot; or, in lieu of this, a highly polished and uniformly cylindrical steel wire of the same size as the crown-pivot, may be introduced into the prepared canal of the root and gold packed around it and into the excavation in the end of the root even with the surface of the latter; after which the steel wire is carefully withdrawn. In either of the above cases, the gold should be securely fixed in place by forming small pits, or transverse grooves, in the walls of the fang.

Another method is to apply to the base of the crown, and round the pivot, a sufficient quantity of Hill's stopping, or other analogous material to fill perfectly the curious excavation; this is then warmed until sufficiently plastic, by passing it through the flame of a spirit-lamp, when it is applied to the root and pressed up with sufficient force to expel any excess of material.

Pivots of metal and wood.—Pivots are sometimes formed of gold wire encased in wood. These impart additional strength to the attachment, and at the same time enable the operator to change the direction of the crown by

bending the pivot whenever the root stands irregularly in the arch. A hole, somewhat smaller than that in the fang, is drilled into a block of pivot wood, and into this is forced a gold wire—that formed of gold and platinum being the best, as it possesses greater stiffness and elasticity. The wood is then dressed down to a size a little larger than the canal in the root, and then compressed. One end being fitted to the hole in the crown, the projecting portion of the pivot, cut to the proper length, is trimmed to fit the opening in the root and applied in the manner before described.

Another method is to close the hole in the crown with a cylinder of pivot wood; trim it even with the base of the crown; perforate its centre with a drill; and introduce into this one end of the wire, the surface of which is cut up into small barbs, or otherwise roughened to prevent it from drawing. A similar piece of wood is fitted to the orifice in the fang, and trimmed and drilled in like manner for the reception of the wire pivot—the latter being barbed and filed square to render it stationary when forced into place.

Metal pivot.—The best and most approved method of attaching the crown to the root consists in adjusting a metallic pivot to a gold tube attached to the root in such a manner that the substitute may be readily applied and removed by the patient. The tube which lines the enlarged canal in the root is constructed and applied in the following manner. A thin strip of ordinary gold plate,

No. 28 or 30, and five or six inches in length, is first bent round a polished, cylindrical steel wire, the size of the intended pivot; these are both drawn together through a draw-plate until the gold tube is accurately conformed to the steel rod. The wire is then withdrawn, and the joint or seam in the tube soldered; before doing which, however, the joint should be coated on the inside with a mixture of whiting, to prevent the solder from flowing in upon the inner walls of the tube. A fine thread is then cut with a screw-plate on the tube, and having introduced into the latter a piece of the steel wire on which the tube was formed, the tube is seized with pliers or a small hand-vice, and screwed gently and carefully into the fang. The steel wire is then withdrawn, and the protruding portion of the tube removed with a file, or cut off with a fine saw, like the one represented in Fig. 28.

Another method of fixing the tube securely in place, as recommended by Dr. F. H. Clark, consists in closing the lower end of it with a spherical-shaped cap, and attaching to the centre of this a small screw, which passes into the canal of the root; the latter being sufficiently enlarged and "tapped" for the reception of the screw.

In either case, if the filed end of the root is hollowed out by decay, a collar or phalange should be soldered to the end of the tube on which the crown rests; underneath and around which, gold is packed, filling completely the carious excavation.

The metal pivot may be fastened to the crown in either of the following ways. 1. A gold pivot fitting the orifice in the crown loosely is placed either in the centre or to one side of the latter, as the case may require, and around this solder filings or scrap are packed, filling in perfectly between the pivot and crown; the latter, with its cutting edge down, is then partly imbedded in plaster, and sufficient heat applied to flow the solder. 2. The use of a platinum pivot has been suggested by Dr. Frank Fuller, in which case he recommends the employment of jewellers' "soft enamel" as the uniting medium. The pivot is adjusted to the crown in the same manner as just described, and the enamel closely packed with suitable instruments around the pivot; the pieces are then invested, and sufficient heat applied to fuse the enamel. The latter may be obtained from jewellers or by pulverizing fragments of an old watch face.

The pivot being permanently fixed to the crown, the projecting portion is cut to the proper length and dressed to fit accurately the hollow wire lining the fang, but not so tightly as to prevent it from being easily introduced and withdrawn with the fingers. To render the crown stationary when applied to the root, the pivot should be slightly flexed that it may press upon the walls of the tube when introduced; or a small bar may be soldered on one side and near the bottom of the tube, so that when the pivot is forced up it will be compressed be-

tween the bar and opposite side of the tube, the portion of the pivot facing the bar being somewhat flattened. By far the best method of giving permanence to the pivot, however, is that recommended by Dr. Dwinelle; in which he directs one-half or more of the pivot to be split into two equal parts with a fine watch-spring saw. The surface is then cut up into numerous small barbs, opening downward, and the end of the pivot filed somewhat to a point, so that when the two sections are spread apart, it will readily enter the orifice in the fang, (Fig. 33.) Pivots so formed should be constructed of gold alloyed with sufficient platinum to render them stiff and elastic. The diverging sections of the pivot when pressed into the canal will be found to bear with sufficient force against the sides of the tube to retain the tooth securely in place, and, at the same time, enable the patient to remove it at any time for the purpose of cleansing the substitute.

FIG. 33.

Pivot plate.—It sometimes occurs that the root to be used occupies a position in the arch inconsistent with a harmonious arrangement of the tooth of replacement by the usual method of attaching an ordinary pivot-crown. Thus it may lie closely against one or other of the adjoining teeth, distant from the centre of the space; or it may have too great an anterior or posterior obliquity, or too great a lateral inclination; or, again, it may range with the other teeth with respect to its direction, but may occupy a position entirely within the circle; in

either case it will be difficult or impracticable to give a proper relative position to the crown in the usual way. It is true, that any slight deviation from a just position or inclination of the fang may be compensated for by a corresponding inflection of the pivot, or by forming an abrupt angle to it where the root and crown unite, or by placing the pivot on one side of the hole in the crown; but when the irregularities spoken of exist to any considerable extent, it will become necessary to adjust a pivot-plate to the root, and attach to the base an ordinary plate tooth, to which any desired position may be assigned. The root, in such case, should always be provided with a gold tube, constructed and applied in the manner already described, in order that the substitute may be easily removed and cleansed.

Fig. 34.

The form of plate, with pivot attached, for the replacement of a single tooth, is shown in Fig. 34. The method of constructing the plate and attaching the pivot will be fully described in a subsequent part of the work.

Whenever an edentated space exists contiguous to the root to be pivoted, the plate may be made to extend into it, and two or more teeth, as the case may be, mounted on the same base, provided the root, employed as a means of attachment, is strong, firmly socketed, and in a healthy condition. (Fig. 35.)

It will be sufficient to indicate, briefly, the means employed to favor the escape of purulent secretions through

the fang, either where the discharge exists at the time of the operation, or is subsequently induced by it. It is customary to afford a passage for it by cutting a groove along the wall of the root or on the side of the pivot, through which pus is conducted from the bottom of the canal through the opening between the root and crown.

FIG. 35.

A plan recommended many years ago by Dr. W. H. Elliot, consists in passing a small gold tube through the centre of the pivot, and in having an opening continuous with it through the crown of the artificial tooth. A modification of this practice was subsequently introduced by Dr. Coghlan of Ireland, who substitutes, for the solid metal pivot, what he terms a *capillary tube*, consisting of a gold wire with its centre traversed by a very minute tube or canal, through which contained pus is permitted to escape from the apex of the root. In any case, where either of the above expedients are resorted to, the natural canal of the fang beyond the end of the pivot should, of course, be left open.

If, after the operation of engrafting an artificial crown, inflammation of the peridental membrane and surrounding structures ensues, active measures should be immediately instituted for its reduction before suppuration occurs. The complication referred to, results mainly, in

a large majority of cases, either from shutting up an habitual discharge from secreting surfaces at the apex of the fang within the canal; or from a forcible injection of the air contained in the latter into the sensitive tissues beyond the apex in the act of pressing up a tightly fitting pivot into the root. These two circumstances, in conjunction, sometimes, with rough and unskillful manipulation, afford a rational explanation of the needless failures so common to this method, and enforce the necessity of first radically treating any existing disease in the appendages of the root, and of afterwards filling to the apex before introducing a pivot. Where inflammation results from the injudicious application of the pivot as just stated, it will ordinarily be sufficient to remove the latter if timely application is made by the patient for relief, and it is important in all cases to instruct the latter in reference to the necessity of early attention to any disturbance that may accrue from the operation. In addition to the withdrawal of the pivot, it will be prudent at the same time to direct the application of one or more leeches to the gum directly over the affected root. If the canal of the fang has been closed by filling in with gold, or the former is occupied by an imperforate tube, the leeching should be promptly and vigorously prosecuted, until resolution, if practicable, is effected. The topical remedies will sometimes be rendered more effective, especially when the local trouble is associated with an inflammatory diathesis or febrile condition of the

system, by such constitutional treatment as will tend to equalize or diminish the force of the circulation, as general blood-letting, emetics, saline aperients, nauseants, arterial sedatives, &c. Counter-irritation induced by stimulating applications to the gums, though sometimes employed, is of doubtful utility, and may in certain cases intensify rather than alleviate the morbid conditions present.

CHAPTER VI.

PARTIAL DENTURES RETAINED IN THE MOUTH BY MEANS OF CLASPS ATTACHED TO THE NATURAL TEETH.

Remarks on the use of clasps.—Clasps, or metallic bands, have been long and very generally employed as a means of retaining parts of sets of teeth in the mouth, and are still almost exclusively used for that purpose by a large class of practitioners. When these appliances are skillfully adjusted, and all the conditions pertaining to the mouth and remaining natural teeth are favorable to their application, they afford a certain, permanent, and satisfactory means of supporting partial dentures, and may be employed, under such circumstances, with comparative safety to the natural organs. When it is remembered, however, that in a lamentably large proportion of cases, clasps are carelessly or unskillfully formed and fitted to the teeth; that the organs of support are often indiscriminately selected, and are neither adapted in form, situation, or structure for such uses; and that they are frequently diseased and insecurely attached to the jaw, or are mutilated for the reception of clasps; we can readily understand to what unlimited extent this method is subject to abuses. In fact, no other special process in mechanical practice has been so fruitful of mal-practice as that under consideration, and the oppro-

brium which but too justly attaches to it in professional as well as popular estimation, is chargeable more properly to bad faith and unskillfulness on the part of the operator, and to want of attention in respect to the cleanliness of the substitute and the organs of the mouth on the part of the patient, than to any inherent unsuitableness of the method itself. Nevertheless, it must be admitted, that, under the most favorable circumstances, the teeth clasped are not wholly exempt from liability to injury, and this circumstance in itself renders it the more imperative that the process should be surrounded by all the safeguards that skill and ingenuity can devise.

The opinion, at one time current, that the injury inflicted upon the teeth by clasps was mainly the result of mechanical action, has given place to the more defensible view that the causes concerned in its production are chiefly of chemical origin. Thus, the secretions of the mouth with particles of alimentary and other substances being retained between the clasp and tooth for a sufficient period of time, and exposed to the favoring conditions of warmth and immobility, suffer a process of putrefactive decomposition by which acids are eliminated, and which, in their nascent state, act with perceptible energy upon the bone constituents of the tooth, producing decay. The rapidity and extent of this action will depend much upon the nature and quantity of the acids liberated; the structural characteristics and vital resistance of the teeth; the mechanical execution, adaptation,

and composition of the plate; and the personal habits of the patient with respect to cleanliness.

The most usual seat of decay in these cases is at the neck of the tooth where the enamel is thinest, and is sometimes limited to a circumscribed spot, but oftener extends on a line with the gum involving nearly or quite all of that part of the neck of the tooth embraced by the clasp. At first the enamel becomes bleached and softened as though macerated, and is ordinarily very sensitive to both chemical and mechanical irritants. With a continuance of the cause, the superficial portions of the affected parts become more and more thoroughly disintegrated, and sooner or later assume the open form and characteristics of ordinary decay. If, as was formerly supposed, decay or solution of tooth-bone in these cases resulted from mechanical attrition, or wearing away of the enamel, the injury would be inflicted at points distant from the neck of the tooth, where the clasp lies in more direct and immediate contact with the protuberant portions of the crown; but we find that decay, from this cause, is not only of infrequent occurrence at such points, but, on the contrary, the enamel here is frequently found condensed and polished by the mechanical action of the clasp. Certain conditions of the plate and clasp undoubtedly favor chemical action and accelerate the destruction of the tooth; as where the clasp bears unequally with sharp and unfinished edges upon the tooth, or where the base is faulty in its adaptation to the

mouth, admitting, by its mobility, of irregular traction or pressure upon the organs of support. Whenever the artificial appliance is thus unskillfully constructed and applied, and free interspaces are furnished for the lodgment and retention of particles of food, and the teeth clasped are defective in structure, and we have conjoined with these an utter disregard of cleanliness in respect to the substitute and remaining natural teeth, the destruction of the latter is certain, rapid, and generally irretrievable.

The teeth to which it is most proper to attach clasps.—The utility, comfort, and appearance of a partial set of artificial teeth in the mouth, will depend much upon the fitness of the natural organs selected for the purpose of support. "A clasp," says Professor Harris, "should never be applied to a loose tooth, or to one situated in a diseased socket, or which is so much affected by caries as to render its perfect restoration and permanent preservation impracticable, and when none but such can be had, the proper course to pursue is to extract every tooth in the jaw, and replace the loss of the whole with an entire upper set. The application of clasps to diseased or loose teeth, always aggravates the morbid conditions of the parts, and causes the substitute which they sustain, to become a source of annoyance to the patient. Besides, such teeth can be retained in the mouth only for a short time, and when they give way, the artificial appliance becomes useless, and even while it is worn, it

is not held firmly in place, but is moved up and down by the action of the lips and tongue, so that its presence can hardly escape observation from the most careless observer."*

Teeth, also, that are too short to admit of sufficient breadth to the clasp to impart stability to the substitute, and those that stand very irregularly in the arch, rendering it difficult for the patient to apply and remove the appliance, are unsuitable as organs of support.

In respect to the individual classes of teeth, it may be observed that the incisors, both as regards form and situation, are inadmissible for clasping, and are, therefore, never used for this purpose. The cuspidati, likewise, being placed conspicuously in the front part of the mouth, cannot be securely embraced without manifest exposure of the clasp; besides, the conical form of these teeth makes the use of a very slender clasp indispensable; hence, these teeth are rarely employed, and may only be used when, in the judgment of the operator, the necessities of the patient for the time being seem to require it.

Either the anterior or posterior molars, when sound and firm, offer, in respect to their general conformation and position in the arch, the most desirable and efficient support for parts of sets of teeth. The crowns of these teeth generally afford ample breadth to the clasp; have nearly parallel walls; and furnish, by the strength and

* Principles and Practice of Dental Surgery, p. 717.

immobility of their attachments to the jaw, the greatest security to the artificial appliance. The anterior molars are preferable where these are remaining in good condition, or are susceptible of being properly restored and preserved if diseased or carious.

Of the bicuspids, the posterior are to be selected, if practicable, as these better favor the concealment of the clasps; to effect which more perfectly, in the use of either the first or second bicuspids, it will be sufficient in many cases to embrace only the posterior half of the crown.

The dentes sapientiæ, or wisdom teeth, will seldom admit of the application of clasps, as the crowns of these teeth are usually very short and cone-shaped, the walls converging abruptly from the gum; besides, the retractive forces applied to the anterior teeth of the substitute, would, on account of the increased leverage consequent upon the extension of the plate back to these teeth, tend either to disengage the clasps or produce displacement of the teeth to which they are applied.

In supplying the loss of one or more of the inferior incisors, the appliance should, as a general thing, be attached either to the anterior or posterior bicuspids, as these teeth stand more nearly vertical in the arch. In fixing partial lower dentures, it will be sufficient to simply provide against mobility of the base, as they are favored rather than opposed, as above, by gravitation. The replacement of the inferior teeth posterior to one or

both bicuspids, however, are more frequently demanded; in which case it is customary to attach the clasps to the teeth immediately in front of and adjoining the vacuities on each side. It will not, however, be necessary to attach clasps in these cases whenever the edentated portions of the jaw present a distinctly scooped form, or marked concavity of outline, forming a kind of bed for the plate. If, on the other hand, the ridge falls back with a tolerably uniform inclination from the teeth in front, with no sufficient elevation at the base of the coronoid process, it may become necessary to provide against backward displacement of the substitute by attaching clasps, as before stated, to the teeth immediately in front. In any case, if the dentes sapientiæ remain, partial or stay clasps may be attached to each heel of the plate, and so adjusted as to rest against the anterior face of these teeth, obviating entirely the necessity of clasps in front.

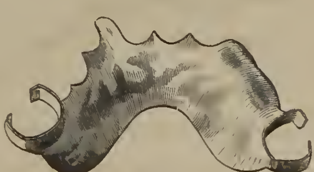
Separation of the teeth, by filing, for the reception of clasps.—The practice of separating the teeth with the file to provide for the application of clasps should always be avoided if practicable, since the liability of the teeth thus denuded of enamel to decay is greatly increased under circumstances so favorable to their disintegration. In the case of young subjects, especially, where the teeth are but imperfectly consolidated, and in adults whose teeth are defectively organized, presenting but a feeble resistance to the disorganizing agents usually pre-

sent in the mouth, the use of the file, for the purpose indicated, is eminently pernicious, and should never be resorted to until every other means of supporting the artificial appliance have been fairly and patiently tried.

Whenever a plain necessity for this operation exists, a careful examination of all the teeth, to which it is proper to apply clasps, should be made, and if decay is found upon their proximate surfaces, the separation should be made between the teeth so affected; and this circumstance should, in most cases, determine the selection, though the affected tooth or the one adjoining may not be esteemed, in other respects, the best for the purposes of support. If decay exists on the proximate surface of only one of the teeth to be separated, a safe-sided file should be employed, and the filing confined entirely to the carious tooth, leaving the enamel of the one adjoining unbroken. The cavity of decay should be well filled, and the filed surface thoroughly condensed and polished with a burnisher.

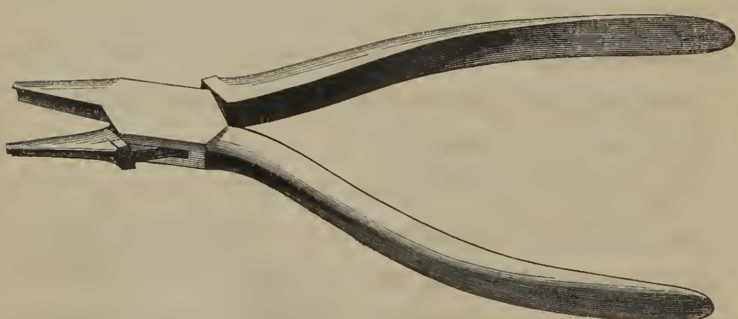
Modifications in the form of clasps.—1. *Plain band.*—The most usual form of clasp is that shown in Fig. 36. It consists of a plain metallic band of greater or less width and thickness, and is made to embrace the larger portion of the circumference of the tooth. In respect to the general properties of metallic clasps, it may be said that they should

Fig. 36.



be, as nearly as practicable, of the same quality or fineness as the plate or base to which they are united; they should be heavy enough to impart adequate security to the attachment, say twice the thickness of the base, and exceeding this in some cases; and sufficiently elastic to embrace accurately the more contracted parts of the teeth after having been temporarily forced apart in passing over the enlarged portions of the crowns. In constructing a plain band or clasp, a strip of sheet lead or other pliable substance may first be fitted accurately to the plaster tooth, making it of the required width, and shaping the edge next the gum in conformity with the irregularities in the latter around the neck of the tooth; the exact counterpart of the pattern thus obtained is then cut from the plate to be used in the formation of the clasp. The strip thus obtained is then bent with round-nosed or grooved pliers, (Fig. 37,) until conformed

Fig. 37.



as perfectly as possible to every portion of the surface of the tooth embraced by it. This coaptation should be

sufficiently accurate to exclude perfectly all solid substances from between the clasp and the tooth. A more accurate adaptation of the clasp may be secured in the following manner. First secure a pattern, as before described, and by this cut from a thin strip of platinum, say No. 30 or 32 of the gauge-plate, a band of the required size and form, and press or burnish it accurately to the form of the plaster tooth. The soft and pliant condition of this metal will admit of its being easily adapted to any irregularities upon the lateral walls of the tooth. The band thus molded to the tooth is then carefully removed from the model, or the mouth, if fitted to the tooth in the latter, and its central portion filled with a mixture of plaster and sand with a small metallic wire or bar passing through the centre to support it while soldering. The outer or exposed surface is then smeared with a mixture of borax, and small scraps or fragments of gold plate of equal fineness with the main plate, are placed at intervals and fused with the blowpipe until diffused uniformly over the surface. Small pieces may be added from time to time, until the required thickness of the clasp is obtained. The piece should be heated uniformly throughout to induce an even flow of the gold over the exterior surface of the platinum ring. By this method a faultless adaptation of the clasp to the tooth may be secured, provided the form of the latter is correctly represented on the model. In all cases where the plain band is used, it should be made as broad as the

tooth will admit of, as a clasp so formed gives greater stability to the plate, and does not endanger the tooth clasped in any greater degree than a narrow one.

2. *Standard clasp.*—To guard more perfectly against the retention of vitiated secretions and particles of food around the neck of the tooth, a method of constructing clasps has been devised and introduced to the notice of the profession by Dr. C. W. Spalding; which, by leaving the curvical portion of the tooth in a great degree uncovered, permits the action of the tongue and the natural circulation of the fluids of the mouth to wash or cleanse that portion of the tooth most liable to be injuriously affected. In commenting on this method, Dr. S. remarks: "The writer has for many years been in the habit of employing *narrow* clasps for the purposes of support, making them of sufficient thickness to give the required strength, and attaching them to the plate by means of standards, so arranged as to induce the removal of accumulations between the clasp and tooth, by the circulation of the saliva. (Fig. 38.) The use of one or more standards as a means of attachment, also provides, by a variation of their length, for the grasping of the tooth at any desired point. If the tooth is long, and particularly if it is at the same time bell-crowned, the point selected should be toward the grind-

Fig. 38.

ing surface, as far from the gum as is found practicable. If the tooth is short and of such form that it can be successfully clasped at no other point than that near the gum, the plate should be cut away at least one or one and a half lines from the tooth, and standards introduced for the purpose of promoting circulation, by affording a free passage for the ingress and egress of fluids. These standards should also be *narrow*, no wider than the clasp itself, and should constitute the only point of union between clasp and plate. Half-round wire will be found to be a very convenient article for making clasps. The particular *form* of the clasp is, however, immaterial, if it is both narrow and strong."*

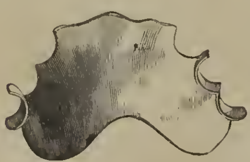
3. *Scalloped Clasp.*—Somewhat analogous in form to the clasp just described, and constructed with a similar design, is the one recommended by Dr. B. T. Whitney. A plain band of gold is fitted to the tooth in the manner first described, when that portion of it next the gum on the lingual side of the tooth is scalloped or cut away in the form of a semi-circle or arch, the ends of the clasp being in like manner narrowed sufficiently to relieve them from contact with the neck of the tooth. The intermediate points of the clasp which serve to unite the latter to the base may be two or more in number, and should be wide enough to impart adequate strength to the attachment. A clasp so formed and applied to the base will present very nearly the appearance of the

* American Dental Review, vol. i., p. 12.

standard clasp as represented in Fig. 37. Dr. W. recommends soldering but a single point at first, and then, having tried the plate in the mouth and adjusted the clasp properly to the tooth, remove and solder the remaining point or points.

4. *Partial or Stay Clasp.*—This form of clasp, instead of embracing the tooth, is designed to steady or fix the substitute in place by simply resting against one side of the tooth to which it is applied. (Fig 39.) They should

Fig. 39.



be so connected to the plate that when pressed over the enlarged portions of the crowns of the teeth, they will spring readily into place and adapt themselves closely to the more contracted parts near the gum. In cases where there is no adequate opposing force to that exerted by the clasp, care should be taken that no more pressure is produced than is necessary to keep the substitute in place, as, without this precaution outward displacement of the teeth is liable to occur, and the appliance, losing its bearing upon the teeth, soon becomes loosened and insecure in the mouth. The result alluded to should be particularly guarded against in the case of young subjects whose teeth are easily moved by the application of very slight forces.

Modifications in the form of plates for partial dentures supported in the mouth by clasps.—The particular form and dimensions of a plate, when clasps are used, will be

mainly determined by the number and position of the teeth to be replaced, and by the location of the natural organs to which the clasps are attached. It will be sufficient in this place to indicate the leading forms as they relate to the substitution of the several classes of teeth. In supplying the loss of a superior central or lateral incisor, it will be sufficient in many cases to attach the plate to either a bicuspid or molar on the same side, as in Fig. 40. If two or more of the front teeth, however, are to be replaced, it is better to extend the plate on each side of the palatal arch, and attach to a bicuspid or molar; (Fig. 41,) or to a bicuspid on one side, and a molar on the other; unless two firm and well formed teeth on the same or the opposite side

FIG. 40.

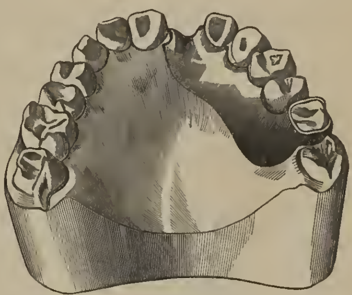


FIG. 41.

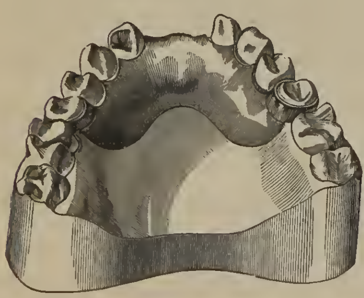


FIG. 42.

can be commanded, (Fig. 42,) while those upon the other could not be employed without a separation. In all

cases where it is necessary to extend a narrow plate from the extreme front part of the mouth to a single tooth situated posteriorly in the arch, the former should be strengthened by soldering a narrow rim of plate or half-round wire along the border next the teeth, and the clasp should, whenever practicable, pass in front of, and embrace, the anterior face of the tooth to which it is applied.

If an anterior bicuspid is to be replaced, the plate may be attached to the adjoining bicuspid; (Fig. 43, right side,) or if both are absent, then to the first molar; (Fig. 43, left side,) or the clasp may embrace both of

Fig. 43.

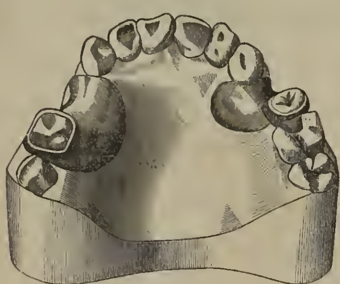
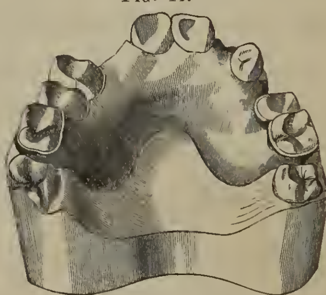


Fig. 44.



the latter if remaining and no separation between them exists. Fig. 44 represents the form of a plate supplying the loss of teeth at intervals; the clasp on one side embracing the posterior bicuspid in front and extending round the back part of the adjoining molar.

Fig. 45 represents the form of plate supplying the loss of the two bicuspids on one side, and the anterior bicuspid and molar on the opposite, the plate being

attached to an anterior molar and second bicuspid. The antero-posterior extension of the plate, as exhibited in connection with the bicuspid tooth, greatly favors the stability of the substitute, and, provided the plate and clasp are accurately fitted to the parts, the support afforded by a bicuspid tooth under such circumstances is equivalent to that furnished by a firm and well formed molar clasped as shown on the opposite side. A base so supported may be made to sustain any number of teeth with the greatest security.

Either the anterior or posterior molars, if firm and securely attached to the jaw, will afford adequate support to a plate replacing all of the teeth anterior to them. (Fig. 46.) Even a single molar situated on either side

Fig. 45.

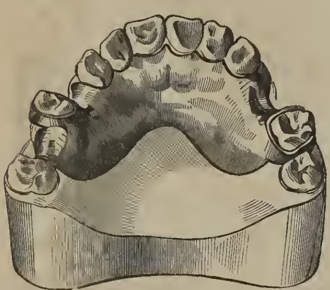
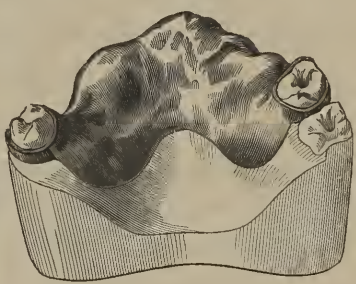


Fig. 46.



of the arch, if similarly circumstanced, may be made to sustain, with tolerable firmness, a base supplying the loss of all the remaining teeth,—though, ordinarily, it is better to extract such a tooth and substitute an entire upper denture. In all cases, where any considerable number of teeth anterior to those clasped are to be re-

placed, and a vacuity on the ridge exists posterior to the latter, the plate should be extended back and overlap the ridge, (Fig. 47,) the latter affording a counter-point of

Fig. 47.

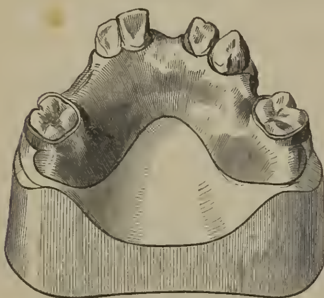


Fig. 48.

resistance when traction is made upon the anterior teeth, thus directing the forces applied more on a line with the long axes of the teeth that sustain the appliance.

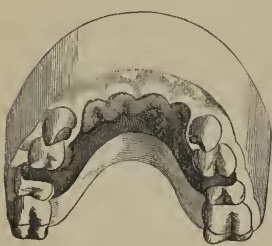
In supplying the loss of the inferior molars and bicuspids, or any number of these teeth, the form of plate represented in Fig. 48 is generally employed. The parts of the plate overlapping and resting upon the ridge behind, are connected with each other by a narrow strip of plate extending round the ridge in front on the lingual side of the anterior teeth. This latter portion of the plate should be accurately swaged to the form of the gum on which it rests, and should be made narrow enough to avoid encroaching upon the reflected portion of mucous membrane, the glands beneath the tongue, or the frænum linguæ. To avoid wounding these parts, and to allow them unobstructed play, it will be necessary to make this portion of the plate quite narrow; and as a single

thickness of plate would not impart adequate strength, it is customary to double this connecting band—the duplicate band extending back to the lateral wings of the plate, and crossing them obliquely, as indicated by the dotted lines in Fig. 48. Additional strength will be given by doubling the entire plate, but this is not generally required. The outer borders of those portions of the plate overlapping the ridge may be turned up to the depth of from half a line to a line to form a groove or socket for the reception of the ends of gum teeth, or blocks, if such are used; while the inner margins should terminate in a rounded edge, extending from heel to heel of the plate, this form being given to it either by turning the edge over and filling in the groove with solder, or by soldering a narrow strip of plate or half-round wire along the border. The circumstances or conditions which make the use of clasps necessary in these cases, as well as those, also, which contra-indicate their employment, have already been noticed. The practice of extending a narrow band or wire from the sides of the plate round the outer border of the ridge in front of the anterior teeth, to prevent a backward displacement of the base, is liable to produce irritation and tenderness of the mucous membrane immediately over the roots of the anterior teeth, and should, therefore, never be resorted to, unless there are no teeth remaining to which clasps may be applied.

If the appliance is designed to restore the loss of teeth

recently extracted, and where but little or no change has occurred from absorption of the parts, the portions of the plate which pass in between the adjoining teeth should terminate a line or more within the outer circle of the remaining teeth; and where the space, if it happens in the front part of the mouth, admits of two or more teeth, the edges of the extended portion of plate should be scalloped in correspondence with the festoons of the gum, as seen in Fig. 49. In such cases, plain or plate teeth, by which is meant those which represent only the crowns of the natural organs, should be employed; these, resting on the edge of the plate, will overlap somewhat, with their anterior edges resting directly upon the gum in front, taking the place occupied by the crowns of the extracted teeth. On the other hand, if sufficient time has elapsed after the extraction of the teeth to permit the changes in the form of the ridge to occur incident to partial or complete absorption of the parts, and a greater or less concavity exists between and above the teeth on the outside of the jaw, the plate, where it passes into the interspace, should extend some distance over the border of the ridge.

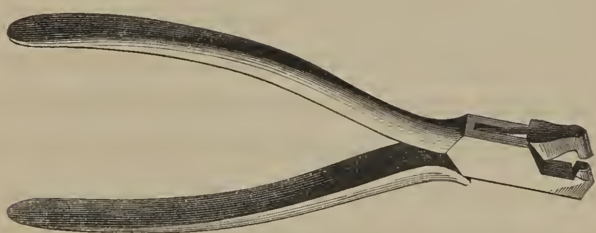
Fig. 49.



Swaging or stamping the plate.—Having determined upon the proper form and dimensions of the plate for any given case, its outlines may first be traced upon the

model; from this an exact pattern in lead may be obtained, or the pattern may be sufficiently ample to partially overlap the cut extremities of the teeth when the latter are not represented upon the die, having been previously cut from the model. The outlines of the pattern are then traced upon the plate of gold or other metal to be used for the base. The redundant portions of plate are then cut away with plate shears and forceps, and the edges trimmed smooth with a file. A very convenient and almost indispensable instrument for cutting away the plate where it describes the palatal curvatures of the teeth, is a plate forcep as exhibited in Fig. 50.

Fig. 50.



The plate cut to the proper form is now placed upon the die and brought as nearly as possible into adaptation with a wooden or horn mallet; it is then placed between the die and counter, the latter resting on an anvil or other equally resisting surface, when the two metallic pieces are brought forcibly together with a few steady and well directed blows of a heavy hammer. Tilting of the die, resulting sometimes unavoidably from a one-sided blow, may be obviated by placing a cone-shaped piece of

cast-iron, brass, or zinc over the die, the base of the cone resting on the back of the die; by this expedient the force of the blow is equalized and concentrated more directly over the die. The metallic swages should, at first, be brought cautiously together, and should be separated after the first blow or two to enable the manipulator to detect and remedy any malposition of the plate before it becomes intractable from continued swaging. If, in the process of stamping, any portion of the plate is found cracking or parting, its further extension at that point may be prevented by flowing a little solder at the termination of the fissure. During the progress of swaging, the plate should be frequently annealed, which is done by bringing it to a full red heat under the blow-pipe, or by placing it in the furnace; the plate is thus rendered more pliant and can be more readily and perfectly forced into adaptation to the irregularities on the face of the die.

If, after somewhat protracted swaging, the plate is not conformed perfectly to the face of the die, another and unused counter should be substituted for that in use; and, indeed, it is better in all cases to have duplicate copies both of the die and counter in reserve with which to complete the swaging, inasmuch as more or less deformity of both swages unavoidably occurs before the plate is brought into very accurate coaptation with the die. The stamping conducted thus far, the plate may be applied to the plaster model, and if found too full at

any points, it should be trimmed with a file to the exact dimensions required. The margins of the plate adjoining the necks of the teeth should be permitted either to lie closely to them, or should be cut away, leaving a space equal to a line or more between the plate and the teeth; for if but a very narrow line of uncovered gum remains at these points, injury to the parts immediately surrounding the necks of the teeth is more liable to occur from strangulation of the interposed gum than if the plate were further removed from the teeth or rested directly against them.

If the portion of plate which passes in between the remaining teeth is quite narrow, as where but a single tooth is to be supplied, it should be strengthened by wiring the edges or doubling the plate at such point. It is also advisable in many cases, in order to provide more perfectly against fracture or distortion of the base in mastication, to wire or double the entire border of the plate adjoining the necks of the teeth. Narrow bands of gold resting against the necks of the teeth, constructed and adjusted after the manner of stay clasps, are sometimes soldered to the edge of the plate next the teeth; but unless the substitute is frequently removed from the mouth and cleansed, as well, also, as the teeth to which they are applied, serious injury is likely to be inflicted upon the teeth implicated.

The edges of those parts of the plate occupying the vacuities on the ridge should be filed thin to admit of a

more accurate adaptation of the artificial with the natural gum, and should not, as before observed, ordinarily extend beyond the outer circle of the contiguous teeth, allowing the gum extremity of the artificial tooth to overlap and rest directly on the natural gum above. If, however, the concavity between and above the teeth on the external border of the ridge is considerable, the interdentinal portions of plate should overlap the border completely and underlie the porcelain gum.

Uniting the plate and clasps.—Having proceeded thus far in the operation, the plate and clasps should next be united to each other, and the utility and comfort of the appliance in the mouth, as well as the safety of the natural organs used for the purposes of support, will depend, in a great measure, upon the accurateness of the relation of the several parts of the appliance to the organs of the mouth; it being a matter of primary importance that the various parts of the substitute should be so adjusted to the remaining teeth,—especially those to which the clasps are applied,—and the ridge and palate, that it shall not, in any material degree, act as a retractor upon the organs of support, or furnish interspaces for the lodgment of food, while at the same time it should be so fitted as to be easily removed and applied by the patient.

The clasps having been fitted to the plaster teeth and the base swaged to the form of the palatal arch and ridge, the plate is placed in its proper position in

the mouth and an impression in wax taken of the latter with the plate in place. The impression with the plate adhering, is then removed from the mouth, its surface oiled and a model obtained in the manner heretofore described. If, in separating the model and impression, the plate adheres to the latter, it should be detached and adjusted to the model and the clasps arranged upon the plaster teeth. The plate and clasps may now be bound to the model with annealed wire, and united to each other with solder; but the better way is to attach them to each other temporarily, with adhesive wax, in the relation they occupy on the model, and then remove them carefully and imbed the clasps and palatal face of the plate in a mixture of nearly equal parts of plaster, sand and asbestos. Before uniting the two pieces on the model with wax, however, the ends of the clasps should be straightened out or spread apart, in order that they may part readily from the plaster teeth without, in any degree, changing their exact relation to the plate; in doing which, it should be observed that all parts of the clasps which are to be united to the plate should remain in close contact with the plaster teeth. After the plaster mixture, in which the plate and clasps are imbedded, has become sufficiently hard, the portions of wax which temporarily united the latter should be removed, and the surfaces of the clasps and plate, where they unite with each other, smeared with borax ground in water to the consistence of cream;

small pieces of solder are then placed along the lines of contact, the investient heated in the furnace until the plate acquires a full red heat, when it is removed, placed upon a suitable holder, and the solder fused with the blowpipe.

Whenever the form and inclination of the teeth to be clasped are not fairly represented on the model, owing to dragging or displacement of the wax in withdrawing the impression, the difficulties of securing a proper relative adjustment of the several parts of the appliance will be increased; but either of the following methods, if carefully and accurately manipulated, will secure accurate results.

1. Gutta percha may be substituted for wax when taking an impression with the plate in the mouth. With the proper use of this material, the exact form and inclination of the teeth will be preserved; and when employed, it should be filled in with plaster for the model immediately after removing it from the mouth. The subsequent steps in the operation are precisely similar to those described when wax is used.

2. Another method is to adjust the clasps and plate to the parts in the mouth, attach them temporarily in their proper relation, and remove, invest, and solder in the usual way. This may be accomplished in the following manner. First spread apart the ends of the clasp somewhat to permit it to be easily removed from the tooth; place this upon the tooth in the mouth to be

clasped; then adjust the plate in the mouth, and attach the two to each other by pressing a piece of stiff, adhesive wax in against the clasp and plate where they unite; harden the wax by placing against it, for a few minutes, the end of a napkin moist with cold water; then remove the plate and clasp carefully from the mouth, and invest and solder as before. The plate, with one clasp permanently attached, is now placed back in the mouth, and the second clasp adjusted to the tooth on the opposite side in the manner before alluded to; this is then temporarily fastened to the plate and otherwise treated in like manner as the one first described. If the teeth to be clasped are favorably formed and regularly arranged in the arch, both clasps may, at the same time, be temporarily attached to the plate in the first instance; if not, it will be impracticable to to remove them from the teeth without disturbing the wax and changing their relation to the base and the teeth clasped. The additional labor and consumption of time incident to a separate attachment of the clasps, will, in proportion as they secure better results, amply reward the operator for his pains-taking.

Plaster is sometimes substituted for wax in this process; in which case, it is introduced into the mouth on a small piece of wax or sheet lead and pressed gently against the uniting portions of the plate and clasp, and allowed to remain until sufficiently hard. Any superfluous portions around the tooth that may hinder the easy

removal of the clasp should now be cut away, when the pieces so attached to each other are removed from the mouth. A separation of the plaster from the clasp or plate, or both, may occur when removing the latter; in this case, the several parts may be readily and accurately adjusted to each other again in their exact relation when out of the mouth; as the latter will be plainly indicated by the impression made by the plate and clasp in the plaster. Being re-adjusted, they may be further secured by sticking them together with a little softened wax, when they are invested, the temporary fastenings of plaster removed, and the pieces united by soldering. The use of plaster in these cases is due to Dr. Lester Noble, and unquestionably possesses many advantages over wax for the purpose, as the latter is liable even with the most skillful manipulation, to become displaced in removing it from the mouth; and this change, when it occurs, not being indicated by inspection of the wax, is incapable of timely correction.

3. Still another method, is that contrived by Dr. Fogle, and described by Dr. Cushman in the tenth volume of the American Journal of Dental Science. It consists in securing the proper relation of the clasps to the teeth in the mouth by the use, in the first instance, of what are termed "temporary fastenings." The plate and clasps are first applied to the model, and are then connected by a narrow strip of plate or piece of wire bent in the form of a bow, the concavity facing the model, one end of

which is soldered to the palatal side of the clasp, and the other to a contiguous point upon the plate. The pieces thus temporarily united are removed from the model and adjusted to the parts in the mouth. If the position of the clasps is found in any respect faulty, they can be easily and accurately adapted to the walls of the teeth by bending or twisting the connecting strip in any desired direction with pliers or other instruments suitable for the purpose. This accomplished, the plate and clasps are removed, and the operation of permanently uniting the clasps to the plate performed in the usual manner.

CHAPTER VII.

PARTIAL DENTURES SUPPORTED IN THE MOUTH BY MEANS OF CYLINDERS OF WOOD ATTACHED TO TUBED PLATES.

The following description of a method of supporting partial sets of teeth in the mouth by means of wood cylinders attached to the plate is copied from an article contributed by Dr. W. M. Hunter to the fourth volume of the American Journal of Dental Science. The same principle had long been made available in Europe in attaching artificial substitutes constructed of the hippopotamus ivory, but the credit of its application to metallic plates is alike due to Drs. Hunter and Charles Stokes of London.

"After swaging, the plate, as usual, is tried in the mouth, and an accurate impression of the teeth to be used, is taken over the plate, as recommended by Dr. Arthur, in the American Journal, which will show the exact position of the tooth in its relation to the plate; after which the edge of the plate surrounding the teeth to be made use of, should be doubled or wired, when the tubes may be soldered at their proper points, taking care never to apply pressure to one side of a tooth without some means of counteracting the effect; the means being either a *sufficient number* of natural teeth contiguous to the tooth to be used, a counter tube, an arm of metal, or an artificial tooth, depending entirely upon the nature of the case.

"At times, it is well to tube but one side of the plate and clasp the other; in cases where the crown of the tooth is much larger than the neck, a beautiful application may be thus made.

"The tubes should be from one-eighth of an inch to one line in diameter, and should be filled with whiting before applying heat, to prevent them from filling with solder at the time of soldering to the plate. They should be placed upon the plate so carefully, that the mouth of the tube will come in contact with the natural tooth, as it is desirable to have the wood protrude but very slightly beyond the orifice.

"When it can be properly done, the tubes are soldered at the same time the teeth are, as it saves much trouble in fitting; it cannot, however, be very well done where it is designed to fit a tooth over a tube, but can very readily be done where the tube is designed to fill the angle caused by the meeting of the stay and plate, in the incisors and canine teeth, and where a canine is used for a bicuspid, building over the tube with metal to form the inner cusp."

The accompanying cuts show clearly the form and application of the tubes referred to. In Fig. 51, showing on one side but a single tube, the counter-force is obtained by the artificial tooth which rests against the anterior face of the one to which the wood cylinder is applied. Fig. 52 exhibits tubes arranged on one side, and a clasp on the other; and shows the substitution of a canine for a bicuspid, with an inner cusp built up over

Fig. 51.

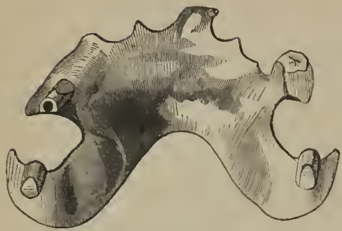


Fig. 52.

the tube, practically converting a cuspid into a bicuspid tooth.

In commenting on the application of this principle to partial sets of teeth, Dr. H. remarks: "The advantages in many cases must be apparent to the thinking dentist, but, perhaps, it might not be amiss to enumerate a few.

"The fixture is held in place with greater firmness than by means of clasps.

"In some instances where I have used clasps, I have also used the tube in combination, to give stability for masticating purposes.

"The injury to the natural teeth must be much less, owing to the smaller amount of surface in contact.

"If decay should take place, it would require but an ordinary filling to restore the tooth.

"It prevents that peculiarly disagreeable sensation experienced, particularly in fruit season, upon removing and replacing artificial teeth.

"After having tested it for more than a year, I am satisfied that it greatly lessens the chances of decay in those cases where it can be applied, and I have removed the clasps in some old cases with great satisfaction to my patients."

CHAPTER VIII.

PARTIAL DENTURES SUPPORTED IN THE MOUTH BY PIVOTING THE PLATE TO THE ROOTS OF THE NATURAL TEETH.

A limited number of teeth may be mounted on a plate pivoted to the roots of two or more of the front teeth; and provided the latter are firm, well formed, and in a healthy condition at the time of the operation, an appliance so adjusted may be worn by the patient with comparative comfort and efficiency for from five to eight years.

Ordinarily, the roots of the cuspidati afford the most secure means of attachment, and will furnish adequate support to a substitute supplying the loss of a part or all of the teeth anterior to the bicuspids, (Fig. 53,) and, in some cases, one or two of the latter on each side. The roots of the incisors, also, may be used, or one of the latter and a cuspidatus. In some cases the plate may be secured in the mouth by pivoting to a root on one side, or in front, and clasping to a tooth on the opposite side, (Fig. 54,) provided the crown of the latter and the pivot root stand nearly or quite parallel with each other, as any considerable deviation from this relation

Fig. 53.

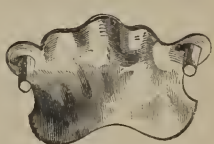
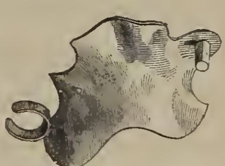


Fig. 54.



will render it difficult or impossible to apply and remove the substitute.

The roots of the teeth to be used as a means of support should be prepared in the manner described under the head of "Pivot teeth." In all cases, the enlarged canal of the root should be provided with a gold tube, as this method is the only one which will protect the root from the mechanical action of the pivot, or permit a ready and frequent removal of the appliance for the purpose of cleansing it and the parts associated with it in the mouth.

The roots being prepared in the manner indicated, an impression of the mouth is taken, and with a die and counter obtained from a plaster model of the parts, a plate of the required form is swaged covering the filed extremities of the roots to be pivoted, and extending anteriorly very nearly or quite to the free margins of the gum in front. The plate at those points corresponding with the openings into the roots, is then perforated and enlarged sufficiently to admit of the passage of the metallic pivots; the form and position of the orifices in the roots being transferred to the metallic die, the corresponding depressions in the plate at these points when the latter is swaged, will serve as a sufficient guide in perforating the plate for the pivots. The plate is now applied to the mouth, and the metallic pivot, one-half longer than that ultimately required and formed to fit the tube accurately but not tightly, is passed through the

opening in the plate and pressed to the bottom of the tube, leaving the surplus portion of pivot projecting on the lingual side of the plate. The plate and pivot are now secured in this precise relation by imbedding the projecting portion of the latter and the parts of the plate immediately surrounding it, in a batter of plaster. When the plaster has hardened, the plate and pivot with the plaster attached, are removed in their undisturbed relation from the mouth. To preserve the several pieces *in situ* more perfectly, the projecting end of the pivot may be flexed, or a head formed on it with the file before applying the plaster; the pivot thus secured will bring all parts together if traction is made on the plate in the act of withdrawing the pivot.

The plate being removed from the mouth, its palatal portion is imbedded in the plaster mixture, and when the latter is hard, the plaster is removed from around the pivot on the opposite side of the plate, and the pivot permanently united by flowing solder at its point of contact with the plate. The redundant portion of the pivot on the lingual side of the base is then cut and filed away even with the surface of the latter. If the manipulations have been accurately conducted, the plate and pivot, on being reapplied to the parts in the mouth, will be found to adapt themselves perfectly to the palatal arch and roots.

It is better, unless the roots to be pivoted stand nearly or quite parallel, to adjust and solder but a single pivot

at a time, as but a very slight variation in the direction of the roots would render the withdrawal of both pivots at the same time difficult or impracticable without more or less change of relation. The same may be remarked of those cases where a clasp is used in conjunction with the pivot.

The most efficient method of rendering the appliance stationary when applied to the roots, and at the same time of enabling the patient to readily apply and remove it at will, is that recommended by Dr. Dwinelle, and described in a previous chapter.

Gold used for pivots in these cases should be alloyed with platinum, as that ordinarily employed for plate is too inelastic for the purpose.

CHAPTER IX.

PARTIAL DENTURES SUPPORTED IN THE MOUTH BY ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE.

The method of attaching partial sets of teeth to the superior jaw by means of atmospheric pressure, is much more generally practiced now than formerly, and whenever the condition of the soft parts of the mouth, the general configuration of the palatal arch, and the antagonism or occlusion of the artificial with the natural teeth favor its adoption, there are good and sufficient reasons why it should be preferred, in all practicable cases, to either of the other methods heretofore described.

Modifications in the form of the base.—If vacuities exist at various points on the ridge, the plate on which the teeth of replacement are mounted, should be ample in its dimensions, covering nearly or quite all of the hard palate. The general form of the base where several teeth scattered throughout the arch are required, is shown in Fig. 55. In most cases, whether but one or a greater number of teeth are to be replaced, increased adherence and stability of the substitute will be better secured by permitting the plate to cover the larger portion of the roof of the mouth; though in cases that present the best form of the vault, a diminished surface may

be given to the base with equally satisfactory results. In the substitution of a single incisor, for example, it will frequently be sufficient to employ a very small plate, covering only a part of the anterior sloping wall of the palate. (Fig. 56.) In the latter case, the plate

Fig. 55.

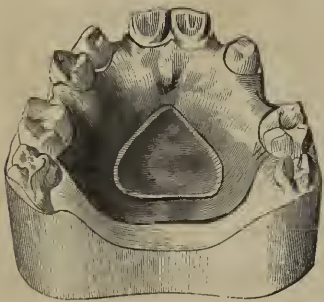
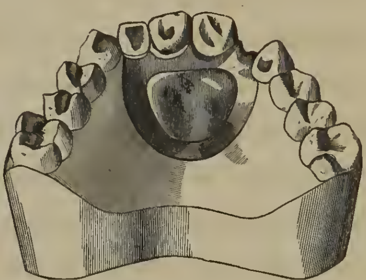


Fig. 56.



used may be very thin, say No. 30 of the gauge; it will thus impede the movements of the tongue less, and may be swaged more accurately to the parts. If constructed with an air-chamber, the latter should be quite shallow.

A somewhat anomalous form of atmospheric pressure plate employed in the substitution of one or two bicuspid teeth on each side is described by Professor Taft,* the design of which is to secure, in such cases, increased stability of the substitute, while much of the palatal arch is left uncovered. It consists, as will be seen by reference to Fig. 57, of two lateral cavity-plates accurately adjusted to the sloping walls of the palate on each side, immediately adjoining and partly occupying the spaces

* Dental Register of the West, vol. xiii. p. 112.

to be supplied. These lateral plates may be made as large as a dime, or somewhat larger, and of an eliptical shape if both bicuspids on the same side are to be replaced; and are connected with each other by a narrow band of gold plate, two lines or more in width, having an anterior curvature, and resting on the front wall of the palate, two or three lines behind the anterior teeth. The entire appliance may be constructed from a single piece of gold plate swaged accurately to the parts; or the lateral plates and connecting band may be separately swaged and secured in their proper relation to each other in the mouth with wax or plaster, when they are carefully removed, invested, and soldered together; it should then be re-swaged to correct any change of relation that may have happened during the concluding manipulations. The liability of the plate to ride upon the central and raised portion of the palate, when pressure is made upon one side, throwing the plate off from the ridge on the other, as in the case of a base extending across the arch, is in a great degree obviated by the method just described.

Fig. 57.

Manner of forming an air-chamber.—Atmospheric pressure plates for partial cases are usually constructed with a central air-chamber; in which case, the part of the

model representing the chamber may be formed in either of the ways mentioned in the chapter on "Plaster Models." The model prepared, the form of the plate to be used is first indicated thereon, and from this a pattern in sheet-lead is obtained, which is placed on the plate of gold or other metal, and its outlines traced with a pointed instrument; the redundant portions are then cut away with plate shears and forceps. The plate is now placed on the die, and brought as nearly as possible into adaptation to the latter with the mallet and pliers; it is then interposed between the die and counter and swaged until it conforms perfectly to the face of the former; annealing the plate frequently to render it more pliant and manageable under the hammer. Unless the plate used is purer and thinner than is generally employed, or than is consistent with the required strength, it will fail to be forced perfectly into the groove around the chamber by the process of swaging alone; a more definite border, however, may be formed by forcing the plate in at this place with a small, smooth-faced stamp, shaped to the angle of the groove, passing round the chamber and carefully forcing the plate in with the stamp and a small hammer or mallet, until a somewhat sharp and abrupt angle is obtained to the palatal edge of the chamber. After the chamber is as perfectly formed as possible in this way, the plate should be well annealed and again swaged to correct any partial deformity occasioned by stamping the chamber.

A still more perfectly defined angle may be given to the borders of the chamber in the following manner. After swaging the plate sufficiently to indicate the exact position and form of the chamber, the portion forming the latter should be separated from the main plate by completely dividing it with a small, sharp, chisel-shaped instrument, cutting on a line with the groove around the chamber until the latter is entirely separated. The cut portion of the main plate is then trimmed evenly with a file, being careful not to enlarge the opening more than is required to remove the irregularities of the edge formed in cutting. The plate, with its central portion removed, is then placed upon the die, when a separate piece of gold cut to the general form of a chamber, but somewhat larger than the opening in the main plate, is adjusted over the chamber and struck up with the plate until the overlapping portions of the central piece are forced down upon the plate around the margins of the chamber. It is not, however, always necessary to employ a separate piece of gold for the chamber, as the central portion cut from the plate in the first instance may be sufficiently enlarged for the purpose. This is accomplished by first flattening out the detached portion, annealing it, and then passing successive portions of its edges a sixteenth of an inch or more between the rollers, the latter being sufficiently approximated to produce a perceptible thinning of the margins. When the entire border of the

chamber piece has been thus attenuated and extended, it will be found so much enlarged that when adjusted to the die and swaged in connection with the main plate, its borders will overlap and rest upon the margins of the opening in the base, as in the other case.

The portions of the plate and cut chamber lying in contact are now coated with borax and pieces of solder placed along the line of union on the lingual side of the plate, when the two pieces, being transferred to a bed of charcoal, are permanently united by flowing the solder with a blowpipe. Sufficient heat should be applied to induce an extension of the solder between the two portions of plate, filling up completely the gap between them to the edge of the orifice in the main plate, forming, at this point, a square and well defined angle to the margins of the chamber.

CHAPTER X.

METHOD OF OBTAINING AN ANTAGONIZING MODEL FOR PARTIAL DENTURES; SELECTING, ARRANGING, AND ANTAGONIZING THE TEETH; INVESTING, ADJUSTING STAYS, SOLDERING, ETC.

Having constructed the plate or base to be used as a support for partial sets of teeth in either of the ways described in the preceding chapters, it will be necessary, before arranging the teeth on the plate, to secure an accurate representation of all the remaining natural teeth of both jaws in plaster, preserving accurately the relation which these organs bear to each other in the mouth. This is effected by what is called an *antagonizing model*, and may be secured in the following manner.

A roll or strip of adhesive wax is first attached to the lingual border of the plate, and its adhesion secured by holding the opposite side of the plate for a moment over the flame of a spirit lamp. The wax used for articulating purposes should be harder and more tenacious than plain beeswax, and may be compounded from the following formula:

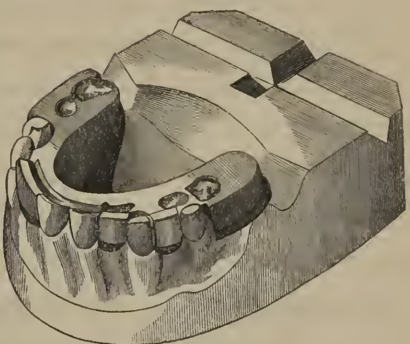
Beeswax, ...	1 pound
Gum mastich, . . .	2 oz.
Spanish whiting, . . .	1 oz.

The wax is first melted in a shallow vessel, and the mastich, finely pulverized, gradually added, and then the

whiting, stirring constantly until thoroughly incorporated. The rim of wax being arranged on the plate, all superfluous portions overhanging the margins occupied by the remaining teeth are cut away; the plate may then be placed on the model and the wax again trimmed, leaving it somewhat fuller than the outer circle of the teeth, and from one to three lines longer than those immediately adjoining the spaces. The plate, with the wax attached, is then placed in its proper position in the mouth and the patient instructed to close the jaws naturally until the remaining teeth meet; one-third or more of the crowns of the opposing teeth opposite the spaces will thus be imbedded in the wax. A still fuller impression of the opposing teeth may be obtained, if desired, by pressing the edges of the wax down upon the crowns with the finger. If a series of anterior teeth are to be replaced, the mesial line of the mouth in front should be indicated upon the wax by drawing a line vertically across the latter to serve as a guide in the arrangement of the central incisors and adjoining teeth. The plate and wax are then carefully removed from the mouth and again placed upon the plaster model, the latter having been previously obtained from an impression of the parts with the plate in the mouth. The model is then placed on a slip of paper with the plate and wax upward, and the heel of the model extended from one to two inches posteriorly to form an articulating surface for the remaining portion of the antagonizing model. The added por-

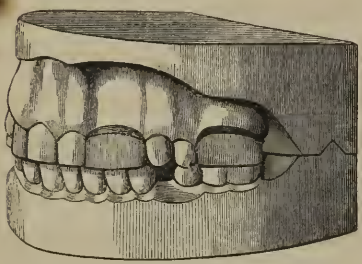
tion of plaster may be confined by a narrow strip of wax or sheet-lead extending back upon each side of the model, into which a batter of plaster is poured to the depth of half or three-fourths of an inch. When hard, the edges and upper surface of the added plaster should be trimmed smooth, and a crucial groove, or two or three conical-shaped holes, cut in the surface of the latter to secure a fixed and definite relation of the two parts of the model. The articulating surface is then varnished and oiled to prevent the next portion of plaster from adhering; the imprints of the teeth in the wax are also oiled. This portion of the antagonizing model, with the plate and wax attached, is exhibited in Fig. 58. The open space looking into the palatal vault should be closed with a sheet of softened wax to prevent the next portion of plaster from flowing into the cavity underneath. A batter of plaster is now poured carefully upon the exposed surface of the wax, filling the imprints of the teeth perfectly, and extending back upon the heel of the model until it acquires a depth of half an inch or more. When sufficiently hard, the two sections of the model are separated; superfluous portions trimmed away: and the entire surface of both

Fig. 58.



pieces glazed with varnish. The model complete, with the plate in place, and the wax (retained as a temporary support whilst adjusting the artificial teeth,) trimmed as required, are shown in Fig. 59, and if the manipulations have been accurate, this simple contrivance will exhibit all the parts represented in plaster in precisely the same relative position which they occupy in the mouth when the teeth are closed upon each other. It will be seen, by reference to Fig. 59, that only those teeth of the opposing jaw which present to the spaces, are represented in plaster, as these are all that are required in arranging the teeth of replacement.

Fig. 59.



Selecting, arranging, and antagonizing the teeth.—The teeth of replacement should harmonize, as nearly as possible, in size, configuration, and color, with those remaining in the mouth; and when selecting teeth for any given case, the operator should be provided with a sufficient number of sample teeth to meet every requirement, by comparison, in respect to the various tints or delicate shades of color characteristic of the natural teeth and gums. The required size and form of the artificial teeth may be determined with tolerable accuracy by a comparison with those on the plaster model, but the form or

figure more certainly by a careful inspection of those in the mouth.

A greater or less change in the form of porcelain teeth will be required, in nearly all cases, in arranging and fitting them to the vacuities in the jaw; and this is more particularly so in those cases requiring the use of gum teeth. This alteration of form is effected by grinding away portions of the tooth upon an emery or corundum wheel, attached, as will be seen in Fig. 60, to a foot-lathe. If the edentated portions of the ridge have suffered but little change of form by absorption, as where the teeth have been recently extracted, and plate teeth (those representing only the crowns of the natural organs,) are used, the posterior portions of the base of the latter resting upon the margins of the plate, will only require to be conformed to the irregularities on the surface of the base, grinding sufficiently to give to them the proper length and relative position, while their anterior cervical portion is permitted to overlap the edge of the plate and rest directly upon the gum in front on a line with the adjoining teeth. When, however, a considerable concavity exists in the ridge and external border, and single gum teeth are employed to restore the cus-

Fig. 60.

tomary fullness and contour of the parts, the gum portion of the tooth should be ground away on its posterior face sufficiently to restore the circle of the gum on the external border of the alveolus, and from the base of the tooth where it rests upon the plate, to admit of a proper relative position of the artificial crown; while those portions of the porcelain gum terminating at, and adjoining the remaining teeth, next the spaces, should be formed with a thin, retreating edge where it laps upon the natural gum, giving to the parts, when the substitute is adjusted to the mouth, the appearance of an unbroken denture and a continuous gum. When the space to be supplied requires a series of two or more single gum teeth, the latter should be united to each other with the greatest care and exactness by grinding the proximate edges of the gum portions until the coaptation is such as to render the seams imperceptible in the mouth. In adjusting the porcelain teeth to the plate, the base of each tooth should be ground to rest as directly and uniformly on the plate as possible; for if thrown, in any degree, from the plate, the whole strain in mastication will come upon the platinum rivets, and, in a comparatively short time, the latter will either be entirely worn or cut off, or the artificial crown will be fractured on a line with the pins.

In antagonizing partial sets of teeth, the indications pointed out by the customary closure of the natural organs should be followed as nearly as the form and

position of the opposing teeth will permit. A changed or abnormal relation of the teeth of both jaws, however, frequently renders it difficult to effect a satisfactory adjustment of the teeth of replacement. If, in the case of the bicuspids, for example, one or more teeth in the under jaw project into a vacuity above to the extent of one-third or more of its depth, a direct closure of the substituted organs upon these, in the ordinary manner, would be impracticable without a corresponding shortening of the porcelain teeth, enforcing, in such cases, an inharmonious arrangement entirely inconsistent with the just requirements of the case. The difficulty cited, or any of the various modifications of it, may be overcome wholly or in part in one of two or three ways. If the teeth encroaching upon the opposite space are very loose, as is frequently the case with those that have become elongated from the long continued want of an adequate opposing force, or are hopelessly carious or otherwise diseased, they should be at once removed. If they remain firm and sound, and stand slightly within the circle of the teeth of the opposite jaw, or if they have somewhat of an inward inclination in the arch, the vacuity opposite may be filled with non-masticating teeth, as a canine, on the lingual side of which an antagonizing cusp of gold may be constructed, allowing the point of the cuspid to lap over upon the labial face of the encroaching tooth or teeth; or a bicuspid, manufactured for the purpose with the inner cusp near the base of the tooth, may

be used instead. Additional room may be provided, in such cases, for the overlapping portion by filing away from a corresponding point on the opposing tooth. If, however, taking the most impracticable case, the intruding teeth are sound and firm and stand vertically in the arch, closing between the opposing teeth on a line with, or somewhat outside of, the outer circle of the latter, (the elongation of such teeth being rather relative than absolute, as where it results from a mechanical wearing away of the remaining antagonizing teeth and a corresponding approximation of the jaws,) the practitioner will be compelled either to submit to a mal-arrangement of the teeth of replacement by grinding away sufficiently from their grinding surfaces to permit an unobstructed closure of the natural organs, or decline the operation altogether.

The undue projection of the teeth of one jaw into a vacuity occurring in the one opposite more frequently happens, however, in connection with the loss of the superior incisors. In such cases, the points of the lower incisors very frequently encroach upon the circle of the upper teeth, so that when the artificial teeth are arranged above in correspondence with the circle of the adjoining teeth, and the jaws are approximated, the points of the inferior teeth will strike prematurely either upon the cutting edges of those above or will close upon their inner surfaces,—impeding thereby, or entirely preventing, the occlusion of the teeth posterior to them. For such

cases, thin teeth should be selected, and whenever necessary, the lower teeth may be filed away sufficiently, while those of replacement should, at the same time, be arranged as prominently as the circle will admit of. If these expedients fail, and a sufficient number of teeth posterior to the incisors require to be substituted in connection with the same appliance, it will be better, in cases not susceptible of satisfactory correction by the means already suggested, to change the bite by substituting an entirely new antagonism with the artificial teeth,—spreading the jaws sufficiently apart to relieve the artificial incisors in front.

In no case, except that last described, should the artificial teeth come in contact with the opposing teeth before the occlusion of the remaining natural organs when the jaws are closed. The contact of all the teeth of one jaw, artificial and natural, with those of the opposite, should either be simultaneous, or the natural teeth should be permitted to strike first.

In view of the difficulties which so frequently present themselves in connection with the arrangement of artificial teeth in partial cases, it may not be amiss to observe that, however essential to the natural and agreeable expression of the individual an exact and harmonious arrangement of the teeth of replacement may be, this requirement should, in some degree, be disregarded whenever the necessities of the patient, in respect to the comfort and utility of the appliance or the safety of the natural organs, demand it;—to what extent appearances

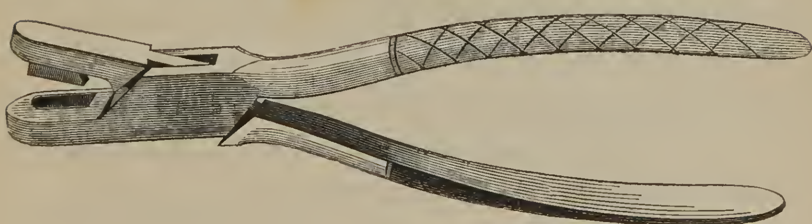
should be sacrificed to these considerations, will depend upon the peculiar exigencies of the case, and cannot, therefore, be specifically stated. On the other hand, it may be observed that, if a sufficient number of the natural teeth are remaining in both jaws to enable the patient to perform, with tolerable efficiency, the act of mastication, the mere utility of the substitute in regard to the performance of this function may be partly or wholly disregarded whenever there is sufficient reason to apprehend that the substituted organs cannot be antagonized with a view to the comminution of food without endangering the permanency and usefulness of the appliance by necessitating the application of forces unfavorably directed.

Investing, adjusting stays, soldering, and finishing.—Having arranged and antagonized the teeth as accurately as possible on the plaster model, the piece should be placed in the mouth to detect and remedy any faultiness that may be found to exist either in the adaptation, position, or antagonism of the artificial teeth. It is then removed and imbedded in a mixture of plaster, sand, and asbestos, in the proportion of about two parts of the former and one part each of the latter. The body of the investient may be surrounded by a copper or sheet-iron band to prevent the plaster from breaking away whilst adjusting the stays or linings to the teeth. All parts of the plate and teeth, except the lingual side of the former and the backs of the latter, should be encased in plaster to the depth of half an inch or more, and when the latter

is sufficiently hard, all traces of wax from the inside should be carefully detached with suitable instruments.

The piece is now ready for the adjustment of stays or backings, which, when permanently united by soldering to the base and teeth, are designed to sustain the latter in position. These supports are formed from plate somewhat thicker than that used for the base; a heavier and stronger stay being necessary when they are not united laterally, as when plate teeth are used. If, however, single gum or block teeth are employed, and the stays are joined, forming a continuous band, plate one-half thicker than that used for the base will, ordinarily, impart adequate security to the attachment. A plain strip, corresponding in width with the tooth to be lined, is cut, and the end resting on the main plate conformed accurately with the file to the irregularities on the surface of the latter, and in such a manner as to permit the strip to take the direction of the tooth. The general

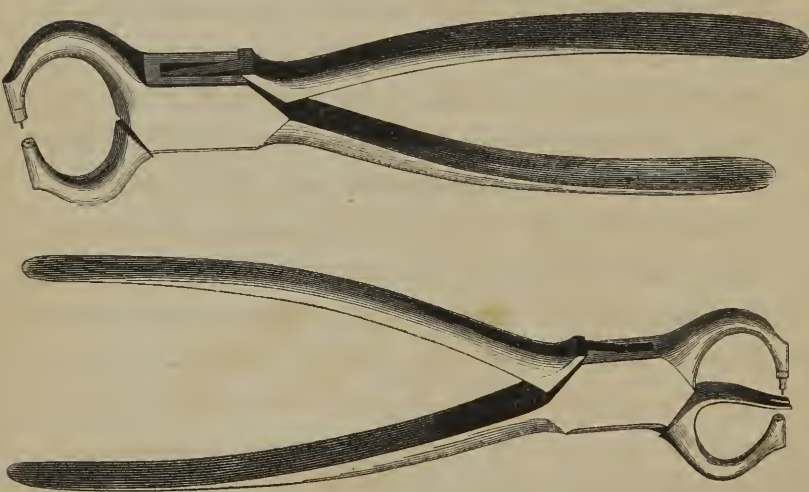
Fig. 61.



form of the stay may, in the first place, be obtained by cutting a strip from a piece of gold with a pair of plate forceps. (Fig. 61.) The points upon the stay to be

pierced for the admission of the platinum pins, may be ascertained by coating the surface of the former with wax softened in the flame of a spirit lamp, and pressing it first against the lower pin, the point of which will be indicated by an indentation of the wax. The backing is then perforated at this point with a plate punch, two forms of which are exhibited in Fig. 62, one armed with a tongue, which, when the plate is pierced, forces the latter from the punch. The strip is then reapplied to

FIG. 62.



the upper pin and the second hole obtained in like manner as the first. Instead of using wax, the ends of the rivets may be stained with some pigment, which will show the points to be pierced in the lining. The stay should be adapted accurately to the face of the tooth; it is then cut to the proper length, reaching nearly or quite to the point of the tooth, and then shaped with a file to

the general form of the crown. When the stays are to be united they should be formed with a shoulder at a point corresponding with the neck of the tooth, and the proximate edges below united closely by square edges, or the latter may be beveled and made to lap upon each other. The process of soldering will be greatly facilitated and the piece will be more easily and artistically finished, by securing, in the first instance, a perfect coaptation of all the parts which are ultimately to be united. The sides of the holes in the stays facing the plate should now be enlarged or counter-sunk with a spear-shaped or conical bur drill, and when applied to the teeth, the projecting ends of the platinum pins are cut off even with the backings and then split and spread apart with a small chisel-shaped instrument; a head will thus be formed to the rivets when solder is fused upon them, and which will prevent them from drawing from the linings. All the lines of union between the several pieces should next be well scraped, exposing a clean, bright metallic surface to the solder; the seams are then smeared with borax, ground or rubbed in clean, soft water to about the consistence of cream;* after which small pieces of solder are placed along the joints and over the points of the platinum pins. The piece thus prepared is now placed in the furnace or ordinary fireplace in order to heat the entire mass throughout prepa-

* Slate is often used for this purpose, but is unfit, as in rubbing the borax, loosened particles of the former become mixed with the latter and impede the flow of the solder, and becoming entangled, render it unclean and porous. Ground glass or a porcelain slab is the best for the purpose.

ratory to soldering. The fuel most proper for this purpose is charcoal, either alone or combined with coke; the latter being preferable for the reason that charcoal alone is more quickly consumed, and burning away more rapidly underneath, the piece is liable to drop to the bottom of the furnace. The fuel should be broken into small pieces and built up around the borders of the investient in order that all parts of the latter may be uniformly heated. The heating process should be conducted gradually, for if the piece to be soldered is subjected suddenly to a high heat, the plaster will be displaced by the too rapid evolution of vapor, and the integrity of the porcelain teeth will be endangered. The piece may be allowed to remain in the fire until the plate acquires a visible red heat, when it should be removed, placed on a suitable holder, and the solder fused with the blowpipe. A broad, spreading flame should first be thrown over the entire surface of the plate and border of the plaster until the temperature of the entire mass is nearly that required to fuse the solder, and which is indicated by the latter settling and contracting upon itself; the flame may then be concentrated upon a particular point, as at the heel of the plate on one side, passing round from tooth to tooth, until all parts are completely united and the solder is well and uniformly diffused.

Having united the teeth to the plate, the piece may be allowed to cool gradually, or it may be plunged after the lapse of a few minutes, into boiling water without risk of injury to the teeth. When cool, the plaster is

removed and the plate placed in a solution of equal parts of sulphuric acid and water, where it may be allowed to remain until the discoloration of the plate and the remains of the vitrified borax, incident to soldering, are removed; or it may be put into a small copper vessel, partly filled with the same solution and boiled for a few minutes. After removing the plate from the acid, it should be boiled for five or ten minutes in a solution of chloride of soda or common salt and water to remove thoroughly all traces of the former. Superfluous portions of solder are now to be removed, and this at first may be more quickly accomplished by the use of burs of various forms and sizes attached to a lathe. After the rougher and more redundant parts are thus cut away, any remaining irregularities upon the surface may be further reduced with properly formed files, scrapers and cutting instruments. Flat and half-round curved files, and

Fig. 63.

scrapers having a right and left curvature to their cutting edges, and chisel-shaped cutting instruments for paring or chipping away, (Fig. 63,) are the implements usually

employed for this purpose, and with which a comparatively smooth surface may be obtained; after which, the filed portions should be well rubbed with scotch stone until all traces of file-marks or other scratches are completely removed. With a rapidly revolving brush attached to a foot-lathe, the final polish or lustre may be imparted by the use first, of Spanish whiting, or prepared chalk, and then rouge mixed with water or alcohol.

The following method of finishing plate-work, communicated by Prof. T. L. Buckingham, embodies some practical suggestions in reference to this process: "The first step is to procure, and attach to the lathe, a three or four-pronged fork, or a screw such as is used for withdrawing a load from a gun; upon this a good smooth cork is fixed, and with a sharp knife, turned to any desired shape. The cork is saturated with water as well as it can be, and powdered pumice placed upon it. If we have been careful to remove all excess of solder from our work, which can easily be done by a bur attached to the lathe,—we can, with the cork and pumice, make a very smooth surface, and this can be still more perfectly accomplished by substituting a very finely powdered spar for the pumice, after we have removed the largest scratches with the latter. By continuing the cork for a little while after the above named powders have been used off, we avoid the use of the scotch stone; and finally we dispense with the burnisher, by taking a new cork with a piece of chamois or buck skin stretched upon it,

and going over the plate in the same manner as before, with the lathe revolving very rapidly.

"A higher color can be given to the plate by the use of the burnisher after the above proceeding, but we can certainly not produce a smoother surface.

"Some precaution is necessary by those who have never used the lathe in finishing the plate: in the first place the careless use of the bur, in removing the excess of solder, might result in the weakening of the piece by removing more than necessary, or, what would be still worse, holes might be cut entirely through the plate. Again, in polishing, if a little care is not taken, the fork or screw, whichever is used, may pass through the cork, and before the operator is aware, he will have inflicted an injury that will be difficult to repair. A small amount of experience—that which is essential in the proper performance of every nice operation—will enable almost any one, even those, to use a common expression, 'whose fingers are all thumbs,' to finish their work in about one-eighth of the time that the most expert workman would require for the accomplishment of the same by the old method."*

In the final adjustment of the finished piece to the mouth, and after any additional change in the form of the teeth necessary to secure the most perfect antagonism has been made, the patient should, in all cases of partial dentures, receive explicit directions in regard to the

* Dental Cosmos, vol. i. p. 350.

general care and management of the appliance and the remaining natural teeth. Ordinarily, there will be but little difficulty experienced by the patient in the immediate and successful use of a substitute supported in the mouth by clasps, or any equivalent means, but in the case of atmospheric pressure plates, the patient should be candidly advised of the probable want of stability incident to the first use of the appliance, and the consequent annoyance which, in many cases, follows its occasional displacement in mastication until such time as the adaptation of the several parts to each other are perfected, and the patient has acquired a habit of controlling and directing the forces applied to the substitute. The time necessary to accomplish these results will depend much upon the form and condition of the mouth, a favorable or unfavorable antagonism, the adaptation of the plate, and the aptitude and temper of the patient. It will be prudent and but just to the patient, to state, that the complete utility of an appliance sustained by atmospheric pressure, will not, probably, be realized in less time than from four to six weeks; and this estimate of time, in a majority of cases, will be fully justified by experience in the cases under consideration.

The importance of thorough and absolute cleanliness of the substitute and natural teeth, and the reasons therefor, should be clearly stated; and the comfort, utility, and durability of the artificial fixture, as well as the safety of all the remaining natural organs will de-

pend, in a great measure, upon the fidelity of the patient with respect to the observance of these injunctions. In those cases especially, where clasps are used, the substitute should invariably be removed after each meal and cleansed, while the teeth clasped, should, at the same time, be freed from deposits of food or other foreign substances with a brush, or any of the means usually recommended for the purpose.

CHAPTER XI.

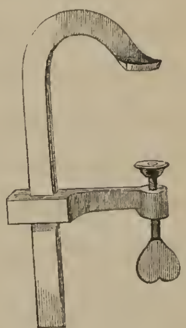
ENTIRE DENTURES.

Method of constructing a plate base for an entire denture for the upper jaw.—The general form and dimensions of the required base to be used as a support for a complete denture for the upper jaw may first be indicated by drawn lines upon the plaster model, and a sheet-lead pattern obtained from this to serve as a guide in securing the form of the plate to be swaged. Whenever the substitute for the upper jaw is designed to be retained *in situ* by the external pressure of the atmosphere, and especially where a central air chamber is employed, the plate should be made sufficiently ample in its dimensions to cover all of the hard palate, the alveolar ridge, and all portions of the external borders of the latter not directly encroached upon by the muscles and reflected portions of the mucous membrane of the lips and cheeks.

Before swaging, the plate should be well annealed, and its central portion brought as nearly as possible to the form of the palatal face of the die with the mallet, forcing the heel of the plate down in advance of the portion covering the more anterior concavity of the arch, preventing thereby a doubling of the posterior edge of the plate upon itself. This central portion may also be

forced more perfectly into adaptation with a partial counter before swaging in the ordinary manner, and this is advisable in all cases when the palatal arch is very deep; but as this is very liable to be drawn from the arch in the process of turning the borders of the plate over upon the ridge, a useful contrivance has been invented by Dr. Rurras, of New York, to prevent the displacement. Fig. 64 shows the form of this instrument. The die and plate are placed near the edge of the bench, and the upper part of the clamp adjusted over the central portion of the plate; the two pieces are then bound firmly to the bench by tightening the screw underneath. A protective piece of buckskin, cloth, or paper, should be placed between the plate and clamp to prevent the former from being bruised or indented. The margins of the plate are now turned over upon the ridge, and if the external borders of the latter are undercut or stand even vertically, the edges of the former will tend to double upon themselves at such points, and hence it will be necessary, before swaging, to split the plate in front, and, in some cases, on each side, and wherever divided, a V-shaped piece may be cut out of sufficient width to allow the divided edges to overlap slightly when approximated in the process of swaging. The proximate edges of the divided sections should be filed to a thin edge before

Fig. 64.



swaging, so that when brought together and soldered, there will be but little additional thickness of the plate at such points. The cut portions should not be soldered until after partial or complete swaging.

Having conformed the plate as nearly as practicable to the die with the mallet and pliers (Fig. 65,) or with plate

Fig. 65.

Fig. 66.

forceps constructed for the purpose, (Fig. 66,) it should be placed between the die and counter, and the latter forced together with a heavy hammer until a tolerably accurate coaptation of the plate is obtained, the latter being frequently annealed during the process of stamping, to render it more pliable. At first, considerable yield-

ing and consequent deformity of the counter-die will occur; hence, after partial swaging, another should be substituted and the process continued until the greatest possible accuracy of adaptation is secured. If the face of the die is marked by prominent and sharply defined ruga, or other irregularities, such points will, to some extent, be bruised or flattened; it will therefore be expedient, in such cases, and better perhaps in all, to finish the swaging with a new and unused die and counter, in which case, two or three moderate, steady, and well-directed blows of the hammer will be sufficient.

If the plate is brought into uniform contact with all parts of the face of the die, this conformity is the only reliable test of its adaptation out of the mouth. In no case will the swaged plate fit the plaster model perfectly, inasmuch as the unavoidable contraction of the die, however slight, will, especially in deep-arched mouths, cause the plate to bind on the posterior and external borders of the ridge, preventing it from touching the floor of the palate; while the bruising, though inconsiderable, of the more prominent points upon the die, and a corresponding flattening of the plate at such points, will prevent uniform contact of the latter with the unchanged surface of the plaster model.

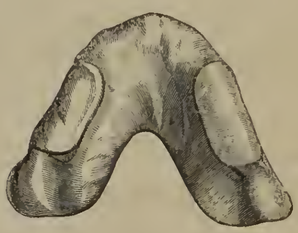
After final swaging, the plate should be again annealed with a heat nearly or quite equal to that which will be ultimately required in soldering; after this any additional swaging should be avoided, unless the plate warps in the

heat and which may be determined by applying it to the die ; if any change has occurred, it should be re-swaged and again annealed at a high heat, and the operation should be repeated, if necessary, until the plate retains its integrity of form after the last annealing. This process of final heating does not apply to silver if in the form of a swaged plate, as this metal invariably suffers some change of form when subjected to an annealing heat.

Modifications in the form of plates for entire upper dentures.—Whenever a central air chamber is employed, it may be constructed in either of the ways described when treating of partial atmospheric pressure plates. The general form of a plate for an entire upper denture, with a central chamber, is exhibited in Fig. 67, other

Fig. 67.

Fig. 68.



modifications in the form of cavity plates for full upper sets are in limited use, as where chambers are arranged one on each side of the sloping walls of the palate, or directly over that portion of the ridge previously occupied by the anterior molar and the bicuspids on each side, as seen in Fig. 68, called "Lateral Cavity Plates." Dr. M.

Levett, of New York, has recently introduced another modification of cavity plate, consisting of a number of small air chambers arranged directly over the ridge and placed at short intervals throughout the entire border. It is claimed that plates constructed in either of the ways last mentioned cohere with equal firmness to the jaw and are less liable to "rock" in the mouth than when formed with a central chamber. Whatever their general utility may be, cases doubtless occur where they may be advantageously employed, as when any great inequality exists in the hardness of the ridge and palate, and a plate constructed in the ordinary manner is dislodged by "riding" upon the hard palate when forces are applied to the ridge on either side.

It has been recommended, after having constructed a base of the form represented in Fig. 67, to cut through the plate immediately in front of the central chamber, making an opening of a semi-lunar form. It is claimed that, by the more ready application of the tongue to this part, the air contained in the chamber, when the plate is applied to the mouth, may be more easily and thoroughly exhausted. There is great danger, however, of the soft tissues being drawn into the opening, in which case it can scarcely fail to produce injury of the parts implicated; the expedient, therefore is seldom resorted to.

There is still another form of cavity plate known as Cleaveland's modification of air-chamber, and which is constructed in the following manner: A plate like that

exhibited in Fig. 67 is first struck up and the chamber cut out. A thin sheet of wax or a layer of plaster is then placed upon the lingual side of the plate extending from two to three or four lines from the edges of the orifice in the main plate; a thin, retreating edge is given to the wax or plaster at the outer borders, making it continuous with the surface of the plate. The plate with the wax attached may now either be tacked to the model with softened wax along its outer borders, and shaped in such a way as to permit the model and plate to be withdrawn from the sand, and a mold of the parts taken in the ordinary way, and from this a die and counter; or an impression in wax or plaster may be taken of the lingual face of the plate and wax, and afterward a model, die, and counter. With the latter, a second plate covering nearly or quite all of the palatal concavity is swaged, and when this is applied to the main plate over the cut chamber and united by soldering, a space, equal to the thickness of the wax or plaster placed on the primary plate, will be found to exist between the two lamina

Fig. 69.

Fig. 69 exhibits a transverse section of the two plates, disclosing the space between them, and also the opening through the gum plate into the cavity. Before soldering on the duplicate plate, a half-round wire should be soldered around the opening in the palatal plate on its lingual side, to protect

the soft tissues of the mouth from injury when drawn in as the air is exhausted from the chamber; or, what is preferable, this form of cavity may be converted, practically, into what is known as "Gilbert's chamber," (which is the central swaged chamber before described,) by filling in the space between the two plates with some impervious substance, as Hill's filling, or an amalgam of gold, the excess of mercury being driven off by heat. In the construction of continuous gum work, the interspace may be filled in with gum body. The advantages of these double plates are, a greatly increased strength imparted to the base, a diminished liability of warping in the process of soldering, a smoother surface presented to the tongue, and a more decidedly angular form of the chamber.

In whatever way the plate is formed, a notch or fissure of sufficient depth to receive and permit an unobstructed play of the frænum of the lip should be formed in the front part of the plate, while the borders of the latter nearly opposite the anterior molars on each side should be narrowed to prevent undue contact of its edges with the folds of mucous membrane stretching obliquely across from the cheeks to the jaw. Care should also be taken to trim away from the heel of the plate any portions that might otherwise encroach upon the soft palate.

It is only in the fewest number of cases that a rim can be swaged to form a groove or socket properly situated for the reception of the plate extremities of either

single gum or block teeth, as it will usually be found impracticable to adjust the gum extremities to the socket thus formed without necessitating, in some degree, a departure from a just arrangement and antagonism of the teeth. Whenever it is thought best, therefore, to rim the plate, it will generally be necessary to adjust and solder a separate strip to the plate along the plate ends of the teeth after the arrangement of the latter on the base is completed.

After the plate has been worked as nearly as possible into the required form it should be applied to the mouth of the patient to ascertain the correctness of its adaptation to the parts before proceeding further with the operation. If the adaptation is found imperfect, the fault lies either in the impression, or in undue contraction of the die. In the former case, another impression should be taken and the plate re-swaged; in the latter, a less contractile metal or compound should be employed in the formation of the die. To determine the practical efficiency of the adaptation and adherence of an atmospheric pressure plate, various tests may be applied. The coaptation of its borders to the external walls of the ridge may be ascertained by inspection, and the patient's sense of contact or non-contact of its central portion with the floor of the palate may, in some degree, be relied on as evidence of the accuracy of its adjustment to parts not visible. The tenacity with which the plate adheres on the application of direct traction, cannot always be

relied upon, inasmuch as a well fitting plate will sometimes be readily dislodged in this manner, while, on the contrary, one but illy adapted to the parts may require considerable force to separate it from the jaw when acted on in the same way. The most trustworthy test of actual or practical stability is firm pressure applied alternately over the ridge on each side and in front. If the plate maintains its position and remains fixed under repeated trials of pressure applied in the manner indicated, the adaptation may be safely relied on; if it slides upon the palate or is easily disengaged from the mouth, the instability of the plate may be referred in many cases, not to a want of coaptation, but to a want of uniformity in the condition of the parts on which the plate rests. Thus, for example, if the ridge along the mesial line of the palatal vault is more than usually prominent and incompressible, and the alveolar ridge relatively soft and yielding, the plate, meeting with a fixed point of resistance at the floor of the palate, will prevent the ridge from being sufficiently compressed when the atmosphere is exhausted from underneath the plate; and hence, when forcible pressure is made on one side over the ridge, the plate, riding upon the resistant surface in the arch, will be thrown off from the opposite side. Whenever, therefore, the conditions alluded to prevail to any considerable extent, a perfect coaptation of the plate to the parts, instead of favoring the retention of the former, will impair its stability for all practi-

cal purposes. The remedy is found in so constructing the plate that, when adjusted to the mouth, and before the air is exhausted, a greater or less space will exist between the central portion of the plate and palate, but which, when a vacuum is formed, will be carried up into contact with the roof of the mouth, and at the same time compress the ridge sufficiently to afford a firm and resisting basis for the plate in mastication. This peculiar adaptation of the plate may be obtained by adjusting a piece of sheet-lead or wax plate over the central ridge on the plaster model, by means of which the corresponding portion of the plate, when swaged with a die obtained from the model so prepared, will be thrown far enough from the roof of the mouth to answer the purpose before indicated. This will be more particularly necessary in shallow arches; while, if the arch is very deep, or even moderately so, the unavoidable contraction of the die may render the expedient unnecessary.

Method of constructing a plate base for an entire denture for the under jaw.—Aside from the differences in the form of the plate, and the manipulations incident thereto, the process of constructing a plate for the under jaw does not differ essentially from that already described in connection with full upper dentures.

If the lower plate is constructed from a single lamina of gold, or other metal, it should be somewhat thicker than that used in upper cases, and should also be of finer quality, as the additional thickness of the plate and

the peculiar form of the inferior maxilla, renders a greater degree of pliancy necessary in swaging it to the form of the ridge. The general form of a base for an entire lower denture is exhibited in Fig. 70. The internal border of the plate should usually be doubled,—either by turning the edge over in swaging, or by soldering on a narrow strip of plate or half-round wire.

Fig. 70.

A more perfect adaptation of the plate to the ridge may be obtained by the use of a double, instead of a single plate; in which case a thin basement plate, not exceeding No 30 of the gauge, should be swaged to the form of the ridge in the first instance, and then a duplicate plate, swaging the two together and uniting them to each other with solder. A plate of the specified thickness may be very readily and accurately conformed to any irregularities in the ridge, and when the two are united, the base will be heavier and stronger than a single lamina of the ordinary thickness. Instead, however, of doubling the entire plate, it will be sufficient, in most cases, to adapt the second plate only to the lingual surface of the first, extending it up from the lower edge to a point corresponding as nearly as possible with the posterior portions of the base of the teeth when the latter are adjusted to the plate, (Fig. 71.) A moderately thin plate may, in this manner, be used for the primary base, while the duplicate band will impart the requisite strength to the

Fig. 71

plate, and, at the same time, obviate the necessity of wiring its inner edges. In adapting either of the last named methods, the plates, after they are united to each other, should be again swaged to correct any change of form incident to the use of solder.

Antagonizing model for an entire upper and lower denture.—Either of the following methods may be adopted in securing an antagonizing model for complete dentures:

1. Attach to the ridge of each plate a roll or strip of adhesive wax corresponding in width to the length of the teeth which will be required for each plate respectively; place the plates, with the wax attached, in the mouth, and trim away from the proximate edges of the wax until the two sections close upon each other uniformly throughout the circle; then cut away from the labial surfaces of the rims of wax, above and below, until the proper fullness and required contour of the parts associated with the lips and mouth are secured. The approximation of the two jaws, when the finished substitutes are ultimately adjusted to the mouth, will depend altogether upon the aggregate width given to the two sections of wax at this stage of the operation, and it is, therefore, important that the "bite" or closure of the jaws secured at this time should be such as will most

perfectly fulfill the requirements of the case in respect to the utility and comfort of the appliance, and the proper restoration of the required facial proportions. If there is any considerable change produced in the relation of the jaws habitual to them prior to the loss of the natural teeth, the characteristic expression of the individual will, in some degree, be changed or marred; an unaccustomed and restrained action will be imposed upon the muscles concerned in the movements of the lower jaw, which will render the use of the appliances at least temporarily, if not permanently, uncomfortable and fatiguing, or even painful; while the utility of the fixtures may be impaired or wholly destroyed, by compelling a particular application of forces in mastication inconsistent with their stability in the mouth. No specific directions, of course, can be given that will apply to all cases, but it may be observed that, ordinarily, the two sections of wax should be cut away from their approximating surfaces until the jaws close sufficiently to permit the edges of the lips to rest easily and naturally upon each other when in a relaxed condition, or the upper rim may extend somewhat below the margin of the upper lip, while the lower section of the wax is cut away on a level with the lower lip, or a little below it. Cases occur, however, where a greater exposure of the upper portion of wax, even though quite narrow, will be required; as where the alveolar ridge is very deep, and the lip covering it either absolutely or relatively short,

or where the latter is retracted, exposing, even when in a state of repose, a greater portion or all of the crowns of the teeth, and in extreme cases, the margins of the gum. Between the latter extreme, and an inordinate extension of the upper lip below the ridge, all intermediate conditions occur, and the practitioner, aiming to produce an agreeable, harmonious, and truthful expression of all the parts, must rely wholly upon his judgment in reference to the necessary approximation of the jaws, the restoration of the natural fullness and contour of the mouth, and the relative length to be given to the upper and lower teeth.

Patients, when requested to close the mouth *naturally*, are very liable to *project* the under jaw; hence it is well to have them open and close the jaws frequently, observing, at the same time, if the separate portions of wax meet in precisely the same manner at each occlusion. If the bite varies at every approximation of the jaws, the patient should be directed to relax and abandon for the moment all control over, the the muscles of the lower jaw; the operator should then grasp the chin and press the jaw first directly backward and then upward until the opposing surfaces of the wax meet; in which position it should be steadily held by the patient until the two portions of wax are attached to each other in that particular relation. The latter may be done by drawing lines vertically across the rims of wax at various points which will serve to indicate their relation to each

other when out of the mouth; or a heated knife-blade may be passed between the two sections, the melted wax temporarily uniting them. A very convenient and secure method is to attach them together by means of two strips of metal bent in the form of a staple; these may be warmed in a spirit-flame, and pressed into the wax, one on each side—one end penetrating the upper rim of wax, the other the lower. Before removing the plates, the mesial line of the mouth should be indicated upon the wax by drawing a line vertically across the latter in front to serve as a guide in the arrangement of the central incisors.

2. Another method is to attach to either the upper or lower plate a single rim of wax somewhat wider than will be required for both the upper and lower teeth. The plates are then placed in the mouth, and the jaws brought together, imbedding the opposite plate in the wax. When this method is adopted, the proper closure of the jaws is best determined by a gauge or guide consisting of a strip of plate or other substance encased in the wax and interposed edgewise between the borders of the two plates in front, in such a manner that when the latter are approximated they will close upon the guide, the desired relation of the jaws to each other having been previously ascertained by trial of the guide with the plates in the mouth before adjusting the wax. The exterior surface of the wax rim is then trimmed away, or additional portions added to it, until the proper

fullness and contour are given to the lips; after which the median line of the mouth should be traced upon the wax in front, as before described.

The plates, attached to each other in either of the ways mentioned, having been removed from the mouth, a batter of plaster may be poured upon a piece of paper or other substance, forming a layer a fourth or a half an inch thick and two or three inches long, when the under surface of the lower plate may be imbedded in one end of the plaster, and the remaining portion of the latter projecting from the heel of the plate trimmed and formed for articulating with the second piece of the antagonizing model in the same manner as described when considering partial dentures. The entrance to the cavity between the two plates is now closed up with a sheet of softened wax or otherwise, and the whole surrounded by a piece of oil-cloth, wax, or other substance, and the second part of the model obtained by pouring plaster in upon the exposed surface of the upper plate and the plaster posteriorly to the depth of half an inch or more. When the plaster is sufficiently condensed, the line across the wax in front should be extended in a direct line across the borders of the plaster model above and below, as, in arranging the teeth, the wax will be cut away, and without this precaution the mesial point of the mouth may be lost. The form

Fig. 72.

of an antagonizing model for an entire upper and lower denture, with the plates and wax attached, the latter being cut away somewhat preparatory to adjusting the teeth, is shown in Fig. 72.

An antagonizing frame, (Fig. 73,) has been contrived

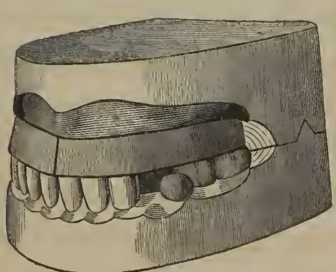
Fig. 73.

and may be substituted for the model just described. The lower part of the frame may be placed on the table, and plaster filled into the lower ring, into which the under plate is imbedded; the upper ring is depressed as far as its articulation with the curved shaft, with which it is connected by a movable joint, will permit, and then united to the upper plate by pouring plaster upon the upper and exposed surface of the latter, and building it up around the ring.

Antagonizing model for an entire upper denture with the natural teeth of the lower jaw remaining.—In forming an antagonizing model to be used as a guide in arranging and articulating a full upper denture where all

or a part of the natural organs of the inferior jaw are remaining, a rim of wax should first be adjusted to the borders of the plate, one or two lines wider than the required length of the artificial teeth. When placed in the mouth, the exterior surface of the wax draft should be cut away or added to, until the proper fullness of the parts is restored. The patient should then close the lower teeth against the wax, imbedding them just sufficiently to indicate the cutting edges and grinding surfaces of the opposing teeth. If a fuller impression of the exterior faces of the lower teeth are required, it may be obtained by pressing in a small strip of softened wax against them and the lower edge of the rim of wax upon the plate; or the projecting borders of the latter may be forced down upon the crowns with the fingers. The median line of the mouth is then indicated upon the wax, the plate removed, and its palatal surface imbedded in one end of a layer of plaster spread upon a strip of paper; the portion of plaster extending from the heel of the plate trimmed, grooved, varnished, and oiled; the entire piece enclosed, and plaster poured in upon the exposed surfaces of the wax and plaster to the depth of one-fourth or one half of an inch. The two sections of the model with the plate and wax

Fig. 74.



attached, the latter being cut away somewhat to receive the porcelain teeth, is exhibited in Fig. 74.

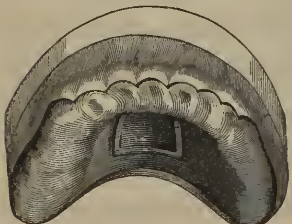
Selecting, arranging, and antagonizing the teeth; rimming the plate; attaching spiral springs; investing, lining, soldering, and finishing.—In *selecting* teeth for an entire upper and lower denture, the special requirements in respect to size, form, and color, will depend, in a great measure, upon the complexion, age, sex, general configuration of the face, &c., of the patient. Every separate denture, therefore, that is constructed in strict conformity with a faithful interpretation of the special requirements of each individual case, will be characterized by shades of differences in the color, form, size, and arrangement of the teeth of replacement. It will be sufficient in this connection to observe that such selection of the teeth should be made as will most perfectly reproduce the lost proportions of the facial contour, and impart to the individual a natural, harmonious, and agreeable expression.

In *arranging* or adjusting single gum teeth to the plate in those cases where the changes in the form of the alveolar ridge, consequent on absorption, are completed, the portions applied to the base should be ground away sufficiently to restore the required fullness of the parts and to give proper length and inclination to the teeth. The coaptation of the ground surfaces to the base should be accurate enough to exclude perfectly particles of food, and to furnish such a basis to each

tooth as will provide most effectually against fracture when acted upon by the forces applied to them in the mouth. The gum extremities of the teeth should also be accurately united to each other laterally by grinding carefully from their proximate edges until the joints or seams will be rendered incapable of ready detection in the mouth,—care being taken that this coaptation of the adjoining surfaces is uniform, for if confined to the outer edge alone, portions of the gum enamel may be broken away in the process of soldering.

In the construction of substitutes designed to fulfill only a temporary purpose, and where the alveolar processes remain in a great measure unabsorbed, and plain teeth (those representing but the crowns of the natural organs,) are used, but little skill will ordinarily be required in adjusting and fitting them to the base. If the ridge in front is prominent and but inadequately concealed by the lip, as where the teeth have been but recently extracted, all those portions of the border of the plate in front anterior to the first or second bicuspid on each side may be cut away on a line a little within the required circle of the anterior teeth, and scolloped, (Fig. 75.) permitting the anterior cervical portions of the artificial incisors and canines, and, in some cases, the anterior bicuspids, to overlap the edge of the plate and rest directly

Fig. 75.



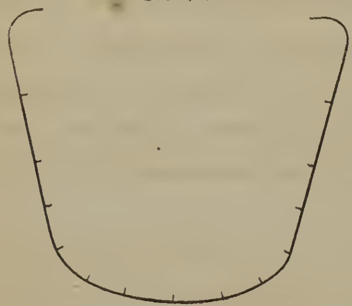
upon the gum in front. This abridgment of the plate will not ordinarily materially affect the adhesion or stability of the substitute.

There are cases of a mixed character that render it more difficult to affect an harmonious and symmetrical arrangement of the teeth, as where a limited number of the natural teeth at intervals have been long absent and the excavations in the ridge consequent on absorption alternate with other points upon the ridge in a comparatively unchanged condition. To give uniformity to the denture by restoring perfectly the required circle of the arch in such cases will necessitate the employment of plain and single gum teeth conjointly. Whenever necessary, those portions of the base occupied by the plate teeth may be cut away in such a manner as to permit the latter to be adjusted directly to the unabsorbed gum as before described.

In the process of grinding the teeth to the base, above and below, the operator should commence by first arranging the superior central incisors and then the lower, and so passing back from tooth to tooth, grind and adjust an upper and lower tooth alternately, keeping the upper ones in advance of those of the lower jaw. The central incisors above, should be placed parallel with each other, but the cutting edges of the laterals, and the points of the canines should incline slightly toward the median line of the mouth. In arranging the teeth of the upper jaw, the anterior six may be made to describe, with more

or less exactness, the segment of a circle, but a somewhat abrupt angle may be given to the arch on each side by placing the first bicuspids within the circle in such a way that, when standing directly in front of the patient and looking into the mouth, only a narrow line of the exterior face of the crowns of these teeth will be seen, while the remaining teeth posterior to them, should be arranged nearly on a straight line, diverging as they pass backward. When arranged in the manner described, the peripheral outline of the arch will exhibit somewhat the form presented in the above diagram, (Fig. 76.)

Fig. 76.



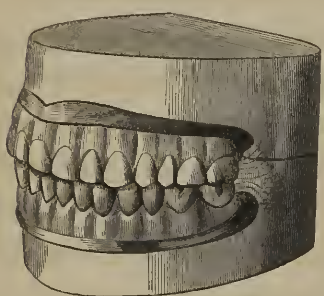
In regard to the practical efficiency of an upper denture retained in the mouth by atmospheric pressure, it is important that the teeth engaged in the comminution of food as the bicuspids and molars, should occupy a position directly over the central line of the ridge, and should either be arranged vertically or with a slight inclination toward the centre of the mouth. The liability to displacement of the substitute in mastication will thus be greatly diminished, whereas, if placed outside of the line indicated, and especially with a diverging inclination, the stability of the appliance will be endangered, and the function of mastication impeded, notwithstand-

ing other conditions necessary to complete success have been fully secured. In arranging the upper and posterior teeth as described, it will sometimes be necessary to give to the opposing under teeth a decided inward inclination in order to effect a satisfactory antagonism of the teeth; and cases occur where a practical articulation cannot be secured without departing, in some degree, from the arrangement of the upper teeth spoken of,—as where a great disparity exists between the posterior transverse diameters of the two jaws, a medium sized, or even small, arch above being associated with an expanded ridge below.

In articulating the upper and lower teeth, the closure or relation of the natural organs should be imitated as nearly as the other essential requirements of the case will admit of. Hence the upper front teeth, describing the segment of a larger circle than the corresponding teeth of the lower jaw, will project beyond and overlap slightly the cutting edges of the latter; and having a greater width of crown, they will extend latterly beyond the opposing teeth, covering one-third of the crowns of those next adjoining, so that when the canines of the upper jaw are reached they will close between the lower canines and first bicuspids; and, passing back, the anterior superior bicuspids between the first and second bicuspids below; the posterior bicuspids above between the second inferior bicuspids and anterior molars; the first superior molars between the first and second molars

below; while the anterior half of the posterior molars above will close upon the posterior half of the inferior second molars, the remaining posterior half of the second molars above extending posteriorly beyond those of the lower jaw. The outer cusps of the superior bicuspids and molars will overlap those of the inferior teeth; while the inner cusps of the teeth of the superior jaw will pass into the depressions in the lower teeth formed by the internal and external cusps, and the external cusps of the inferior teeth will, in like manner, be received into the corresponding excavations of the upper teeth. The relative position and antagonism of the teeth as they appear in a regularly arranged denture for both jaws, are shown in Fig. 77. An abnormal relation of the jaws, as where undue projection, absolutely or relatively, of either maxilla exists, or where the lower jaw closes on one side or other of the upper, will frequently compel a departure from the ordinary arrangement of the artificial organs, the extent of which must be determined by the necessities of each individual case.

Fig. 77.



In selecting teeth for a full upper denture in those cases where natural teeth are remaining below, or *vice versa*, the color, size, and form of the latter, will serve as a guide in the choice of teeth appropriate for the op-

posite jaw. In fitting and arranging the teeth upon the base, and in antagonizing them with the opposing natural teeth, the same general principles apply as those already adverted to in connection with full upper and lower dentures.

Having adjusted the teeth to the base, they should be placed in the mouth before uniting them permanently to the plate, to detect and remedy any error of arrangement either in respect to prominence, position, inclination, length, or antagonism.

Forming a rim to the plate.—If the case is one where single gum or block teeth are employed, and it is intended to form a socket or groove upon the borders of the plate for the reception of the plate extremities of the teeth, the rim forming the groove should be fitted and soldered to the base before investing the piece in plaster. If the alveolar ridge above is shallow, and but imperfectly concealed by the lip, a rim to the plate will be inadmissible, as, when the mouth is opened and the lip retracted, as in laughing, the metallic band will be exposed to view. A rim may be fitted and attached to the base in either of the following ways:

1. A strip of plate from one to two lines in width is adjusted to the plate with one edge resting on the uncovered border of the plate close to the gum extremities of the teeth, and the other overlapping and embracing the latter. The rim may consist of one entire strip extending from heel to heel of the plate and passing round

the posterior molars to unite with the stays; but it may be more conveniently adjusted by employing two pieces, extending from each heel of the plate, and uniting in front.

2. A half-round wire with the edge beveled where it joins the ends of the teeth, forming a narrow groove, may, in like manner, be fitted to the plate, furnishing a shallow bed for the gum extremities of the teeth. A narrow strip of plate about the thickness of heavy clasp material may be substituted for the half-round wire. In either case, the better plan is first to trace the outlines of the gum portions of the teeth upon the plate with a sharp instrument; remove the wax and teeth from the plate; draw another line a little within the first all round, and solder the rim to the line last drawn; remove the teeth from the wax, and re-adjust the latter in its proper place upon the plate; then fit each tooth separately to the rim by grinding away sufficiently from the end of the tooth to effect an accurate adjustment of it to the socket. The ends of the teeth may be ground away to the rim until the platinum pins freely re-enter the rivet holes in the wax, thus restoring them to their proper position in relation to the base.

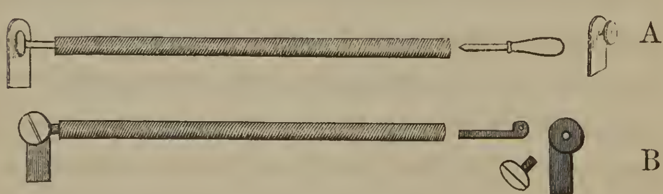
3. Another method of forming a rim consists in swaging a strip of plate accurately to the form of the parts to which it is applied. An impression in wax or plaster is first taken of the gum surfaces of the teeth and exposed border of the plate; but as it will be impossible to detach

either wax or plaster in perfect condition, when encircling the entire arch, or to swage perfectly with a die so unfavorably formed for stamping, separate impressions of the two lateral halves of the piece should be taken,—from these plaster models; and from the latter, dies and counters;—with these two strips of plate of sufficient width are swaged, each extending from the heel of the plate to a little beyond the median line in front, overlapping slightly at the latter point. The portions of the swaged strips embracing the plate ends of the teeth are then trimmed to the proper width, and scalloped, if desired in correspondence with the festoons of the artificial gums. An upper denture rimmed in the manner last described, is exhibited in Fig. 78. In whatever way the rim is formed, when it has been fitted to the plate and teeth, it may be held temporarily in place with clamps adjusted at two or three points around the plate, and then transferred to a piece of charcoal, and secured by first tacking it at two or three points with solder. The groove may then be filled with whiting mixed with water or alcohol to prevent the solder from flowing in and filling it up; after which small pieces of solder are placed along the line of union next the edge of the plate, and the rim permanently united throughout with the blowpipe; after which the wax and teeth are re-applied to the plate.

FIG. 78.

Constructing and attaching spiral springs.—The success which has been attained in the use of atmospheric pressure plates has almost entirely superseded the necessity of employing spiral springs as a means of support; nor should the latter be resorted to except under circumstances that preclude the use of the former. When applied, they should be attached to the base on each side between the posterior bicuspid and first molar below, and opposite the posterior bicuspid above. To the border of the plate near the base of the teeth a narrow strip of plate is soldered extending up and lying closely against the side of the latter—to the end of which near the grinding surfaces of the teeth is adjusted a small circular cap of gold connected with the standard by a small wire on which the looped extremity of the spring plays. To each end of the spring is attached a gold wire doubled upon itself in such a way as to form a loop, the closed ends being soldered together and filed to enter the hollow in the wire, A, Fig. 79. B, Fig. 79, copied from Prof. Harris'

Fig. 79.



work on Dental Surgery, represents another method of attaching springs, but the former is more readily con-

structed and will answer every practical purpose. Fig. 80, exhibits the application of springs to an upper and lower denture.

Fig. 80.

Investing, lining, soldering, and finishing the plate.—The plate, with the wax and teeth in place, is next encased in a mixture of plaster preparatory to lining the teeth and uniting them with solder to the base. For this purpose, plaster and sand may be employed, using as little of the former as will serve to hold the investment together during the subsequent manipulations. Asbestos may be added, and is a useful ingredient. Burnt plaster, or that which has been previously used for investing, may be substituted for the sand and asbestos, adding a sufficient quantity of unused plaster to effect consolidation. Either of the combinations mentioned will suffer but little change in the fire, if properly managed. It is customary to encase the piece in the plaster mixture to the depth of from one-half to three-fourths of an inch, leaving only the lingual surfaces of the plate and teeth uncovered. However comparatively free from change of form the best combinations of plaster may be, yet some slight contraction of the body of the investient doubtless ensues on the application of heat, and it is probable that so large and resistant a mass must tend, in some degree, to produce deformity of the plate in soldering; for, as the

investient contracts and the plate at the same time expands when heated, a change in the form of the latter must occur whenever the force exerted by the shrinking plaster exceeds the expansive force of the metal; and when the peculiar form of the upper plate is considered we can readily conceive how a slight contraction of the plaster of the thickness mentioned may "warp" or "spring" the plate when its uniform linear expansion and contraction is so effectively opposed. The change in the form of the base from this cause will, according to the author's observations, be found, in an upper plate, to exist on each side of the sloping walls of the palate, embracing the posterior half or two-thirds of the plate at these points,—the change manifesting itself in an inward displacement of the lateral walls of the plate midway between the summit of the palatal arch and the most depending portion of the ridge. We would suggest in explanation of this result that, as the plaster contracts with sufficient force to carry the plate with it, the sides of the latter are approximated, while the palatal portion is, at the same time, lifted up. Now it seems plain that inasmuch as the portions of plate overlapping the ridge is encased in and embraced by the plaster, and as the palatal portion is arched in form with its convexity presenting to the plaster and therefore self-sustaining in respect to its own peculiar form, the special configuration of these parts cannot suffer any appreciable change; but as they are forced toward the common centre of the

mass, their *relation* to each other is alone changed, and this changed relation must necessarily eventuate in a deformity of those parts of the plate which offer the least resistance to the contractile force of the plaster. In obedience to this necessity, the sides of the plate along the sloping walls of the palate, which from their form are neither resistant or self-sustaining under pressure, and whose inward displacement is unopposed by any counter-force, is projected in toward the centre of the palatal excavation in proportion as the borders and central portions are approximated, or converge in the direction of the centre of the piece. The practical effect of this approximation of the lateral and posterior borders, and internal displacement of the plate, is to make the latter "bind" upon the outer and posterior borders of the alveolar ridge, and to throw the central portion of the plate from the roof of the mouth. To obviate, as far as practicable, any change in the form of the plate which may result from the contraction of the plaster investient, various expedients have been suggested, but the following will sufficiently counteract the influence of the plaster by permitting an unobstructed expansion and contraction of the metallic base. Take a band of tolerably thick copper plate as wide as the plate and teeth are deep; bend it to the form of the plate, but large enough to leave a space of nearly half an inch between it and the teeth, the ends being united to each other back of the plate by riveting or otherwise. Holes are then made in the band

at numerous points throughout its extent, through which wire is introduced and interlaced on the inside in such a way as to form loops,—the latter extending in to within a short distance of the teeth. The plaster is then filled into the space between the band and teeth even with the cutting and grinding surfaces of the latter; the palatal surface of the plate is also covered with plaster and may be connected with the outer portion by a very thin layer at the edge of the plate, or the two may be entirely disconnected. The expansion of copper being very nearly that of gold, the body of the plaster, when heat is applied, will be carried in advance of the borders of the plate as the latter expands, while the thin portion of plaster at the edges of the plate will allow the central portion of the latter to expand with but little or no interruption. On cooling, the entire mass will contract together and assume its original form, unless warping is induced by other agencies acting independently of the enveloping plaster, as excess or unequal distribution of solder, irregular heating, &c.

It is not, ordinarily, necessary to provide by any special expedient against warping of the lower plate, as any slight change of form consequent on contraction will not materially effect its adaptation to the lower jaw,—its only effect being to impart to the substitute a slight lateral play upon the ridge. The plaster on the inside of the lower piece may be cut away to the edge of the plate, while that external to the teeth should not be

added in greater quantities than is barely sufficient to hold the latter in place whilst lining and soldering them to the base.

The plate being properly invested, all portions of the wax attached to the inner surface of the teeth and plate should be thoroughly removed with suitable instruments; after which, stays are to be adjusted to the teeth. In reference to the method of forming and adjusting stays, little need be added to what has already been said when treating of partial dentures. One method not there specified, consists in first fitting to each tooth separately, in the usual manner, a thin stay formed of platinum, which is temporarily fastened to the tooth by splitting and spreading apart the ends of the rivets with a small chisel-shaped instrument. The teeth are then removed from the investient and partially imbedded side by side in plaster, the platinum strips remaining uncovered. The plaster and teeth may then be raised to a full red heat with a blowpipe or by placing them in the furnace. Small pieces of gold plate, of equal fineness with the base, are then placed upon the surfaces of the platinum stays and thoroughly fused with the blowpipe until they flow perfectly in around the rivets, and uniformly over the surface of the linings. If sufficient heat is applied, the solder will insinuate itself between the stay and tooth, and thus render the coaptation of the two perfect. Small pieces of gold plate should be added until sufficient thickness is imparted to the linings. The backings are

then trimmed smoothly and burnished, when they may be placed back in the investment in their appropriate places. The linings which support the teeth may be united to each other laterally in sections or continuously. When the teeth are joined to each other throughout, a very small quantity of solder will be sufficient to support the teeth, provided it is well diffused along the joints uniting them perfectly at all points.

The process of preparatory heating, soldering, pickling and finishing the plate, is the same in all respects as that described when treating of partial pieces, and need not, therefore, be recapitulated.

In the final adjustment of the finished pieces to the mouth, and after any additional grinding of the masticating surfaces of the teeth necessary to perfect the antagonism has been performed, such instructions should be given to the patient in regard to the care and management of the appliances as will best promote their immediate and successful use. The wearer should be impressed with the absolute necessity of early and prompt attention to any injuries inflicted upon the soft tissues of the mouth by the substitutes; as much future trouble and annoyance, if not permanent mutilation of the parts, may result from neglect, but which may be readily averted, in most instances, by a timely removal of the sources of injury. To obviate, in some measure, the tendency to displacement of the base, which usually accompanies the first use of artificial teeth, and especially

the upper denture, the patient may be directed, when dividing food with the front teeth, to press the substance backward and upward against the cutting edges of the superior incisors at the same time that the opposing teeth are closed upon each other, thus dividing completely the substance seized. In reference to the mastication of food, it has been suggested to instruct the patient to distribute, by the action of the tongue, the portions of food as equally as possible on each side of the mouth, in this manner distributing the forces applied and thereby lessening the chances of lateral displacement of the substitute.

CHAPTER XII.

SUBSTANCES USED IN THE MANUFACTURE OF PORCELAIN AS APPLIED TO DENTAL PURPOSES.

Single mineral teeth, porcelain blocks, continuous gum material, &c., are composed of two distinct portions,—the *Body* or *Base*, and *Enamel*. The chief mineral substances which compose the body, are, *Silex*, *Felspar*, and *Kaolin*. The enamel, both crown and gum, consists principally of *Felspar*.

The various tints or shades of color are imparted to the porcelain by certain metals in a state of minute division or their oxyds. The more general properties of the mineral ingredients will be first described.

Silex. Silex, silica, or silicic acid, is a white powder, inodorous and insipid. It forms the chief part of many familiar mineral formations, as quartz, rock crystal, flint, agate, calcedon, and most sands and sandstones, in some of which it occurs nearly pure. Silica, in its pure state, is insoluble in water or acids, and is infusible in the highest heat of the furnace; it melts however in the flame of the oxy-hydrogen blowpipe, passing into a transparent colorless glass. Its specific gravity is 2·66; and is composed of silicon 48·04, and oxygen 51·96. Only the purest varieties of silex are employed in the manufacture of porcelain teeth. It is prepared for use by subjecting it to a white heat and then plunging it

into cold water, after which it is ground to a very fine powder in a mortar.

Felspar.—This mineral substance occurs crystallized in oblique rhomboidal prisms, and is a constant ingredient of granite, trachyte, porphyry, and many of the volcanic rocks. The felspathic mineral formations present either a pearly or vitreous lustre, and vary in color, being red, green, gray, yellow, brown, flesh-colored, pure white, milky, transparent, or translucent. Felspar yields no water when calcined; melts at the blowpipe into a white enamel, and is unaffected by acids. It is composed, according to Rose, of—silica, 66·75; alumina, 17·50; potash 12; lime, 1·25; oxyd of iron, 0·75. It is found in various localities throughout the United States, the purest and whitest kinds being employed in the manufacture of mineral teeth. It is prepared for use in the same manner as silex.

Felspar, from its ready fusibility, serves to agglutinate the particles of the more refractory ingredients, silex and kaolin; and when diffused throughout the mass imparts to the porcelain a semi-translucent appearance.

Kaolin.—Kaolin, or decomposed felspar, is a fine white variety of clay, and is composed chiefly of silica and alumina, the latter being the characteristic ingredient of common clay. It is found in various localities throughout the Eastern States, and in parts of Asia and Europe. Kaolin is refractory or fire-proof, but is rendered more or less fusible by the contaminations of iron and lime with which it is usually combined. The opaque

and lifeless appearance characteristic of the earlier manufacture of mineral teeth was due to the introduction of a relatively large proportion of this clay into the body of the porcelain. The peculiar translucent and life-like expression which distinguishes the beautiful imitations of the present day, is due, in great part, to the comparatively small proportion of kaolin clay, and an increased amount of the more fusible and vitreous component, felspar.

Kaolin is prepared for use by washing it in clean water; the coarser particles having settled to the bottom, the water holding the finer ones in solution is poured off, and when the suspended clay is deposited at the bottom of the vessel, the water is again poured off, and the remaining kaolin dried in the sun.

Coloring materials.—The following metals and oxyds are employed in coloring mineral teeth; titanium, platina sponge and oxyd of gold being those chiefly used in producing the more positive tints, and by combining which in varying proportions, any desired shade of color may be obtained.

METALS AND OXYDS.	COLORS PRODUCED.
Gold in a state of minute division,	Rose red.
Oxyd of gold, ...	Bright rose red.
Platina sponge and filings, . .	Grayish blue.
Oxyd of titanium, . . .	Bright yellow.
Purple of Cassius, . . .	Rose purple.
Oxyd of uranium, . . .	Greenish yellow.
Oxyd of manganese, . . .	Purple.
Oxyd of cobalt, ...	Bright blue.
Oxyd of silver, ...	Lemon yellow.
Oxyd of zinc, ...	Lemon yellow.

As the preparation of most of the above colors requires great care, and a somewhat intimate knowledge of chemistry, and as the most delicate manipulations are necessary to secure accurate and satisfactory results, it is better for the mechanical operator to procure the coloring ingredients already prepared from some competent chemist, rather than attempt their production himself. For a particular description of the various modes of preparing them, the reader is referred to Piggot's "Dental Chemistry and Metallurgy," and other works treating fully of the subject.

CHAPTER XIII.

PORCELAIN BLOCK TEETH.

The fabrication of porcelain block teeth constitutes a somewhat distinctive branch of practical dentistry, and from the delicate nature of the manipulations and long experience necessary to attain to any considerable degree of excellence in the various processes connected with their manufacture, their construction is seldom attempted by those engaged in general practice. A practical knowledge of the process, however, becomes, in some measure, indispensable on the part of those who cannot conveniently command the services of an experienced block-workman, inasmuch as cases are constantly occurring in practice, especially those connected with the replacement of partial sets of teeth, in which it is impossible to fulfill efficiently the requirements of the case with single gum teeth, but which may be accomplished in the most perfect manner by means of porcelain blocks constructed with special reference to the condition of the parts to be supplied. The process is applicable as well also, to full arches in the form of sectional blocks. In any case, the impracticability of readily or successfully repairing them when broken or otherwise injured, must always limit their use, in a great degree, to those cases that do not admit of other equally satisfactory means of substitution.

A description of the general properties of the several ingredients, earthy and metallic, used in the formation of block teeth, has already been given in the preceding chapter. The method of compounding and preparing the materials will next be given with various approved recipes for body and enamel.

Composition and preparation of the body.—The porcelain paste for the body of block teeth may be compounded from either of the following formulas. There are a great variety of recipes, differing more or less in the proportion of the component ingredients, but the following will be found to answer every practical purpose, and are such as are generally employed at this time by experienced block-workmen.

NO. I.

Delaware spar,	12 oz.
Silex, . .	2 oz. 8 dwts.
Kaolin, . .	7½ dwts.
Titanium, .	18 to 36 grs.

NO. II.

Delaware spar,	16 oz.
Silex, . .	3½ oz.
Kaolin, . .	½ oz.
Titanium, .	20 to 60 grs.

NO. III.

Spar, . .	12 oz.
Silex, . .	2 oz. 8 dwts.
Kaolin, . .	12 dwts.
Titanium, .	24 grs.

NO. IV.

Spar, . .	8 oz.
Silex, . .	1½ oz.
Kaolin, . .	4 dwts.
Titanium, .	22 grs.

NO. V.

Spar, . .	2 oz.
Silex, . .	8 dwts.
Kaolin, . .	2 dwts.
Titanium, .	4 grs.

The titanium is first ground in a mortar until reduced to an impalpable powder; the silex is then added and ground from one to three hours, or until there is no per-

ceptible grit; after which the kaolin is added and thoroughly ground; and lastly the spar, adding small portions at a time, and grinding the whole until perfect comminution and intermixture of the several ingredients are effected, say from half an hour to an hour. The ingredients may be ground dry or in water,—in the latter case a sufficient quantity of clean rain water should be added, from time to time, to form a mixture of about the consistence of thick cream. After sufficient comminution is effected, the surplus water may be abstracted by pouring the mixture upon a clean dry slab of plaster of Paris. When it acquires about the consistence of thick dough, it should be beaten with a wooden mallet or thrown repeatedly and forcibly upon a marble slab, and, if prepared in quantities for future use, it should be preserved in its plastic state by confining it in a closely stopped earthen jar. When ground dry, the materials are prepared for immediate use by adding to the powder clean rain water in sufficient quantity to form a thick paste; it is then well beaten on a porcelain or marble slab, and pressed, just before using, between folds of cloth to expel perfectly all particles of air that may be confined in the body of the paste.

Composition and preparation of crown enamels.—The enamel, which forms the external covering to the crowns of porcelain teeth, is composed wholly of felspar with such coloring matters as serve to communicate to it the various tints or shades of complexion characteristic of the natural

organs. The more positive tints, grayish-blue and yellow, are produced by titanium, platinum sponge, and oxyd of gold; intermediate colors being produced by varying the special combinations of these ingredients.

The following recipes will furnish various tinted enamels, the varieties of *grayish blue* being applied to the points or coronal extremities of the teeth—the *yellow* to the necks; the two colors being so blended when applied as to run imperceptibly into each other.

GRAYISH-BLUE ENAMEL.

NO. I.		NO. III.	
Spar,*	2 oz.	Spar,	2 oz.
Platina sponge,	$\frac{1}{4}$ gr.	Platina sponge,	$\frac{3}{4}$ gr.
Oxyd of gold,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	Oxyd of gold,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.
NO. II.		**NO. IV.**	
Spar,	2 oz.	Spar,	2 oz.
Platina sponge,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	Flux,†	24 grs.
Oxyd of gold,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	Platina sponge,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.

YELLOW ENAMEL.

NO. I.		NO. III.	
Spar,	2 oz.	Spar,	2 oz.
Titanium,	10 grs.	Titanium,	16 grs.
Platina sponge,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	Platina sponge,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.
Oxyd of gold,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	Oxyd of gold,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.
NO. II.		**NO. IV.**	
Spar,	2 oz.	Spar,	2 oz.
Titanium,	14 grs.	Flux,	20 grs.
Platina sponge,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	Titanium,	10 grs.
Oxyd of gold,	$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.		

* The Boston spar is preferred on account of its greater fusibility.

† *Flux* is composed of silex, 4 oz.; borax, 1 oz.; sal tartar, 1 oz.; these are ground to an impalpable powder and packed in the bottom of a clean, light-colored crucible. A piece of fire-clay slab is then fitted into the top of the crucible and luted with kaolin clay. It is then exposed to the heat of a furnace until completely fused, when it is removed, and when cold the crucible is broken, all foreign particles or discolored portions thoroughly removed, and the remainder well pulverized.

In compounding enamels from the foregoing recipes, the coloring ingredients should first be ground to a very fine powder with five or six dwts. of the spar; the remaining portions of the latter should then be added, a little at a time, and ground for half an hour or more. The shades of color may be varied almost indefinitely by changing the proportions of the coloring matter.

GRAYISH-BLUE ENAMEL.

NO. I.		NO. II.	
Spar, . . .	1 oz.	Spar, . . .	1 oz.
Blue frit,* . .	5 grs.	Yellow frit,† . .	4 grs.
		Gold mixture,‡ .	20 grs.

Composition and preparation of gum enamels.—Either of the following recipes will furnish a good gum enamel, and may be used in connection with any of the compositions for body heretofore enumerated.

NO. I.		NO. II.	
Gum frit, No. 1,	3 dwts.	Gum frit, No. 2,	3 dwts.
Spar, . .	9 to 12 dwts.	Spar, . .	3 to 18 dwts.

It is recommended, in order to impart a granular appearance to the gum, to grind the spar somewhat coarsely; any required shade or depth of gum color

* *Blue frit* is composed of spar, ½ oz.; platina sponge, 4 dwts.; powder very finely, make up into a ball with water, and fuse very slightly upon a slide in a furnace. It is then plunged into water while hot, and when dry, finely pulverized.

† *Yellow frit* is made by mixing intimately ½ oz. of spar with 2 dwts. of titanium, and heating as above.

‡ *Gold mixture* is prepared by dissolving 8 grs. of pure gold in *aqua regia*, and then stiring in 12½ dwts. of very finely pulverized spar. When nearly dry, it is formed into a ball and fused upon a slide, and then coarsely pulverized.

being obtained by varying the proportions of the frit,—the latter containing the coloring ingredients.

Gum Frit, No. 1, is composed of felspar, 700 grs.; flux, 175 grs.; oxyd of gold, or metallic gold in a state of minute division, 16 grs.

The above are ground in a mortar for five or eight hours, or until they are reduced to an impalpable powder; they are then packed in the bottom of a clean Hessian crucible coated on the inside with a thin mixture of pulverized silex, and on the outside with kaolin. A piece of tile or slab is then luted with kaolin to the top of the crucible, when it is placed in the furnace for from one to two hours, or until complete vitrification is effected. It is then removed and, when cold, the crucible is broken and all traces of adhering silex ground off; it is then broken in pieces and ground until it will pass through a sieve, No. 9, bolting cloth.

Gum Frit, No. 2, is composed of spar, 700 grs.; flux, 175 grs.; purple cassius, 8 grs.

The purple cassius is first thoroughly ground in a mortar, after which the flux is added in small quantities at a time, then the spar in the same manner, grinding until perfect comminution and intermixture of the several ingredients are effected. It is then packed tightly in the bottom of a clean white crucible, the inside lined with silex and a slab luted to the top, as before, and the whole exposed to a heat sufficient to fuse perfectly. It is then removed from the fire, and when cold, all foreign

substances are ground off and the remaining portions pulverized until it will pass through a sieve of No. 9, bolting cloth.

Having given the composition and mode of preparation of the various compounds which enter into the formation of the body and crown and gum enamels, it only remains to describe the different processes concerned in the construction of porcelain blocks from the several compositions given, and first of the method of procuring an antagonizing model.

Antagonizing model for an entire upper and lower denture constructed of block teeth.—The first step in the process of constructing block teeth, for either a full upper set with the natural teeth of the opposite jaw remaining, or for entire dentures for both jaws, is to secure an antagonizing model. For the latter or complete dentures, above and below, the method does not differ from that employed when single gum teeth are used. A rim of wax is adjusted to each plate in the manner heretofore described, and the plates placed in their proper position in the mouth; the wax drafts are then trimmed until the exact fullness and contour of the lips and cheeks are secured and proper relative width is given to the wax rims. Great exactness should be observed in these latter manipulations, inasmuch as the wax drafts are the only guides in the formation of the blocks, both as respects the form and fullness of the arch and the length of the teeth. The proper relation of the two pieces in the mouth is now

secured, the wax rims attached to each other, and the median line of the mouth indicated on the wax, and being removed from the mouth, an antagonizing model procured in the same manner as described in a former chapter.

Antagonizing model for an entire upper denture with the natural teeth of the opposing jaw remaining.—A rim of wax, half an inch or more in width, is attached to the ridge of the plate and the latter placed in the mouth. The patient is then directed to close the jaws until the cutting edges and grinding surfaces of the teeth of the opposing jaw are fairly imbedded in the wax. The piece is then removed from the mouth and the wax rim detached from the plate by holding the latter for a moment over a spirit-flame. The wax is then placed upon a strip of paper with the side indented by the teeth looking upward, the surface of the wax oiled and a batter of plaster poured upon it, filling the imprints of the teeth and running back an inch and a half or more behind the wax, raising the plaster to a level of half an inch above the wax. When the plaster is sufficiently condensed, it is turned over, the wax removed without fracturing the plaster teeth, and a crucial groove made in the surface of the model posterior to the teeth. This constitutes the lower section of the antagonizing model, and is a representation of the teeth of the lower jaw. The upper section is next obtained in the following manner. A second rim of wax, in width equal to the

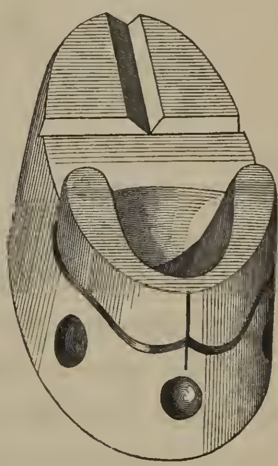
20

required length of the teeth, is adjusted to the plate as before and placed in the mouth. The exact contour and fullness of the arch required is then given to the external or labial surface of the wax draft, and the lower edge cut away until the required approximation of the jaws is secured and the points of all the teeth remaining below touch the wax at the same instant. The patient is now required to close the jaws gently upon each other until a slight indentation is made in the wax by the opposing teeth; the median line of the mouth is then marked upon the wax and the plate removed. The plate and wax are now adjusted to the lower section of the model, the points of the plaster teeth being received into the indentations in the wax made by the natural teeth. The upper and posterior surface of the lower section of the model having been varnished and oiled, and the exposed surface of the plate also oiled, a mixture of plaster is poured in upon the latter and back upon the model, raising the whole to a level of half an inch above the plate. The two sections, when the latter portion of plaster has consolidated, are then separated, reserving the lower part of the antagonizing model for future use.

Forming a matrix for molding the body preparatory to carving the teeth.—As the process of forming a matrix in which to mold the porcelain paste, giving the general form and outlines to the blocks before carving the teeth, is the same for an upper and lower denture, it will be sufficient to describe the method as it relates to the

superior arch. A matrix for an entire denture above or below, whether consisting of three, four, or six blocks, is ordinarily made to consist of three distinct pieces independently of the plate and model, and is constructed in the following manner. Three conical-shaped holes are made in the sides of the model, one in front and one on each side, to furnish a fixed articulation for the three sections forming the external walls of the matrix. The appearance of the model when thus prepared, with the plate and wax rim in place, is exhibited in Fig. 81.

Fig. 81.



The sides of the model and external face of the wax are now oiled, and both surfaces covered with a batter of plaster to the depth of a fourth or a half of an inch, extending from the base of the model to the lower edge of the wax, and posteriorly about half way on each side of the model to form a matrix for the front block, or the two anterior blocks, if the arch is made to consist of more than three sections. Supposing the wax removed from the plate and this front piece in place, the several parts will present the appearance shown in Fig. 82. The plaster rim forming the external wall of the front block being removed, plaster is again added, as before, to the outer surfaces of

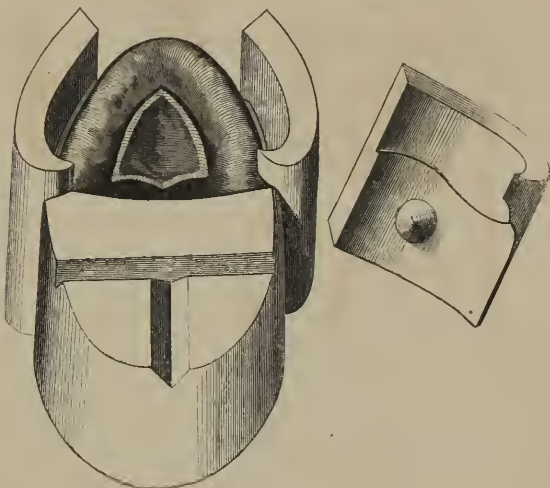
the model and wax, extending it from the heel of the plate on each side forward an eighth or a fourth of an

Fig. 82.

inch in advance of the posterior extremities of the plaster rim first formed. When hard, the plaster is trimmed even with the edge of the wax draft, and the two pieces removed from the model. The matrices formed by these lateral sections when readjusted to the model with the wax removed are shown in Fig. 83. Having thus provided a matrix determining the general outline and length of the teeth for the entire arch, the wax draft is removed and the plate thoroughly cleaned preparatory to molding the paste,—before doing which, however, the line upon the wax indicating the median point of the mouth should be extended across the model.

Molding the porcelain paste preparatory to carving the teeth.—In the process of constructing an entire denture, it is impracticable, owing to the shrinkage of the body,

Fig. 83.



to form a single continuous block or full arch without materially changing its relation and adaptation to the metallic base, and also to the natural organs in cases where the latter are remaining in the opposite jaw; hence it is customary, as before intimated, to divide the arch into sections,—usually three; a central front block embracing the incisors and cuspidati, and two lateral blocks including the bicuspids and molars on each side; or the denture may consist of four blocks, dividing the arch between the central incisors, and also between the first and second bicuspids on each side; making the two anterior blocks to consist each of a central and lateral

incisor, a cuspidatus and anterior bicuspid, and the posterior blocks of the second bicuspid and the two molars. Again, the arch is sometimes divided into six blocks,—an anterior embracing the central and lateral incisor and cuspidatus, a central comprising the bicuspids, and a posterior including the molars. If constructed in three sections, as is ordinarily the case, the front block should be molded and carved first. The material for the body, if in a dry state, is mixed with a sufficient quantity of clean rain water to form a thick batter and mixed thoroughly in a mortar. It should then be poured upon a dry slab of plaster of Paris, and when the excess of water is absorbed, removed and well beaten with a spatula on a marble or porcelain slab until it assumes a somewhat pasty form; it may then be well pressed between folds of cloth to force out any remaining portions of confined air. The plaster rim forming the matrix for the front block is now adjusted in its proper position to the model, and its inner surface, as well as that of the plate, oiled; the porcelain paste is then packed into the matrix as compactly as possible, filling it even with the upper edge of the plaster rim. When the paste has been worked in as solidly as possible, patting it with the fingers or suitably formed instruments as successive portions are added, it should be trimmed even with the edge of the plaster rim and the palatal surface cut away to near the thickness required for the teeth included in the block, leaving it somewhat thicker, however, to compensate for

the shrinkage of the body, and to allow for small portions which will be cut away in carving the teeth. The plaster rim forming the external border of the matrix is now loosened by tapping gently upon the model and then carefully removed. The mark upon the model, showing the mesial line of the mouth and indicating the proper position of the central incisors, is then extended across the block, after which the width of each adjoining tooth is lined off, making each one as much broader than will be required in the finished piece as the porcelain composition will shrink in baking,—this, in a block embracing the six anterior teeth, will be equivalent to about one-third or one-half the width of a bicuspid on each side. If the case is one requiring a full denture above and below, the operator should next proceed to mold the front block for the lower arch in the same manner as described for the upper. The two sections of the antagonizing model are then placed together, and the proper relative width for the lower teeth indicated upon the inferior block,—the drawn lines upon the upper block serving as a guide. The points to which the posterior extremities of the front block extends on each side of the plate should be marked upon corresponding points of the model above and below to enable the manipulator to determine how far the side blocks should be extended anteriorly when molding the paste for the latter,—the marks upon the model being subsequently transferred to the lower edges of the lateral sections of plaster con-

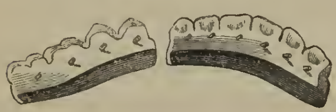
cerned in the formation of the side matrices. Before removing the front blocks from the plates preparatory to carving the teeth, the surface of the paste may be dried somewhat by throwing upon it, with the blowpipe, a broad spreading flame from a spirit lamp. The blocks are then carefully detached by rapping lightly upon the model, assisted by gentle traction with the fingers. The front blocks being removed from the upper and lower plates, the side sections of plaster concerned in the formation of the posterior matrices are adjusted to the model, and, being oiled, the paste filled in as before described, extending each block forward beyond the point occupied by the cuspidatus of the front block a distance equal to about one-third or one-half of the width of the latter. These are then cut away even with the edges of the plaster rims and trimmed on the palatal sides, leaving them somewhat thicker than will be required for the bicuspids and molars. The plaster walls of the matrices are then removed; the two parts of the articulating model placed together, and the relative width and position assigned to the upper and lower teeth by drawing lines across the external surface of the blocks. They are then separately removed from the plates in the manner before described, and the necessary additional portions of paste added to the grinding surfaces to compensate for the contraction of the body in baking. In constructing a full upper denture with all or a portion of the natural organs remaining below, the proper width to be given to the upper

teeth as well, also, as the required relation or antagonism of the artificial with the opposing natural teeth, may be readily determined by applying the lower portion of the antagonizing model representing the teeth of the under jaw, and marking upon each block, as it is being molded, the necessary width and position of each tooth above,—being careful to make allowance for shrinkage by adding to the length, width, and thickness of each block as much as will compensate for the contraction of the body. In every other particular, the process is conducted in the same manner as heretofore described.

Carving the teeth.—The teeth are first separated by drawing between them a thread attached to a small bow, and it may be observed in this connection that the most careful and delicate manipulation is required in handling the blocks while carving to prevent portions of the paste from crumbling away, a tendency that may be counteracted, in some measure, by moistening the paste occasionally with a little water taken up on the point of the carving knife. The general outline of each tooth having been traced upon the exterior surface of the block with the point of the instrument, the operator proceeds next to give the distinct and characteristic form to the crowns, and the harmonious and agreeable effects produced will depend upon the fidelity with which the manipulator copies nature in the form and arrangement of the teeth. The requirements of individual cases are too varied in their nature to admit of specific directions in respect to

their formation,—a careful study of the modified forms of the natural organs, combined with some degree of manipulative tact, will enable any one, after sufficient experience, to attain to satisfactory results in this particular. After the teeth are formed, and the body of the block is reduced to the required thickness, superfluous portions extending from the ends of the block should be cut away, leaving enough, however, projecting to allow for grinding when jointing and adjusting the several blocks to the metallic base. Fig. 84 exhibits the general form of the blocks when carved, showing also the platinum pins, but which are not usually attached to the blocks until after the latter are first biscuited.

Fig. 84.



Crucing, or Biscuiting.—The blocks being carved, are next placed on a fire-clay slab with their palatal surfaces resting on a bed of silex. As soon as the paste has become thoroughly dry, the slab may be gradually introduced into the muffle of a baking furnace, (Fig. 10,) and exposed to a full red heat until semi-fusion of the body takes place. This partial vitrification of the body serves to agglutinate the particles of the compound and is termed *crucing* or *biscuiting*. When removed from the furnace, and cool, the platina pins should be introduced into the blocks before applying the gum and crown enamels, and is accomplished in the following manner. One or two small holes, as the case may require, are drilled into the

body of the block immediately behind and below the crown of each tooth, extending about half-way through the block; into these, platinum pins or wires are introduced, a head being formed to the end of the pin entering the block. A small portion of the body composition, mixed with water to the consistence of thin cream, is then worked into the hole around the pin with a sharp-pointed carving knife or camel's-hair brush, its introduction being facilitated by first immersing the block in water immediately before inserting the pins.

Application of the crown and gum enamels.—The gum enamel is applied first, the material being first prepared by mixing the gum composition with sufficient clean rain water to form a batter of about the consistence of thin cream. This is then taken up with a camel's hair brush and applied uniformly to all parts of the external surface of the block representing the natural gum. It should be applied very carefully to the necks of the teeth, forming a neat and well-defined festoon at these points. In applying the crown enamel to the labial surfaces of the teeth, it is customary, in imitation of the natural organs, to so distribute the more positive tints as to give to that portion of the crown representing the neck of the tooth a somewhat yellowish hue, and to the points, a grayish-blue tint. To effect this, the material for the yellow enamel, reduced to the consistence before mentioned, is first applied to the necks, uniting it carefully with the gum enamel; and afterwards the grayish-blue to the

points, extending it a little below the cutting edges of the incisors, and the cusps of the cuspidati, bicuspids, and molars, giving to the teeth, at these points, a translucent appearance. It is only the external and lateral surfaces of the teeth that are enameled, the palatal surfaces remaining unglazed. The yellow and blue enamels should be so blended when applying them to the crowns that the one shall fade away imperceptibly into the other.

Final baking.—The enameling completed, the blocks are placed upon a bed of silex on a slide, and the latter carefully and slowly introduced into the mouth of the furnace. The fire should then be urged to a clear white heat, and when perfectly dry, the blocks should be carried with the slide into the body of the muffle, and the mouth of the latter closed tightly with a fire-clay plug. Some knowledge of the requisite degree of heat and time necessary to effect perfect fusion of the ingredients composing the blocks is required, and these are ordinarily well known to experienced block-workmen, but those unaccustomed to the process will better determine the completion of the baking by introducing into the muffle along with the blocks a small portion of the body covered with enamel attached to one end of a platinum wire, the other passing through a small stopper fitted to the centre of the plug closing the end of the muffle, and which may be removed and the wire withdrawn from time to time to observe the effect of the heat upon the test piece.

When this is seen to be perfectly fused, as evidenced by a uniform glossiness of the surface, the slab should be drawn to the mouth of the muffle, the draft cut off, and the blocks allowed to cool gradually with the furnace. In place of using a test piece, however, it will answer the purpose to withdraw the slide to the mouth of the muffle occasionally, where it may be readily inspected and the progress of baking noted. When sufficiently cool to be taken in the hand, the blocks are removed from the furnace.

Fitting and attaching the blocks to the metallic base.—On applying the blocks to the plate, it will be found that a greater or less change of relation between the two has occurred in the process of baking, so that the base of the former will not fit the portion of the plate on which they rest as accurately as when first molded. It will, therefore, be necessary, when adjusting each block, to grind away somewhat from the base of the latter until the coaptation of the two surfaces is as perfect as practicable. The several blocks should also at the same time be accurately united to each other laterally, grinding away from the ends, and approximating the sections as the articulation of the opposing dentures may require to effect a proper and efficient antagonism, and which may be determined by the use of the antagonizing model employed in molding the blocks. After the blocks are fitted, and the teeth antagonized, and before uniting the former permanently to the plate, a rim should be formed

and attached to the borders of the metallic base to form a socket for the plate extremities of the blocks, and which, extending around the margins of the plate, should be continued across the heel of the latter on each side and made continuous with the band or lining on the palatal sides of the teeth. The manner of forming and attaching the rim does not differ from the method heretofore described in connection with full dentures constructed of single gum teeth, and to which the reader is referred. The rim fitted, and the blocks replaced, the whole is invested in the usual way, the wax removed from the plate, and a continuous band or lining adjusted to each block. The latter is accomplished by first cutting a pattern of the band from sheet lead of the length of the block, and of the required width, trimming the edge applied to the plate in such a manner that when adjusted to the backs of the teeth it will lie in uniform contact with the base; this is then pressed against the pins with sufficient force to perforate it. The lead pattern is then placed upon a strip of gold of the required thickness, and the counterpart of the pattern cut from the gold plate, marking, at the same time, the points to be perforated for the platinum rivets. This is then pierced with a plate-punch, and the strip bent to the proper curve and applied to the block, when it is bound to the latter by splitting and spreading apart the ends of the rivets. A band is thus applied to each block. Solder is then applied along the joints, and over the pins, and

all parts united with the blowpipe in the usual manner. The piece is then finished up the same as ordinary gold work. Fig. 85 exhibits a palatal view of an upper set of block teeth mounted on a metallic base. When skillfully executed, the finished work presents a beautiful and highly artistic appearance.

Fig. 85.

The application of sectional porcelain blocks to the necessities of mechanical practice is being greatly extended in connection with the "Vulcanite base," and, to a more limited extent, with the "Cheoplastic" method of mounting teeth. Their construction, however, is modified somewhat by the requirements of these special processes, and as made for the latter, are of such approved manufacture, and are supplied in such abundance and at so reasonable a cost by all the principal dental furnishing establishments, that the general practitioner, we apprehend, will ordinarily find it more convenient and economical to purchase rather than manufacture them himself.

CHAPTER XIV.

UNITING SINGLE PORCELAIN TEETH TO EACH OTHER AND TO A METALLIC BASE WITH A FUSIBLE SILICIOUS COMPOUND FORMING A CONTINUOUS ARTIFICIAL GUM.

The process of uniting single mineral teeth to each other and to a metallic base by means of a porcelain cement, was practiced as early as 1820 by Delabarre of Paris, France, but with such imperfect and unsatisfactory results as induced its early abandonment. Entertaining a conviction of the practicability of the process, Dr. William M. Hunter, a dental practitioner of Cincinnati, Ohio, whilst engaged in endeavoring to overcome the shrinkage incident to the baking of porcelain "blocks," attempted, at the same time, a revival of Delabarre's method, and in 1844–5 commenced a series of experiments with a view of obtaining a mineral compound which would vitrify at a heat much below that employed by Delabarre, and the contraction of which should correspond so nearly with that of the platinum base to which it is applied, that the shrinkage incident to baking should, in no material degree, conflict with the practical utility of the work in the mouth. These experiments were attended with such success that, prior to 1850, Dr. H. had the satisfaction of submitting the work to a practical test in the mouths of patients, and with such

results as furnished abundant encouragement for further trial of its capabilities. Although the mineral compounds prepared by Dr. Hunter prior to 1849 required much less heat to vitrify them than those used by Delabarre, and could be safely employed in connection with teeth of American manufacture, yet, for several reasons, the heat required was esteemed inconsistent with their ready and successful manipulation under the varying requirements of practice. In 1849, Dr. H., with the aid of certain recipes which came into his possession at that time, and which opened to him new fields of experiment, was enabled to produce various mineral cements which, flowing at the melting point of pure gold, and possessing the various requisites of a gum representative, obviated, in a great measure, the inconveniences and disabilities which had been found to attend upon the use of the more refractory compounds before employed. Dr. H., the author is informed, is now engaged in perfecting a gum material which flows at a still lower (nearly that of coin gold) heat, but deems it judicious to withhold it from the profession until the process is more fully matured. In addition to the manifest convenience and advantages to be derived from the use of mineral cements flowing at a low heat, not only in reference to the construction of the work in the first instance, but for repairing purposes, they likewise greatly enhance the practical value of the work by enabling the operator to preserve unimpaired the unity of the several parts of the metallic base after

final fusion of the gum material. It is a fact well known to practical manipulators in continuous gum work, that the fusion of mineral cements requiring for their complete vitrification a temperature much above that required to melt pure gold results in the partial, if not complete, dissipation of the gold used as a solder; so that however perfectly the various parts of the metallic framework are united, or however substantially constructed before fusion of the gum material, the integrity of the union is partially or wholly broken up in the finished piece by the absorption of the gold solder.

Toward the ultimate development of the above process, Dr. John Allen, formerly a resident dentist of Cincinnati, has also largely contributed, and who, experimenting cotemporaneously with Dr. Hunter, succeeded in obtaining letters patent in 1851 for an "improvement in setting mineral teeth;"—from which circumstance, more than any well-established claim to priority of discovery, the method has come to be known as "*Allen's continuous gum work.*" The gum materials compounded from his original published formulas have undergone manifest improvement, but as now manufactured by E. & L. Roberts of New York City, they are exceedingly refractory, and require careful manipulation in baking. A more fusible ingredient is compounded for repairing purposes. The present formulas now used in preparing the above cements, the author has not been able to command, but the latter are largely manufactured by the above firm,

and may be procured at all the principal dental furnishing houses throughout the United States.

The method of constructing full and partial dentures as commonly practiced in connection with the use of Allen's material, will be first described, after which the manner of manipulating Dr. Hunter's compounds, as described by him in 1852, together with his published formulas, will be introduced at the conclusion of the chapter.

The porcelain cement, which serves to unite the teeth to each other and to the platinum base, is composed, like single gum and block teeth, of what is technically called the *Base* or *Body*, which constitutes the main or basement portion of the artificial gum; and *Gum Enamel*, which forms an external and superficial covering to the base, communicating to the body the various hues or tints characteristic of the natural gums.

Metallic Base.—Whenever the porcelain body is united by direct fusion with the metallic base, the latter should be constructed of platinum, as this is the only metal which will withstand the heat necessary to vitrify the cements in common use. Platinum, both from its infusible nature and comparative exemption from contraction, is admirably adapted to this process; and did it possess the stiffness and elasticity of ordinary gold plate, its suitableness would be still farther enhanced. It is not improbable that at no very distant period, as before intimated, porcelain cements sufficiently fusible, and pos-

sessing otherwise the necessary requisites, will be compounded justifying the employment of gold alloyed with platinum as a base;—at present, gold or its alloys can only be used in connection with this process in those cases where the teeth are united in sections or entire arches independently of the plate base, being subsequently attached to the latter either by riveting or with the use of solder.

The thickness of plate used will be determined somewhat by the form of the palatal vault, and the manner of constructing the metallic base. Ordinarily No. 30 plate may be used:—if, however, the arch is shallow and broad, increased thickness should be given to it. On the other hand, if the arch is deep and marked by prominent ruga or other sharply-defined irregularities of surface, a plate somewhat thinner than that specified may be employed; and if the plate is doubled in the centre and the space filled in with gum material, plate No. 32 or 33 will suffice. In all cases, the perfect integrity of the piece requires that the absorption of the ridge shall be complete, otherwise no practicable thickness of a single lamina of platinum will, on account of the soft and pliant condition of this metal, provide perfectly against fracture and deformity in mastication.

It is unnecessary to repeat in this connection what has already been fully described in regard to impressions of the mouth, or the manipulations connected with the formation of plaster models and metallic swages; these

processes being essentially the same as in the construction of ordinary gold work. Whenever a rim is to be formed to the border of the plate extending from heel to heel of the latter, and this is to be accomplished by swaging, the model should be shaped as described in connection with Fig. 23. If it is designed to enamel the entire lingual surface of the plate, (a method now commonly practiced,) the shoulder upon the model should be extended across the heel of the latter from each extremity of the ridge on a line with the posterior border of the hard palate, to form a groove in swaging similar to, and continuous with, that on the outside of the ridge. The edges thus turned in swaging will flare more than is required,—the operation must, therefore, be completed by carefully turning them over sufficiently with the pliers. In place of swaging the rim, however, it may be formed by fitting and soldering along the border a narrow plain strip of platinum, extending it as before, if desired, across the posterior edge of the plate. Or a triangular piece of wire may be soldered on, the edge presenting to the gum being beveled somewhat so as to overhang the base slightly, thus forming a shallow groove. The border to the palatal portion of the gum at the heel of the plate is sometimes formed in swaging by adjusting a wire across the heel of the model, which will be transferred to the plate in the form of a ridge. The latter should be raised a line or more from the posterior border of the plate, and should incline gradually

to the edge, while the anterior surface should present an abrupt shoulder to the margins of the gum enamel.

The process of forming the rim is sometimes deferred until after the first portion of the body is baked, and before the gum enamel is applied. In this case, the borders of the plate, to the depth of from a line to a line and a half, are left uncovered by the base; after the latter has been baked, the uncovered margins are turned over upon the body with pliers and burnisher, and the gum enamel afterwards applied flush with the edge or surface of the rim.

In whatever way the rim or socket is formed, it is practically of the first importance that the exact dimensions of the plate required should be ascertained before the groove is formed, as it will be impossible to subsequently diminish the extent of the borders without, to some extent, impairing the integrity of the finished work. The mouth, therefore, should be carefully examined, and the precise location, extent and fullness of the muscles and integuments along the external borders of the ridge above and below, the glands underneath the tongue, and the extreme bounderies of the hard palate, carefully noted and accurately traced upon the plaster model to serve as a guide in determining the dimensions of the plate.

Great additional strength will be imparted to the metallic base by doubling the central portion of the plate as described in Chapter XI. The following additional remarks on the method by Dr. Hunter are introduced.

"Platina as usually applied I think objectionable, wanting stiffness; my method of using it is similar to that proposed by Delabarre, but possessing greater strength than even his method, and by it can be made as light as a good gold plate got up in the ordinary way. I first strike a very thin plate to the cast, and cut out a piece the size of the desired chamber, taking care not to extend it forward to embrace the palatal artery. Add wax to the plate for the depth of the cavity, diminishing it neatly as it approaches the alveolar ridge. Cement this plate to the cast and take another metallic cast, strike another thin plate over the whole, and solder throughout with an alloy, of gold twenty-two parts, platina two parts, or with pure gold. The chamber thus formed is precisely the same as "Cleaveland's Patent Plate," but the space *between the plates*, for which he obtained his patent, is subsequently filled up, leaving a cavity resembling Gilbert's, but with a sharper edge when so desired. This space is filled up with base and enamel, and gives great stiffness without the ugly protrusion of the struck chamber. The plate thus formed assimilates much more closely to the palatal dome, not interfering with pronunciation; another great advantage gained by it is the impossibility of warping. I say *impossibility*, because I have submitted plates so constructed to the severest tests, and never had them to warp. It is well to rivet the two plates together before proceeding to solder, especially gold plates, and to bring

the heat carefully upon them; once prepared there is no danger of change in the succeeding manipulations."

Wax drafts.—After the plates are fitted to the mouth, wax drafts or guides are adjusted to them; the required contour of the cheeks and lips restored; the proper occlusion of the jaws secured; and the median line of the mouth indicated upon the wax in the same manner as described in a previous chapter. In cases where the muscles of the cheeks are lax and sunken, presenting an unnatural hollowness on each side underneath the malar bones, and that cannot be readily restored to the customary fullness in the ordinary way, it may become necessary to attach to the lateral borders of each denture a flange or protuberance, constructed of porcelain, to extend the cheeks, and which are called "cheek restorers" or "plumpers." These are attached to, and project from, the sides of the artificial gum above and below, extending from the anterior edge of the second bicuspid back to the front part of the last molar. They should be attached to the wax drafts in the first instance, and carved in the mouth to the length, width and fullness necessary to restore the sunken parts to their original condition. The form and application of the plumpers as they appear in the finished piece are shown in Fig. 86. The wax guides being trimmed to the required width and fullness, the mesial line

Fig. 86.

indicated, and the former attached to each other in accordance with the proper closure of the jaws, they are removed from the mouth and an articulating model procured in the usual manner.

Arranging the teeth.—As portions of the wax guides will be removed in the process of arranging the teeth upon the plate, and the precise outlines of the drafts will thus be lost, especially at those parts between the necks of the teeth and the borders of the plate to be subsequently filled out with the porcelain paste, it may become necessary in cases where particular irregularities of contour exist, and which it is practically important to accurately reproduce, to preserve, in permanent form, the original fullness of the wax drafts. This may be done by securing a plaster model of the wax rim in its connection with the plate and adjoining portions of the model on which it rests. The exterior surface of the wax rim and model are first oiled, and an impression of the parts taken in plaster, and from this a model. The impression may be taken in halves, uniting the two pieces in front by an articulating surface; these, when detached from the drafts, may be reunited, attached to each other temporarily with a little softened wax, and filled in, after being varnished and oiled, with plaster for the model entire, and which, exhibiting the precise form and fullness of the drafts, will serve as a guide in the application of the gum body.

Inasmuch as plain or plate teeth (those without artifi-

cial gums) are used in this process, and as they may be arranged independently of the porcelain gum, (the latter being accommodated to the position of the teeth,) the disposition of the teeth of the same jaw in respect to their relation to each other, is completely under the control of the operator, and hence the method is eminently adapted to the production of any degree of irregularity of arrangement consistent with a just expression of these organs in the mouth. In adjusting the teeth to the plate, the superior central incisors should be first arranged, one on each side of the central line marked upon the wax, cutting away sufficiently from the latter to bring the tooth, when imbedded, in a line with the circle of the wax rim. Passing back from the incisors to the last molars, each tooth is thus separately imbedded and attached to the wax,—adjusting, alternately, an upper and lower tooth, keeping in view, at the same time, and fulfilling as perfectly as possible, all the essential requirements in regard to the general arrangement and antagonism of the teeth described when treating of gold work. In adjusting the teeth, it is not important that the portions representing the roots, and which serve to unite the crowns to the gum body, should be accurately fitted, by grinding, to the platinum base,—on the contrary, the strength of the attachment of the porcelain to the metallic base will be more perfect if sufficient space be left between the plate extremities of the teeth and platinum base to admit of the ready introduction of the gum body.

Investing.—The teeth being properly arranged and antagonized, the crowns may be covered with a thin coating of shellac, which, burning out in the process of baking, will shield them from immediate contact with the plaster investment and prevent roughening from adhesion of the latter. They are next imbedded in plaster and sand, using only so much of the former as will serve to hold the body of the investient together, say one part of plaster to two of sand or equal parts of each. Plaster and asbestos equal parts are sometimes employed, or plaster, sand and asbestos, equal parts. The piece is invested in the same manner as for gold work; after which all traces of wax are removed from the teeth and plate, when the stays or linings which unite the latter are adjusted.

Lining the Teeth.—The method of attaching the teeth to the plate by means of stays or linings will depend somewhat upon the construction of the teeth manufactured expressly for this process. They are formed usually with two or more platinum pins or rivets, but those known as "Roberts' teeth," having but a single long pin, require a different application of the stays from those commonly used. The method of lining the ordinary or double-pinned teeth will be first described. A strip of platinum, equal in width to the tooth to which it is applied and one-half of the spaces next adjoining, is pierced to receive the platinum pins, the end resting upon the plate being split into several sections and bent at a right angle with

stay, extending back upon the plate an eighth of an inch. The portions of the lining which extend beyond the sides of the teeth are slit even with the sides of the tooth about half way down from the top of the stay. The linings are thus separately formed and adjusted to each tooth, and when applied, are fastened by pressing the pins together with pliers, while the lateral strips are doubled upon each other and interlocked, thus uniting them throughout.

In the use of teeth having but one long pin, their attachment is effected by fitting a strip of platinum plate underneath the pins, extending continuously from heel to heel of the plate, the lower edge resting upon the latter. It is best first to fit a strip of sheet lead to the curvatures of the teeth and to the surface of the plate, to be used as a pattern in cutting out the platinum band. The strip is sometimes formed in sections, in which case they should be united by interlocking the ends. In order to strengthen the attachment, this band may be doubled, or its lower edge doubled or wired, or additional strips of platinum or pieces of wire may be placed continuously or at intervals along the points of contact between the band and plate. When adjusted, it is fixed in place by bending the pins down over it, the band being previously perforated with numerous small holes through which the gum body passes, binding the several parts more perfectly together.

Soldering.—It should be remembered in manipulating

this work that the appropriate and only solder for it is *pure gold*. The teeth lined, small pieces of this metal are applied at all points to be united; each piece as it is applied being touched with borax ground in water. The gold should be applied in sufficient quantities to unite perfectly all the parts, and may be confined within certain limits, when fused, by scoring the surface of the plate with a sharp instrument immediately inside of the linings or wherever it is desired to limit the flow of the solder. The piece is now placed in the muffle of the furnace and the heat raised on it until the gold flows, when it should be immediately withdrawn and placed in a cold muffle to cool gradually, the end of the latter being closed. Or the piece may be removed at a red heat from the furnace and soldered either with the hydrostatic or spirit blowpipe. When cold, the external covering of the investient is cut away, leaving that portion uninjured on which the plate rests, to serve as a base for the plate in the process of baking the body. The plate and teeth, separated from the plaster, are now immersed in a dilute solution of nitric acid, where they are allowed to remain until all adhering particles of vitrified borax are removed; after which the piece is thoroughly washed. To insure a more perfect adhesion of the body to the plate, it is recommended, after having placed the plate upon the die, to scratch or etch, with a sharp pointed instrument, the entire lingual surface of the platinum base. The piece is now ready for the application of the gum body.

Application and fusion of the body or base.—The material for the base or body is mixed with sufficient water to form a paste, the portion first applied being sufficiently thin to admit of being worked perfectly into all the minute crevices or interstices around and underneath the ends of the teeth and about the platinum linings and into the contracted fissure or groove formed by the rim. When these interspaces are filled in as perfectly as possible, the redundant water may be taken up partially by applying to the paste, wherever practicable, small pieces of tissue or bibulous paper, when the paste thus partially deprived of its water, should again be worked in and impacted as perfectly as possible with small, sharp, straight and curve-pointed knives or spatulas. Before filling in with the body into the more open spaces between the roots of the teeth, the former may be partially filled up with fragments of the crowns of broken teeth, around which and the roots of the teeth, the porcelain paste, now used much drier and thicker than at first, is packed as hard and solid as possible. Small portions are thus added from time to time until the required fullness of the gum between and external to the teeth is obtained, drying out occasionally with a clean napkin or tissue paper and at the same time pressing and patting it with the instrument to drive out entangled portions of air. The paste is likewise applied to the platinum stays, covering them to the depth of from a half to three-fourths of a line, making it fuller as it approaches the plate and rounding it off at this point with a retreating

edge extending back an eighth of an inch or more. If it is designed to enamel the lingual surface of the plate, the gum body should be applied the thickness of a dime to the entire surface continuously with that upon the backings, filling into the groove around the chamber with a uniform surface. The porcelain paste should be carved neatly at the necks of the teeth, and on the exterior or labial surface a shallow concavity or furrow may be formed by cutting out a small portion of the body from between the roots of the teeth, thus forming a ridge over the fangs of the teeth in imitation of the natural gum; the effect of this carving will be still further enhanced after the application of the gum enamel, which being applied evenly over the surface, a greater depth of gum color will be imparted to those parts over the furrows, while the intermediate portions over the roots will appear somewhat bleached or of a lighter gum color, as in the natural gum.

In forming plumpers, it is only necessary to build out with the porcelain paste from the sides of the arch, giving to the lateral projections the form and fullness required, constructing them, at the same time, as light as is deemed consistent with the necessary strength of the attachments. These fixtures are sometimes formed by molding the paste upon a platinum wire or gauze frame-work attached to the sides of the plate, but the process possesses no special advantages over the plain porcelain.

After the application of the base in the manner de-

scribed, the crowns of the teeth should be well cleansed with a camel's-hair brush of all adhering particles of paste, and the uncovered portions of the plate with a moistened napkin, when the piece should be readjusted to the plaster base previously used in soldering, placed upon a fire-clay slab or slide and introduced first into the upper muffle of the furnace, where it may be allowed to remain exposed to a gradually increasing heat until it is thoroughly dried; when it acquires a red heat it may be transferred to the lower muffle and the heat urged until partial vitrification of the body takes place, and which may be determined by a slight glossiness of the surface. When baked or biscuited in this manner, it may be removed and introduced into a cold muffle as when soldering, and allowed to cool.

Some contraction of the body upon itself will occur in this first baking, manifesting itself in numerous fissures of greater or less width and depth upon the surface; these should now be well filled in with body, and any additional fullness given to the base that may be required. Before doing which, however, it is best to place the plate upon the metallic die, with which it was swaged, to correct any partial deformity that may have occurred in baking. If any change in the fit of the plate has occurred, it is recommended to press the plate down forcibly upon the die, at the same time tapping the molar teeth with a wooden or horn mallet. Any partial fracturing of the body incident to such manipulations are

unimportant, as the defects will be remedied in the subsequent bakings.

Before submitting the body to a second heat, imitations of the natural ruga of the mouth may be produced by raising a small ridge along the mesial line of the arch with a camel's-hair brush loaded with a thin mixture of the cement, extending it from a point between the central incisors back to within a short distance of the centre of the posterior edge of the plate; this is then divided throughout its length by a narrow fissure, and from the sides of this central ridge, on the anterior sloping wall of the palate, short ridges with irregular curvatures are formed at short intervals in imitation of the natural ruga.

The piece is now placed upon the plaster base and exposed to a second heat in the furnace. The heat required at this baking is somewhat greater than that used in the first instance, and should be sufficiently intense to produce a decided glossiness of the surface without effecting a perfect fusion of the entire mass—a white heat being necessary to produce this effect in the use of Allen's "body." It is then removed and cooled in the same manner as before, when it is ready to receive the gum enamel.

Application and fusion of the gum enamel.—The gum enamel material is prepared for use by mixing with it sufficient water to form a thick paste, which is applied to the surface of the baked body in quantities sufficient

to impart the necessary depth of gum color to the enameling. A lighter or deeper tint may thus be given in the use of the same material by varying the thickness of the enamel covering. A medium gum color will be obtained with a layer nearly the thickness of a dime, allowance being made for shades of differences in the color of the enamels as compounded. The enamel paste should be applied evenly to the surface, drying out the material with a napkin from time to time, and packing it as solidly as possible. If the crowns of the teeth have become roughened or etched during the preceding manipulations, they may be touched with a thin coating of "etching enamel" before the piece is again introduced into the furnace; it is then placed upon the plaster base previously used, and this upon a slide, and then introduced slowly and carefully into the upper muffle. When it has acquired a red heat, it is transferred to the lower muffle and exposed to a full white heat for from ten to twenty minutes, withdrawing occasionally to the mouth of the muffle to observe the progress of the baking. Whenever the surface presents a perfectly smooth and glassy appearance, complete fusion of the entire mass is indicated, and it may be immediately withdrawn and placed, as before, in a cold muffle closed at the end, to cool gradually. Dr. W. B. Roberts, in a practical and well written paper on this process,* recommends the removal of the piece from the muffle, in which it is placed

* Dental Register of the West, vol. xii. p. 130.

to cool, at about blood heat, and its immersion in water of the same temperature, avoiding contact of the fingers with it. "This," he observes, "is an effectual method of preventing the checking or crazing of the gum, which frequently occurred in the old way of annealing, when the piece was cooled and taken in the hands."

Little remains to be done, in the way of finishing the work, after vitrification of the enamel. It is only necessary to remove any adherent particles that may have attached themselves to the plate during baking with scrapers or very fine sand paper, and then to burnish the surface or scour and polish with finely ground pumice and emery, and finish with the burnisher. It is better, when constructing the plate and before the teeth are arranged, to give a perfect and final finish to the rim, and when applying the cement, to cleanse it perfectly of all particles of body or enamel before each baking.

Application of continuous gums to partial sets.—In the application of continuous gums to partial pieces, as well also as the method of repairing this work, we cannot do better than give, in the author's own words, such material facts as relate to these processes contained in the paper before quoted.

"Partial cases may be made of continuous gum; but the work is so various in its nature, that the dentist must necessarily depend much upon his own judgment. Difficult cases will constantly present themselves, that will require the exercise of much study and ingenuity;

in which the general instruction that can be given in words, may be of but little service. The first attempt of this kind in my own experience, was in replacing two central incisors. Taking two continuous gum teeth, I placed upon them a platinum lining, slitting this down along the edge of one tooth nearly through the piece and up the edge of the other tooth by a parallel cut, leaving the two parts joined together by a narrow slip. This allowed sufficient motion between the teeth, so that they could be adjusted as desired. I then placed a bit of tissue paper on the plaster model, covering the spot to be occupied by the teeth and gum, to prevent the adhesion of the body to the plaster, and holding the two incisors in their places, I worked the body into all the depressions of the gum and around the roots of the teeth. I then removed the whole from the model, and placed the piece in a paste of pulverized silex, or plaster and asbestos, upon a slide, and baked as described for full sets. The little slip of platinum kept the two teeth in place. The work shrunk somewhat; but this was remedied by again placing the piece upon the model, with the intervention of tissue paper covered with a thin coating of body. Into this I pressed the piece, till it occupied its true place, and then filled in again with more body all the crevices around the roots of the teeth, and rebaked.

"After enameling, if the work has been carefully and skillfully done upon this plan, it will be as fine a piece in appearance and fit, as can be made. It may then be

soldered to a gold plate, and the little strip of platinum between the teeth be cut out. With the body and gum formerly in use many difficulties were often encountered from discoloration of the gum, or from other injuries incurred in soldering. But with Roberts' material, these are easily avoided, and the piece can be treated the same as a block or single gum teeth. In partial sets on entire plates of platinum, I have sometimes found trouble, from the enamel giving way upon the small narrow points that connect the teeth with the plate, by the shock occasioned in biting. I have consequently left these points uncovered, and used two or three thicknesses of platinum to give greater strength. But where this is likely to occur, gold plates would be preferable, if nicely adapted with single gum teeth, or blocks of continuous gum, as the case might require. I have also applied continuous gum in cases where the natural teeth, from one to five in number, were left in the mouth, by making the plates as in full sets, cutting out around the natural ones, and raising a small bead, or placing a light wire around about one-eighth of an inch or more from the teeth, against which the gum or body is to be finished. The points around the teeth are to be left free, in order to be burnished down in case of imperfections caused by the difficulty of obtaining exact impressions in these places. In such cases, I have sometimes formed a strong standard of several thicknesses of platinum fitting closely against one or more natural teeth, leaving a loophole,

through which to run a gold clasp for afterward securing the artificial set.

"I have also secured the gold to the standard by rivets of platinum, and sometimes by two or three gold screws, not providing, in these cases, the loop-hole. These methods are to be preferred to using solder for fastening; for, in case of repair, the clasps are easily removed without leaving any foreign substance: but in case of soldering, however carefully they may be removed, there will remain some alloy, which, in the baking heat to which the piece is to be exposed, will be incorporated with the platinum. Even so small an amount of silver as may be in gold coin used for solder will communicate a yellowish tinge to the gum, spoiling the whole work. Many operators in their early practice, I doubt not, experienced this result; and learned that no alloys, especially of silver or copper, can be admissible for soldering this work. I have tried platinum clasps without success, as no elasticity could be obtained, and therefore would not hold upon the teeth. Another source of mischief may properly be noticed in this place. In baking especially with a new furnace, or with muffles lately renewed, either at the first or second heat, or it may be in enameling, the piece is sometimes changed in its texture and color, as is supposed by the gases present, and the phenomenon is called gassing the piece. The body becomes porous like honey-comb, and of a bluish color. When this occurs, there is no remedy but to place it upon the metallic die, remove the

whole of the injured part, and replace it with a new coating of body and gum. The teeth are seldom, if ever, thus affected. As a precaution, the muffles should be well ventilated with holes for the passage of the heated air and gases.

"*Repairing.*—In case of a single tooth being broken, a new one is readily inserted by entirely removing the crown of the injured one, and grinding out a niche in the gum at its base, nearly one-fourth of an inch deep, to receive the new tooth: then fill up the niche with body, and press the tooth you wish to insert down to its proper position; trim the surplus body about the neck of the tooth as in full sets, absorb the moisture with a napkin, and apply the gum to the body and wherever required. Stay the tooth with a little plaster and asbestos placed upon its point and reaching over, so as to include the adjoining tooth on each side. A better method, however, is to place the teeth downward, imbedding their points in a paste of pulverized silex laid upon a slide and then subject the piece to the heat required for enameling. Once baking will generally suffice to complete this operation. But, if a piece has been more seriously injured,—say by loss of a central and canine tooth, with a point broken out from the edge of the gum, and the plate is bent so as to have lost its fit, and the gum shrunken away at any point,—we adopt a thorough method of repair. We first take an impression of the mouth and make a plaster model; upon this we place the plate, and

over the point where the gum is shrunken we chip off the body and gum, and with a burnisher work the plate down wherever required, to exactly fit the model. We then make a niche for each tooth to be inserted, apply the body and gum, stay the teeth, and bake the piece as above described. If it has been thoroughly packed, two bakings will be sufficient, but sometimes three may be required. The only rule is, to repeat the operation till the object is accomplished, taking care always not to overheat the piece. In case of the piece having been long worn, it is well, before doing anything to it, to subject it to a moderate degree of heat, sufficient to burn off any impurities it may have collected in the mouth.

"Another set may be presented for repair, literally broken to pieces; but the plate remaining a perfect fit, and some of the teeth being undisturbed, we wish to avail ourselves of these. We therefore make a dam of putty around the edge of the plate, and run in fusible metal to form a cast, which shall serve as a support for the plate. Not to endanger cracking the teeth by the heat, the piece may be placed in a dish containing a little water, and after the metal is poured and begins to harden, more water may be added, so as to cover the whole mass. But this is hardly necessary, if the alloy be run nearly at its cooling temperature.

"The piece being now supported upon the cast, and held firmly with one hand, a small chisel, made from an excavator, may be applied with the other to the old

material which it is desirable to remove, and an assistant gently tapping this with a hammer, the body is quickly chipped off between the teeth, and wherever the chisel is directed without injury to other parts, or without mis-shaping the plate. The teeth may now be inserted and soldered to the plate, with the old or new linings if required, and the new body and gum may then be applied, as in making a new piece. All this may seem to involve much time and trouble; but little more is really required than to repair a gold plate. The cast of fusible metal is much more readily made than a plaster cast. The old body and gum is removed and new applied, in shorter time than two gum teeth can be fitted upon the gold plate, and the soldering and first baking of the body requires no more time than to solder and cool the gold work. We then have, in the one case, the gum to be applied, and in the other, the gold is to be polished; so that the whole difference of time involved, however great the repairs, need not be more than one or two hours. But a single tooth may be repaired as soon as a gum tooth on gold plate. One difficulty, often met with in mending, requires to be noticed. It arises from the necessity of employing mixtures likely to be of different composition from that of the original body; and possibly more infusible. In this case, the old body will melt, before the new has become incorporated with it, thus ruining the work by overheating. In some instances, after one baking, I have been obliged to

condemn the whole work and entirely replace the old body. This difficulty is now obviated by being able to use always the same material; it being prepared in large quantities, by Dr. E. A. L. Roberts (to the amount of a ton weight at a time), so that the supply of uniform composition can be depended upon for years to come."

The following methods of compounding and applying the continuous gum materials, as practiced by Dr. W. M. Hunter, is reproduced from his published descriptions in 1852, and which, we are informed, do not differ in any essential respect from his present method of manipulating the work.

The following is a description of the materials and compounds employed:

"*Silex* should be of the finest and clearest description, and kept on hand ready ground, the finer the better.

"*Fused spar* should be the clearest felspar, such as is used by tooth manufacturers for enamels, completely fused in a porcelain furnace, and ground fine.

"*Calcined borax* is prepared by driving off the water of crystalization from the borax of commerce, by heating in a covered iron vessel over a slow fire, and it is better to use immediately after its preparation, as it attracts moisture. It should be perfectly clean and white, and free from lumps.

"*Caustic potassa optiumus.*—Known also as potassa fusa.

"*Asbestos.*—Take the ordinary clean asbestos, free it

from all fragments of talc or other foreign substances and grind fine, taking care to remove any hard fragments that may occur.

"*Granulated body.*—Take any hard tooth material (I use the following formula: spar 3 oz., silex 1½ oz., kaolin ½ oz.) and fuse completely. Any very hard porcelain, wedgewood ware or fine china, will answer the same purpose. Break and grind so that it will pass through a wire sieve No. 50, and again sift off the fine particles which will pass through No. 10 bolting cloth. It is then in grains about as fine as the finest gunpowder.

"*Flux.*—Upon this depends the whole of the future operations, and too much care cannot be taken in its preparation. It is composed of silex 8 oz., calcined borax 4 oz., caustic potassa 1 oz. Grind the potassa fine in a wedgewood mortar, gradually add the other materials until they are thoroughly incorporated. Line a hessian crucible (as white as can be got) with pure kaolin, fill with the mass, and lute on a cover a piece of fire clay slab, with the same. Expose to a clear strong fire in a furnace with coke fuel, for about half an hour, or until it is fused into a transparent glass, which should be clear and free from stain of any kind, more especially when it is to be used for gum enamels. Break this down and grind until fine enough to pass through a bolting cloth, when it will be ready for use.

"*Base.*—Take flux 1 oz., asbestos 2 oz., grind together very fine, completely intermixing. Add granulated body

1½ oz., and mix with a spatula to prevent grinding the granules of body any finer.

"*Gum enamels.*—No. 1. Flux 1 oz., fused spar 1 oz., English rose 40 grains. Grind the English rose extremely fine in a wedgewood mortar, and gradually add the flux and then the fused spar, grinding until the ingredients are thoroughly incorporated. Cut down a large hessian crucible so that it will slide into the muffle of a furnace, line with silex and kaolin each one part, put in the material and draw up the heat on it in a muffle to the point of *vitrefaction* not *fusion*, and withdraw from the muffle. The result will be a red cake of enamel which will easily leave the crucible, which after removing any adhering kaolin, is to be broken down and ground tolerably fine. It may now be tested and then (if of too strong a color) tempered by the addition of covering. This is the gum which flows at the lowest heat, and is never used when it is expected to solder.

"No 2. Flux 1 oz., fused spar 2 oz., English rose 60 grains. Treat the same as No. 1. This is a gum intermediate, and is used upon platina plates.

"No. 3. Flux 1 oz., fused spar 3 oz., English rose 80 grains. Treat as the above. This gum is used in making pieces intended to be soldered on, either in full arches or in the sections known as *block-work*. It is not necessary to grind very fine in preparing the above formulas for application.

"*Covering.*—What is termed covering, is the same as

the formulas for gum, *minus* the English rose, and is made without any coloring whatever when it is used for tempering the above gums which are too highly colored, and which may be done by adding according to circumstances from 1 part of covering to 2 of gum, to 3 of covering to 1 of gum, thus procuring the desired shade. When it is to be used for covering the base prior to applying the gum, it may be colored with titanium, using from two to five grains to the ounce.

"*Investient.*—Take two measures of white quartz sand, mix with one measure of plaster of paris, mixing with just enough water to make the mass plastic, and apply quickly. The slab on which the piece is set should be saturated with water to keep the material from setting too soon, and that it may unite with it.

"*Cement.*—Wax 1 oz., rosin 2 oz. The proportions of this will vary according to the weather; it should be strong enough to hold the teeth firmly, and yet brittle enough to chip away freely when cold. A little experience will enable any one to prepare it properly."

(Inasmuch as the method of constructing the platinum base, with Cleaveland's modification of chamber, as described by Dr. H., has already been introduced, p. 326, this portion of the description is omitted in this connection.)

"After the plates are perfectly adapted to the mouth, place wax upon each, which trim to the proper outline as regards length and contour of countenance, marking the proper occlusion of the jaws and the median line.

These waxen outlines are called the *drafts* and are carefully removed from the mouth, and an articulator taken by which to arrange the teeth.

When the absorption is considerable and the plate in consequence is rather flat, it is necessary to solder a band or rim along the line where the upper draft meets the plate, about one sixteenth or one eighth of an inch wide, and fitting up against the outline of the draft. When the ridge is still prominent, the block will not of course be brought out against the lip so much, and a wire may be soldered on instead of the wider band. I think one or the other necessary, as it gives a thick edge to the block, rendering it far less liable to crack off than if it were reduced to a sharp angle; it also allows the edge of the plate to be bent in against the gum, or away from it, as circumstances may require, and afford in many cases a far better support for the plates than can be given to one in which the band is *struck up* or the edge turned over with pliers, where the block must extend to the edge of the plate. Some few cases do occur when the band may be struck as far back as the bicuspids with advantage, and some in the lower jaw where it is necessary to solder on the band, but the general practice is not so.

"The upper teeth are first arranged on the plate antagonizing with the lower draft, supported by wax or cement, or both. Then remove the lower draft and arrange the lower teeth so that the coaptation of the cut-

ting edges of the teeth shall be perfect as desired. The patient may now be called in again, and any change in the arrangement made to gratify his or her taste or whim. Now place the plates with the teeth thereon, on their respective casts, oil the cast below the plate and apply plaster of paris over the edge and face of the teeth and down on the cast, say an inch below the edge of the plate. This will hold them firmly in their place while you remove the wax and cement from the inside, and fit and rivet backs to the teeth. When backed, cut the plaster through in two or more places, and remove. Clean the plate by heating. Cut the plaster so that while it will enable you to give each tooth its proper position, you can readily remove it from the teeth when they are cemented to the plate. Adjust the sections of plaster and the teeth in their proper positions. The plaster may be held by a piece of soft wire. *Cement* the teeth to the plate and strengthen the cement by laying slips of wood half an inch long along the joint and against the teeth. (I generally use the matches which are so plenty about the laboratory.) Remove the sections of plaster, being careful not to displace any of the teeth. If it be intended to cover the strap with enamel, you should solder a wire after backing, and previous to replacing the teeth, along the plate parallel with the bottom of the straps, and about $\frac{1}{8}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch from them.

"The teeth are now backed and cemented to the plate, and present an open space between the plate and

the teeth, which is to be filled up with the base, using it quite wet to fill up the small interstices, filling in the rest as *hard and dry as possible.* Fill the cavity *between* the plates in the same manner, and oil the edge. Oil the surface of the base, envelop in the investient (precisely as you would put an ordinary job into plaster and sand for soldering) and set on a fire-clay slab previously saturated with water. When hard, chip away the cement, cooling it if necessary with ice, until it is perfectly clean. Along the joints place scraps and filings of platina very freely, and cover all the surface you wish to enamel with coarse filings, holding them to their place by borax ground fine with water. Apply pure gold as a solder quite freely, say two dwt. or more to a single set. Put in a muffle and bring up a gradual heat until the gold flows *freely*, which heat is all that will be needed for the base; withdraw and cool in a muffle. Remove the investient and fill up all crevices and interstices not already filled, with covering No. 2; cover the straps and base with the same, about as thick as a dime, and cover this with gum No. 2 about half that thickness. At the same time enamel the base in the chamber, and cover with thick soft paper. Set the plate down on the investient on a slab, with the edges of the teeth up. Fuse in a muffle and the work is completed. Blemishes may occur in the gum from a want of skill in the manipulation; should such occur, remedy by applying gum No. 1.

"Should the patient object to the use of platina as a base, the work can be made as above on an alloy of gold and platina 20 carats fine, and soldered with pure gold, &c., as above. In all cases, however, where it is used, the upper plate should be made as I have described above, but with platina any kind of plate can be used.

"*Ordinary alloy.*—Blocks may be made and soldered to the ordinary plate if the absorption is sufficient to require much gum, without any platina. Arrange the teeth on wax on the plate, fill out the desired outline of gum, and apply plaster one-fourth of an inch thick over the face of the teeth, wax and cast. When hard, cut it into sections, (cutting between the canines and bicuspids,) remove the wax from the plate and teeth, bind the sections of the plaster mold thus made to their places with a wire, oil its surface and that of the plate, fill in the space beneath the teeth with the base, wet at first, but towards the last as hard and dry as possible, and thoroughly compacted. Trim to the desired outline on the inside, oil the base, and fill the whole palatal space with investient, supporting the block on its lingual side. Remove the plaster mold and cut through the block with a very thin blade between the canines and bicuspids. Take the whole job off of the plate, and set on a fire-clay slab with investient, the edges of the teeth down; bring up the heat in a muffle to the melting point of pure gold. When cold, cover and gum with No. 3, gum and covering.

"Another mode is to back the sections with a continu-

ous strap, (using only the lower pin,) fill in the base from the front, use covering and gum No. 3, finish at one heat. When the blocks are placed upon the plate, the other pin is used to fasten the gold back, which is soldered to it and the platina half-back; neither of these backs need be very heavy, as soldering the two together gives great strength and stiffness. Very delicate block work can be made in this way, and it is applicable also, where a few teeth only are needed.

"A very pretty method, where a section of two or four teeth (incisors) is needed and only a thin flange of gum, is to fit gum teeth into the space, unite by the lower platina with a continuous back, and unite the joint with gum No. 3. A tooth left ungummed by the manufacturer would be best for the purpose. The same may be applied to blocks for a full arch, remembering not to depend entirely upon platina backs.

"The method I prefer for full arches on ordinary plate, is to take a ribbon of platina a little wider than the intended base, and of the length of the arch, cut it nearly through in five places, viz: between the front incisors, between the lateral incisors and canines, and between the bicuspids. Adapt it to the form of the alveolar ridge with a hammer and pliers, and swage on the plate along where the teeth are to be set. Solder up the joints with pure gold, and proceed to back the teeth, &c. as before; making preparations for fastening, and removing the slip of platina from the gold plate before enveloping in the investient, when proceed as before.

"When the teeth are arranged, insert four platina tubes about one line in diameter, two between the molars, and two between the cuspidati and bicuspids, and solder to the platina base. These are designed, after the teeth are finished, to be the means of fastening to the gold plate, either by riveting in the usual way, or by soldering pins to the gold plate passing up through the tubes, fastening with sulphur or wooden dowels. By these methods we are enabled to readily remove the block and repair it should it meet with any accident, and also in case absorption should go on, to restrike the plate, or to lengthen the teeth. The rim should be put on the gold plate after the block is finished, it gives great additional strength and a beautiful finish.

"*Memoranda.*—In preparing material always grind dry, and the most scrupulous cleanliness should attend all of the manipulations. In all cases where heat is applied to an article in this system, it should be raised gradually from the bottom of the muffle and never run into a heat. Where it is desired to lengthen any of the teeth, either incisors or masticators, or to mend a broken tooth, it may be done with *covering*, properly colored with platina, cobalt or titanium.

"In repairing a piece of work, wash it with great care, using a stiff brush and pulverized pumice stone. Bake over a slow fire to expel all moisture and wash again, when it will be ready for any new application of the enamel. Absorption, occurring after a case has been

some time worn, by allowing the jaws to close nearer, causes the lower jaw to come forward and drive the upper set out of the mouth. By putting the covering on the grinding surface of the back teeth in sufficient quantities to make up the desired length, the co-aptation of the denture will be restored, and with it the original usefulness.

"Any alloy containing copper or silver should not be used for solder or plate, if it is intended to fuse a gum over the lingual side of the teeth, as it will surely stain the gum. Simple platina backs alone, do not possess the requisite stiffness, and should always be covered on platina with the enamel, and on gold with another gold back. In backing the teeth, lap the backs or neatly join them up as far as the lower pin in the tooth, and higher if admissible, and in soldering be sure to have the joint so made *perfectly soldered*."

CHAPTER XV.

VULCANITE BASE.

The method of mounting artificial teeth in a base of vulcanized or indurated India-rubber and other vulcanizable gums is of comparatively recent origin, having been first practiced and introduced to the notice of the profession in 1853, by certain parties in New York acting under the "Goodyear patent." Since that period, the preparation of the materials and the methods of manipulating them, have undergone various modifications and improvements. The process is now very generally adopted by dental practitioners throughout the United States and in parts of Europe, and the very general recognition of the fitness of vulcanizable gums, for the various purposes to which they have been applied in the practice of dental prosthesis, would seem to challenge for them favorable comparison with other approved substances employed for similar purposes. Other compounds, analogous to the preparation of caoutchouc or India-rubber as at present manufactured by the "American Hard Rubber Company," are in limited use, as "*Coralite*," (prepared gutta-percha,) "*Amber Base*," "*Wheat's Compound*," &c. As now compounded, the several varieties mentioned are all wanting in resemblance to the color of the natural gum;—improvement in this respect would render them applicable to many cases in which they are

now inadmissible. Continued experiments will doubtless, sooner or later, overcome the objection referred to.

Vulcanizable gum compounds are prepared by incorporating sulphur, either alone or combined with other ingredients, with India-rubber or gutta-percha;—these are then indurated by subjecting them to a certain heat for a specified time, producing a hard, elastic, horn-like substance, possessing apparently, (with the exception of the requisite gum color,) all the essential properties of a base or support for artificial teeth, as lightness, strength, durability, imperviousness to fluids, insolubility in the acids of the mouth, unchangeableness in exposure to ordinary temperatures, &c.

Method of constructing an entire denture in a base of vulcanizable gums.—As the manipulations concerned in the construction of a full upper set differ in no essential respect from those required in the formation of a denture for the inferior arch, except as the two differ in conformation, requiring corresponding modifications of practice familiar to all, it will be sufficient to describe the method of constructing an entire denture for the upper jaw.

An impression of the mouth is first secured in the usual manner, and for full sets, plaster of Paris is preferable to any other material for the purpose. Inasmuch as the gum material is molded directly upon the plaster model obtained from the impression, it is important that the latter should be as perfect as possible, as any faulti-

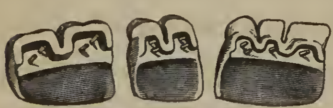
ness here will vitiate all the subsequent steps of the operation. From the impression, a plaster model is obtained, and if the denture is to be constructed with an air-chamber, the latter should either be cut out from the impression before filling in with plaster for the model, or it may be raised upon the latter in the manner described in a previous chapter. A temporary plate of sheet wax or gutta-percha, corresponding in dimensions with the required base, is next molded or conformed as accurately as possible to the face of the model. The wax or gutta-percha should be rolled or otherwise formed into sheets somewhat thicker than will be ultimately required for the base, it being necessary to remove portions in finishing the piece. If either the wax or gutta-percha are softened in a dry heat preparatory to pressing them down upon the model, the face of the latter should be previously varnished and covered with tin-foil to prevent their adhesion to the plaster. The operator, however, will find it more convenient and expeditious to soften or render the gum pliable by immersion in hot water. The various parts of the gutta-percha plate may be thus successively pressed down with the fingers, dipping it from time to time in the water. The temporary plate should be left somewhat fuller along the margins than will be required in the finished piece, sufficient at least to compensate for subsequent trimming when vulcanized.

Having fitted the temporary plate to the model, it is placed in the mouth with a wax rim attached, when the

latter is trimmed to the required width and fullness, and the "bite" of the under teeth secured; it is then removed and placed in its proper position on the model, and the heel of the latter extended an inch or more posteriorly to form an articulating surface for the remaining section of the antagonizing model, the latter being obtained in the manner heretofore described. The method of obtaining an antagonizing model for an entire upper and lower denture differs in no respect from that practiced when gold or other metallic plate is used as a base.

Arranging the teeth.—Having secured an antagonizing model, the teeth are selected and arranged upon the temporary guttta-percha plate in the ordinary manner. The porcelain teeth used in this process are more commonly in the form of blocks or sections, although either single gum or plate teeth may be used. Preference is given to the former on account of the liability of the vulcanite material being forced into the joints or seams between the teeth, and which, being of a darker hue than the porcelain gum, mars the beauty of the finished work and gives to the denture less the appearance of a continuous or unbroken gum. Blocks or single gum teeth manufactured expressly for this work are generally formed with a depression upon their palatal surfaces, and have longer and heavier pins than those ordinarily employed. (Fig. 87.)

Fig. 87.

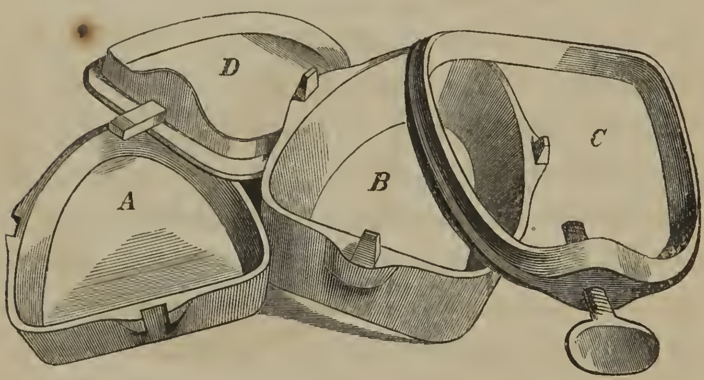


In arranging the teeth, portions of the wax rim are cut away to form a bed for each tooth or block, as the case may be, grinding from the base of the latter and from their proximate edges until the proper position is assigned to the teeth, and the required antagonism is secured. The teeth, whether single or in the form of blocks, should be united to each other laterally with the greatest possible accuracy to prevent, as far as practicable, the intrusion of the gum material between them, while the platinum pins should be pressed down toward the base in such a manner as to diverge from each other, thus binding the teeth more securely to the vulcanized material. The teeth properly arranged, the wax supporting the teeth on the lingual side of the latter should be cut away and carved to represent the natural fullness and form of the gum immediately behind the teeth. A rim of wax should also be extended around the external border of the plate extremities of the gum portions of the teeth, overlapping the latter somewhat to support and bind them down at these points. Wax used for the purposes indicated should be of the cleanest and purest varieties. As the vulcanized material will subsequently take the place of the wax, some additional fullness should be given to the latter, as it will be necessary, after vulcanization, to remove portions in the process of filing, scraping, and finishing the work.

Formation of the Mold or Matrix.—The process having been conducted thus far,—any defects in the

arrangement of the teeth having been previously corrected upon trial of the plate in the mouth,—the next step in the operation is the formation of a mold or matrix in which the gum material is packed and pressed preparatory to being indurated or vulcanized. In forming the matrix, a vulcanizing flask is used, the various parts of which are separately represented in Fig. 88. The lower

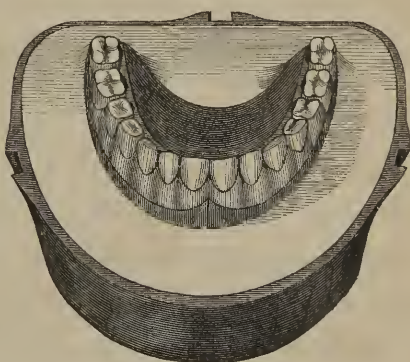
Fig. 88.



section of the flask A, is first filled one-half or two-thirds full of plaster mixed with water to the consistence of cream. Into this the base of the model, previously moistened with water, (the plate and teeth being attached to the model,) is immersed and additional portions of the plaster added, if necessary, filling the cup even with the upper edge, and extending it up the sides of the model to the lower edge of the external rim of wax attached to the borders of the gum plate. The base of the model should be cut away so that when placed in the flask the

lower edge of the gum plate will extend but little above the level of the upper borders of the cup. The surface of the plaster is then trimmed smoothly, and coated with varnish and then oiled; all the exposed portions of the gum plate and wax are also oiled, leaving the surfaces of the teeth untouched. The several parts will now present the appearance represented in Fig. 89. The upper section of the flask B is next placed in its proper position over the lower,—the slides formed in one, and corresponding grooves in the other, determining an accurate relation of the two pieces. Into the upper rim of the flask, plaster, mixed to the consistence before mentioned, is now poured, filling it completely. The lid or cap D, also filled in with plaster, is then applied to the opening above, and the several parts of the flask compressed by placing them within the clamp C, and forcing them together with the screw, impacting the plaster and driving out the excess through the joints of the flask. As soon as condensation of the plaster takes place, the flask should be placed in a hot air-chamber or on a stove, and heated throughout sufficiently to soften,

Fig. 89.



but not melt, the wax. The clamp is then removed and the two sections of the flask carefully separated by forcing a small chisel-shaped instrument in at different points between them, the lid closing the opening above remaining in place. On separating the flask, the teeth, with the wax and temporary plate, will be found attached to the section of the matrix last formed, the portions of the crowns of the teeth not covered with wax being imbedded in the plaster and their plate extremities presenting toward the matrix. The gutta-percha plate and wax should now be carefully detached with such instruments as will best enable the operator to work out confined portions around the platinum pins and from the interstices between the teeth, being careful at the same time, not to deface the plaster surface of the mold. To relieve the matrix more perfectly of all traces of wax not accessible to instruments, the section containing the teeth may be subjected to a heat sufficient to induce its complete absorption by the plaster. The flask should be heated gradually, otherwise the contents may be suddenly and forcibly ejected in consequence of the too rapid evolution of vapor.

Before packing the material, provision should be made for the escape of any excess when the matrix is filled and the two sections of the flask are forced together, permitting the latter to close upon each other in exactly the same manner as before the introduction of the gum. If the vulcanizable substance becomes engaged between

the surfaces of the plaster around the matrix, the vulcanized base will be increased in thickness just in proportion to that of the interposed layer of gum, and hence the teeth of replacement will be relatively elongated. This increased thickness of the base and consequent changed relation of the teeth to the maxillary ridge and to those of the opposing jaw, if but slight, may be immaterial in the application of full sets of teeth, but it is far different in the construction of partial pieces, where the perfection of the finished work depends in so great a degree upon a faultless preservation of the exact position originally assigned to the organs of replacement in the separate vacuities on the ridge. If, for example, in replacing the incisors, the approximation of the two sections forming the mold is obstructed by the intrusion of the gum material between the plaster surfaces, the teeth, whether plate or gum, will be relatively elongated in proportion to the increased thickness imparted to the base, consequent upon the incomplete closure of the flask, and however accurately or skillfully the porcelain teeth may have been originally fitted to the vacuity in front, the artificial will be found to depart from the natural gum, especially at the necks of the teeth, while the porcelain crowns will be displaced and be projected below those of the contiguous natural organs. Such displacement, in the cases last referred to, however small in degree, cannot fail either to impair or destroy, the value both as respects appearance and utility, of the substitute. The usual method of furn-

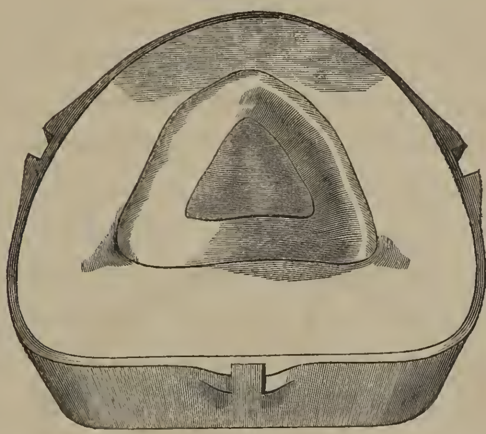
ishing an exit to redundant material is to form a series of conduits or grooves in the surface of the plaster containing the teeth, extending them from the edge of the matrix to the rim of the cup. The escape of the gum will be facilitated by filing notches at intervals around the rim of the flask, making the grooves in the plaster continuous with them, the grooves being an eighth or a fourth of an inch apart. To still more effectually prevent the intrusion of the vulcanite material between the surfaces of the opposing sections of plaster, a circular groove may be cut in the plaster within a line or two of the margins

FIG. 90.

of the matrix, into which narrow channels at short distances are made leading from the mold: others, again,

are made at wider intervals from the circular groove to the outer margins of the flask, terminating as before in small notches formed in the rim of the cup. Fig. 90 exhibits the section of the flask containing the teeth with the channels formed as described; the remaining section containing the model is shown in Fig. 91; the two

Fig. 91.



pieces when closed upon each other forming the matrix. Into the grooved section of the mold, the vulcanizable substance is packed previous to being indurated. Before packing, the joints formed by the union of the teeth should be filled in with plaster on the inside of the mold and the former saturated with liquid silex to prevent the intrusion of the gum material. The use of os-artificial and other similar substances has also been recommended for the same purpose.

Packing.—The portion of the flask containing the teeth

should be first heated in an oven or furnace, or over the flame of a spirit lamp, until the temperature of the whole is sufficient to render the vulcanizable gum soft and pliable as successive portions are applied and pressed into the mold, and to retain it in that condition until the operation of packing is completed. Narrow strips of the gum material should first be worked carefully into the contracted groove underneath the platinum pins with small curved or straight-pointed spear-shaped steel instruments, (Fig. 92,) adding on small pieces at a time

Fig. 92.

after each successive portion is thoroughly impacted, until the main groove of the matrix over the base of the teeth is partially filled. The palatal convexity of the mold may then be covered with a single piece cut to the form of the uncovered space; a smaller piece of the same general form as the latter may then be added, giving to the central portion a double thickness of the gum plate material, so that when the two sections of the flask are brought together, the excess of gum in the centre will be forced gradually to the margins of the mold, diminishing, thereby, the liability of the grooves becoming prematurely clogged with the material before the opposing sections of the flask close upon each other. Especial care should be taken in the process of packing to avoid contact of the instruments with the surface of the mold,

as fragments of broken plaster are liable to mix with the gum and render the surface of the finished work imperfect by forming small pits wherever such particles occur.

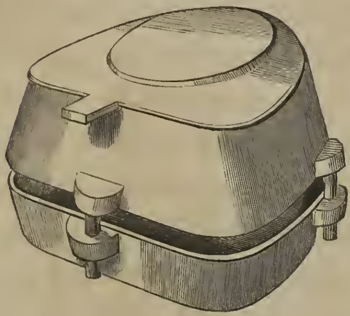
In respect to the quantity of material necessary to be added in order to fill the matrix perfectly, the operators estimate of the capacity of the mold will be his only guide. Some slight excess of material, however, should always be used, since, if there is an insufficient quantity to fill the matrix completely when softened and compressed in the flask, the finished piece will be found more or less porous when indurated, a result in the highest degree fatal to the practical value of the work in the mouth.

The process having been conducted thus far, the two portions of the flask are re-applied to each other in exactly their original relation, being careful that the apposition of the two is such that, when approximated, the guides attached to one division of the flask shall pass directly and without obstruction into the grooves in the one opposite. Some little difficulty and uncertainty are sometimes experienced in effecting the desired closure of the flask as ordinarily manufactured, (the two portions of which are thrown apart somewhat at first by the interposed gum,) on account of the shortness of the guides. The difficulty mentioned may be overcome by employing a flask constructed as shown in Fig. 93. Firm wires, from one-half to three-fourths of an inch in length, are permanently attached to the upper section; these, when

24

the two parts are approximated, pass into corresponding holes formed in projecting shoulders on the lower cup, thus maintaining a proper adjustment of the opposing sections at any required distance from each other. The clamp is now applied, and the flask exposed to a heat sufficient to render the interposed gum plastic; the two sections are then forced gradually together with the screw. The approximation of the opposing pieces should be interrupted,—alternately heating the entire mass and tightening with the screw until all the redundant material is expelled by degrees through the outlets provided for it, and the sections of the flask close accurately upon each other: this accomplished, the piece is ready for the vulcanizing process.

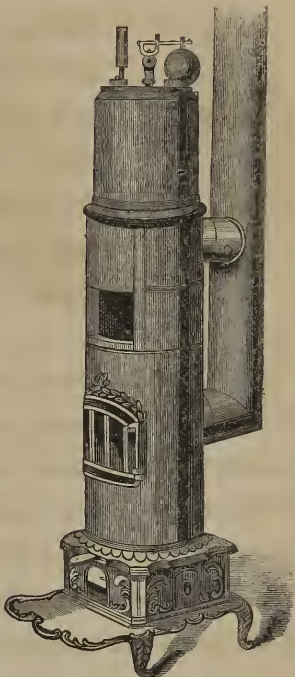
Fig. 93.



Vulcanizing.—The process of vulcanizing or hardening the various gum compounds employed for dental purposes, is effected by subjecting them for variable periods of time to the action of heat; the substances to be acted on being confined within a steam-chamber constructed for the purpose. The time and temperature necessary to produce the requisite induration differ with the various compounds in use; the apparatuses, also, used for heating purposes, present various modifications

of form, being constructed with reference to the source and mode of application of the heat; the latter being derived either from coal or charcoal or other solid combustible substances, or from the flame of a spirit lamp or gas-jet.

Fig. 94.



When fuel is used, the form of vulcanizer shown in Fig. 94, may be employed. It consists of an open-topped, cylindrical stove surmounted by a cast-iron boiler and steam-chamber, in the latter of which the flask is placed. To the top of the steam-chamber is attached a thermometer and safety-valve,—the former to indicate the degrees of heat produced,—the latter to regulate the same and provide against explosion. In front of the stove are two openings with doors, and a ventilator communicating with the ash-pit; on the opposite side are two flues, By opening or closing one or more of these several passages, the heat evolved may be regulated and controlled. The capacity of the steam-chamber connected with the coal stove vulcanizer is sufficient to receive from four to six cases at a time.

When alcohol or gas is used for heating purposes, the

vulcanizers employed differ somewhat in their construction, but the form of heater in very general use is exhibited in Fig. 95. The boiler, which is made of copper, is supported in a cylinder of sheet-iron open at both ends, and will contain from two to four flasks at a time. To the top of the boiler, as in the coal heater, a cast-iron covering is adjusted, to which is attached a thermometer and safety-valve. Near the bottom of the sheet-iron support is a small hole which furnishes access to the wick or gas-jet, and permits a ready inspection of the flame underneath the boiler.

Fig. 95.

Whatever form of vulcanizing apparatus is employed, when in use, pour into the boiler from a pint to a pint and a half of water, and before introducing the flasks, place in the bottom of the chamber a rod of iron or wire framework to support the pieces above the surface of the water.* Having placed the flask or flasks within the steam-chamber, adjust the covering and screw it down securely to the boiler; before doing which, however, the upper surface of the interposed rim of India rubber packing should be coated with chalk to prevent it from adhering to the top after protracted heating. Heat is now

* Experiments have recently been made in vulcanizing under water, by which induration of the gum material is said to be as perfectly accomplished as when subjected to the action of steam alone, the heat required being much less than by the usual method.

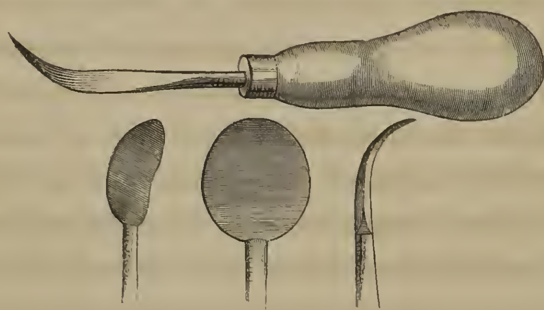
applied and continued until the requisite induration of the gum is effected. The compound known as the American Hard Rubber Company's gum, a preparation in most general use, requires to be exposed to a temperature of 310° for two hours and a half. The same results, however, may be attained by exposing the material to heat for a greater period of time at a diminished temperature, but the time and degrees of heat mentioned are those usually employed. The preparations of gutta-percha require a longer exposure of the gum to the same or an increased temperature to effect the requisite degree of hardening, varying, according to the particular compounds used, from four to six hours at a heat of from 300° to 330°.

When vulcanization is completed, the steam is discharged from the chamber through the safety-valve, and the cases removed; the two parts of the flask are then separated and all portions of plaster detached from the rubber. Adhering tin-foil may be readily removed by placing the piece in a glass vessel containing dilute muriatic acid and subjecting it for a few minutes to a moderate heat.

Finishing.—The rougher and more redundant portions of the indurated material are first removed with coarse files or rasps, following with those of a finer cut until all parts of the piece accessible to such instruments are reduced to nearly the thickness required. The excess of material on the lingual side of the plate and other

points not admitting of the use of the file, is removed with scrapers of various forms, some of which are shown in Fig. 96. After nearly the desired thickness is thus ob-

FIG. 96.



tained and the surface rendered somewhat smooth and uniform, a still further reduction is obtained with the use of sand-paper, using first the coarser and finishing with the finer kinds. The final polish is then given to the surface, first with the use of finely pulverized pumice stone, and afterwards with either prepared chalk or whiting. The best method of applying the pumice is with flat circular pieces of cork of various sizes, which may be readily formed by attaching them to the lathe and reducing them to the proper size and shape with a file while revolving. The chalk or whiting may be applied upon a cotton or ordinary brush wheel. In the use of the polishing materials, the latter should be kept constantly and freely saturated with cold water throughout the operation.

Partial dentures constructed in a base of vulcanizable gums.—The foregoing description of the method of form-

ing entire dentures in a base of indurated gums, together with a knowledge of the manner of constructing parts of sets of teeth mounted on metallic plates, will render any extended description of the former process, as it relates to partial pieces, unnecessary. A gutta-percha plate of the required thickness and dimensions is accurately molded to a model of the parts, the narrower portions passing into the spaces between the teeth being stiffened by doubling the plate at these points with an additional strip of gutta-percha warmed at the lamp and made to adhere to the primary plate. The central portion of the plate may also be temporarily supported, and its form preserved, by filling in the concavity with a layer of stiffened wax. A rim of wax is then attached in the usual manner to those portions of the plate occupying the vacuities on the ridge, when the plate is placed in the mouth and an impression of the points of the opposing teeth secured; it is then removed, reapplied to the model, and the heel of the latter extended posteriorly to form an articulating surface for the remaining portion of the antagonizing model,—the latter being formed in the ordinary way. The teeth are then fitted to the vacuities in precisely the same as when metallic plates are used, and the wax trimmed to the required fullness. The plate, with the teeth attached, is then placed in the mouth and any necessary corrections made in the arrangement of the teeth; after which it is removed and re-adjusted to the plaster model, before doing which, how-

ever, the plaster teeth should be cut away from the model to within a half a line or a line of where they unite with the body of the latter, thus leaving a narrow shoulder to each tooth to indicate the exact extension of the base at these points when dressing the vulcanized piece. The plaster teeth are removed to permit a more ready separation of the two parts of the matrix, for, if permitted to remain entire, they would necessarily be broken in forcing the sections of the mold apart, and the fractures, in many instances, would extend in upon the face of the model. The temporary plate and teeth are now placed upon the model, the latter encased in plaster in the lower section of the flask in the manner heretofore described, and all subsequent steps in the operation conducted in the same manner as described in connection with full sets. The necessity of furnishing the most perfect facilities for the escape of surplus material when forming partial dentures has already been fully discussed, and should be carefully considered. Whenever admissible, preference, in this as in other processes, should always be given to atmospheric pressure plates.

Repairing.—If a tooth or a series of teeth have been broken, or any change in the position of a tooth is to be made, the latter or remaining portions of the former are first removed, and an irregular shaped groove or dove-tail formed in the base occupying the space to be supplied; into this the teeth are properly arranged and and supported with wax; the dove-tail is then filled in

with wax even with the surrounding surface. Plaster is now poured into the lower section of the flask and all parts of the piece except the wax and teeth of replacement imbedded, palatal side down, in the plaster. Upon this, plaster is poured, filling the upper ring, and when sufficiently hard, the flask is separated, the wax removed, and gum packed into the cavity around the tooth or teeth. Grooves are then cut extending out from the mold; the two sections heated and forced together, and the process of vulcanizing conducted as before described, the same time and degrees of heat being required as in the first instance. The extra heat employed renders the surface of the material, previously vulcanized, somewhat darker, to remove which, it is recommended to moisten the surface with dilute nitric acid for a short time, after which the piece is thoroughly washed and then placed for a few minutes in an alkaline solution to remove any remaining traces of acid. It is also recommended to immerse the case in alcohol for five or six hours, and then expose it to the rays of the sun for a like period of time.

CHAPTER XVI.

CHEOPLASTIC METHOD OF MOUNTING ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

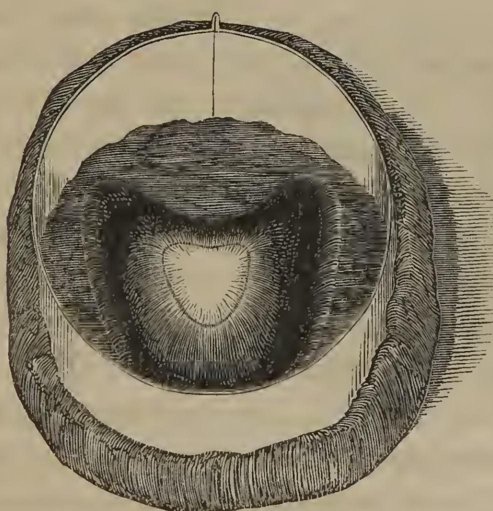
The method of mounting artificial teeth indicated by the above caption is one of comparatively recent introduction, and consists in forming the base of a metallic compound cast in a matrix, a part of the latter being formed by the plaster model of the mouth. The alloy used is composed chiefly of tin, silver and bismuth, with a small proportion of antimony.

Notwithstanding the above process was introduced and recommended to the profession under circumstances that promised to command a general recognition of its merits, yet such has been the pervading distrust of its fitness for the purpose under consideration, both in respect to the chemical properties of the alloy and its suitableness in other particulars as a base, that the method has never, at any time, been very generally adopted, and at present is only in limited use in the practice of those who were its earliest and most zealous advocates.

Method of constructing entire and partial dentures in a base of cheoplastic metal.—In constructing entire dentures in a base of cheoplastic metal, an impression of the mouth is first secured either in wax or plaster. If an air chamber is to be formed in the plate, a cavity of the

required depth and dimensions may be cut in the proper place in the impression. The latter is then varnished and surrounded with some plastic substance, as putty or clay, building it out on a level with the upper margin of the cup. The impression is then enclosed within a sheet-iron cup from one to two inches in depth, and sufficiently large to leave a space of a fourth or half an inch between it and the borders of the impression, except at the heel of the cup, where it should extend posteriorily from an inch and a half to two inches, to form an articulating surface for the antagonizing portion of the model. The lower edge of the ring is imbedded somewhat in the putty to confine the plaster when poured into the former.

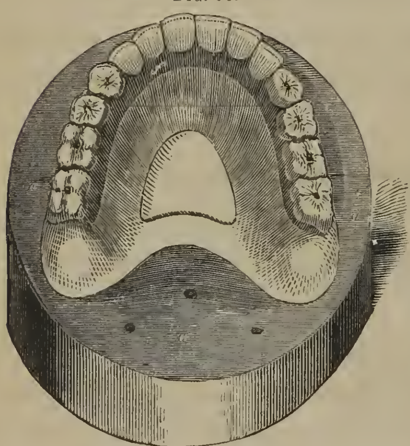
Fig. 97.



The impression thus arranged preparatory to obtaining the model therefrom is shown in Fig. 97. The surface

of the impression, putty and inside of the ring are now oiled, and the latter filled in with the plaster mixture for the model, the former consisting of equal parts by weight of plaster and finely pulverized felspar mixed with sufficient water to form a batter of the ordinary consistence. The model thus compounded will be found to be somewhat friable and will require careful manipulation in handling to prevent defacement of the surface. When the plaster is sufficiently hard, the ring and putty are removed and the model and impression carefully separated. The surface of the model extending out from the sides of the ridge is now trimmed smooth and two or more conical-shaped holes formed in the surface posterior to the heel of the model; (Fig. 98,) when all parts of the model except the alveolar ridge and palatal arch are varnished. A temporary plate of thick tin-foil supported on the inside with a layer of wax, or a thin sheet of gutta percha, is next accurately molded to that part of the model to which the base is ultimately to be applied. A rim of softened wax of the proper width is then attached to the ridge of the plate when the latter is placed in the mouth and an im-

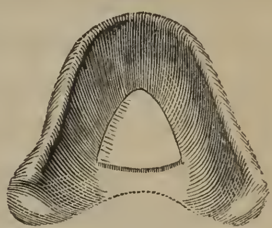
Fig. 98.



pression of the ends of the opposing teeth secured in the usual manner. The plate and wax are then removed and reapplied to the model, (Fig. 100,) and the antagonizing portion obtained in the manner heretofore described.

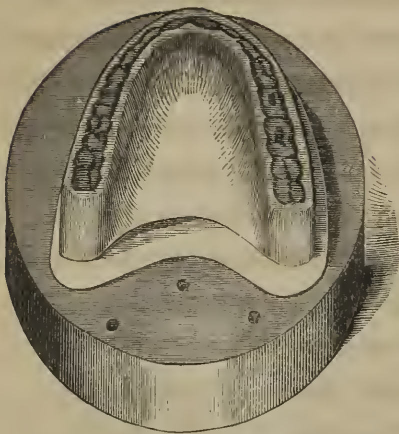
The two parts of the antagonizing model being separated, and the plate and wax removed, a second plate of tin-foil or gutta percha is carefully molded to the face of the model, (Fig. 99,) to the border of which a rim of wax is attached as before, and having placed the plate in the mouth, the former is trimmed until the proper fullness and contour of the parts are restored; the plate is then removed and replaced upon the model. On this plate the teeth are arranged and are temporarily supported by the rim of wax, the latter serving also as a guide in respect to the fullness and particular outline to be given to the arch.

Fig. 99.



In the selection and arrangement of the teeth the same general principles should govern the operator as those that apply to other processes and which have already been fully stated in a former part of the work. It is not essential, however, in the present case, that the base of the teeth should be very accurately ground to the plate, as all interstices at such points will ultimately be filled in with metal; but where they unite with each other laterally, the co-aptation should be as perfect as possible to prevent the intrusion of the fluid metal.

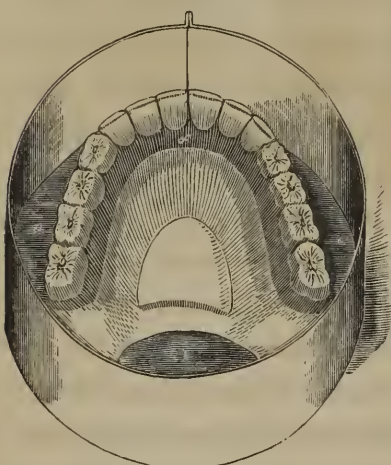
Fig. 100.



The teeth manufactured expressly for this process have no pins, but are very securely attached to the base by means of grooves or dove-tails formed in their lingual surfaces, with sometimes holes running through the bodies of the bicuspids and molars and terminating in small depressions on their grinding surfaces.

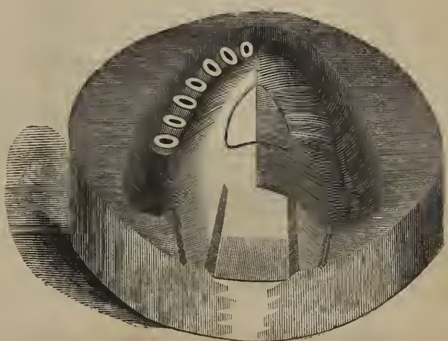
The teeth arranged, the wax supporting them on the inside is trimmed, and a rim of the same formed around the plate extremities of the teeth on the outside in the same manner as described when treating of the vulcanite base in the preceding chapter. The plate, with the teeth attached, is now placed upon the plaster model. (Fig. 98,) and the latter surrounded with a sheet-iron ring wide enough to extend half an inch or more above the points of the teeth. (Fig. 101.)

Fig. 101.



All exposed portions of the surface of the model, plate and wax are now oiled, and a batter of plaster and spar poured into the ring filling it even with the upper edge. When the plaster is sufficiently hard, the ring is removed, and the two parts of the matrix separated. All portions of the tin-foil or gutta percha, and wax, are then thoroughly removed. A groove is then cut in the surface of that portion of the matrix containing the teeth, extending it from the centre of the posterior margin of the mold to the edge of the plaster, and also two small channels on each side, (Fig. 102); into the former, the fluid metal is poured filling the matrix, and through the latter, the contained air is freely expelled as the former flows in.

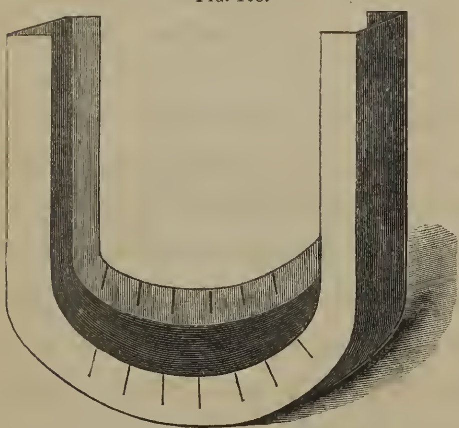
Fig. 102.



In the formation of a matrix for the inferior maxilla, the groove through which the metal passes to the mold should be extended through to the anterior part of the arch, entering the matrix at a point corresponding with the symphysis of the jaw; the vents, as in the case of the superior arch, extending back from each heel of the matrix. The surfaces of both parts of the matrix are then coated with a carbonaceous deposit by holding them for a few minutes over

the flame of a tallow candle, oil lamp or gas jet, when the two pieces are bound firmly together by wrapping them with wire. Before pouring the metal, the joint formed by the union of the two sections of the mold should be well luted, and to prevent still more effectually the liquid metal from escaping, the matrix may be encased in a sheet-iron box as represented in Fig. 103, the inside surface of which is first coated with a mixture of plaster and spar, and the matrix imbedded in it with the groove and vents upward. The mold thus prepared should then be thoroughly dried by exposing it to a heat of from 300° to 400° in a furnace, stove or oven, or other suitable place, for five or six hours. It is then removed and supported in an upright position, and the melted alloy poured carefully but quickly into the matrix until full.

Fig. 103.



The manipulations concerned in the formation of entire dentures for the inferior maxilla differ from those described in connection with full arches above, only so far as the peculiar configuration of the under differs from that of the upper jaw, and which suggests no material

modification of practice except as it relates to the provision made for the introduction of the fused metal into the matrix, the manner of forming the channel having been already adverted to.

In the construction of parts of sets of teeth in a base of the alloy under consideration, the same general plan is adopted as described in connection with the use of vulcanizable gums, with such modifications only as are suggested by the nature of the material employed; a further description of the process, therefore, is deemed unnecessary.

Finishing.—The palatal face of the plate should be preserved in the condition in which it is first cast, as any filing or scraping of the surface will tend to impair its adaptation to the parts of the mouth to which it is applied, and to that extent affect its stability. The roughness of surface and all excess of metal around the borders of the teeth and on the lingual side of the plate are removed with suitably formed files and scrapers, and the use of these instruments should be continued until the plate at all points is reduced to the required form and thickness, when additional smoothness and uniformity are given to the surface by rubbing the latter thoroughly first with coarse and afterward with fine emery cloth. The piece is then washed in soap and water, when it is burnished and polished with a revolving brush at the lathe with chalk. The case is now put into a strong solution of caustic potash and boiled

for a few minutes, when it is removed, again washed in water, dried, and repolished with chalk.

Repairing.—When it becomes necessary to replace one or more teeth that, from accident or other cause, have been broken or otherwise injured, the piece may be readily repaired in the following manner. First remove any remaining fragments of the tooth and then file a groove in the base underneath; into the space thus formed arrange properly the tooth of replacement and fill into the groove with wax until the parts formerly occupied by the metal are fully restored. To the surface of the wax on the lingual side of the tooth a roll of wax in the form of an elongated cone is attached to the base, extending up half an inch above the summits of the teeth. The apex of the wax cone may be an eighth, and the base half an inch in diameter. To the surface of the wax on the opposite side of the tooth, another smaller roll of wax is also attached, extending a like distance above the teeth. A sheet-iron ring similar to the one used in forming the model is now filled one-third full of a mixture of plaster and spar of the ordinary consistence, and into this the plate is imbedded and the ring filled with plaster, the ends of the wax rolls extending a short distance above the surface of the former. The wax stems are now withdrawn and remaining portions encased in the plaster melted by throwing the flame of a spirit lamp into the openings behind and in front of the tooth. The mold is then dried and heated

as in the first instance and the melted metal poured into the opening in the plaster posterior to the tooth until it is seen to rise in the vent hole in front. The plaster is then cut away and the piece removed and the added portions of the metal around the tooth dressed and finished in the ordinary manner.

CHAPTER XVII.

DEFECTS OF THE PALATAL ORGANS, AND THEIR TREATMENT BY ARTIFICIAL MEANS.

Defects of the palatal organs are usually classed as accidental and congenital. *Accidental* lesions of the palate are such as result from diseased action in the parts, and present themselves as simple perforations of indefinite or irregular form and of variable dimensions, and are sometimes limited to the hard palate, or are confined to the velum, though frequently extending to the alveolar border, vomer, and turbinated bones, involving, in extreme cases, all or a greater part of the structures mentioned. *Congenital* defects of the palate occur as original malformations of the parts, constituting clefts or fissures of greater or less extent and magnitude, and commonly occupy the median line of the palatal vault. The fissure, as in the former case, is sometimes confined to the soft palate or velum palati, extending, in some instances, a short distance into the posterior border of the hard palate; or it may consist in a separation of the palatal bones and palatal processes of the superior maxilla, the velum remaining *in tact*, or with but a partial cleft extending into its anterior margin. In connection with fissure of the hard and soft palate, the malformation frequently involves the alveolar border in front, the fissure at this

point embracing, sometimes, the entire space ordinarily occupied by the central and lateral incisors, though frequently of less extent; while the teeth are either absent or much displaced. When the fissure extends to the upper lip, the latter is divided vertically in one or two places, constituting either single or double hare-lip. Other forms of palatal fissures are characterized by a complete separation of all the parts mentioned, and communicating as they do with the nasal cavities, with the absence sometimes of all those parts constituting the floor of the nostrils, and portions or all of the vomer and turbinated bones, forming an immense and irregularly shaped cavity, the lesion, as it relates to the performance of the important functions peculiar to the parts implicated, becomes one of the most serious character. Speech, in most cases, is rendered very imperfect, and, in the graver cases, the patients enunciation is almost wholly unintelligible. Prehension and mastication of food are performed with more or less difficulty, substances, from their tendency to pass into the fosse above, being less under the control of the tongue; and in cases complicated with a changed or abnormal relation of the teeth, consequent either upon undue approximation or expansion of the lateral walls of the maxillary arch, the function becomes still more embarrassed. Deglutition is likewise obstructed in proportion to the extent and location of the fissure, the act being sometimes performed with great difficulty in those cases where complete division of the

soft palate exists, the food being projected into the nares as the muscles of the fauces contract upon it.

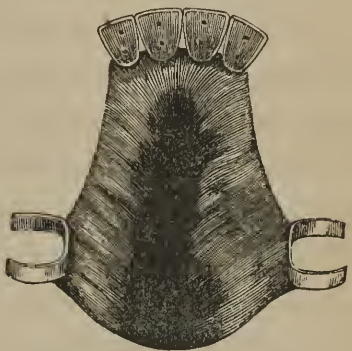
The means employed for the relief of congenital defects of the palatal organs, are either surgical or mechanical, but as a consideration of the former does not come properly within scope or design of the present work, the latter only will be considered. In respect to the artificial appliances used, but few contributions have been made to this important specialty of mechanical practice within the past few years, the improvements in the construction and application of palatal obturators or artificial palates having been chiefly confined to fixtures designed to supply the loss and establish the functions of the velum or soft palate.

In cases where the opening is confined to the hard palate, it will be sufficient to construct, and attach to one or more of the natural teeth on each side, a plain plate of gold or other suitable substance, sufficiently large to extend a short distance from the margins of the fissure all round. (Fig. 104.) The plate should be accurately adapted to the parts on which it rests, and the clasps carefully and skillfully fitted and adjusted to the teeth, while the latter should be firm and in a healthy condition, and in all other respects

Fig. 104.

well adapted to purposes of support. If, in conjunction with the fissure, vacuities exist in the ridge to be supplied with artificial teeth, the plate may be made to extend to the border at such places, and porcelain teeth mounted on the base in the manner usually practiced. Fig. 105 represents a palatal obturator to which are attached the central and lateral incisors; other modifications in the form of the plate, where teeth are to be replaced, will be suggested by the special requirements of each individual case.

Fig. 105.



In cases of congenital fissure of the velum where a complete and widely extended separation exists, and which is ordinarily incapable of successful treatment by surgical means, various ingenious contrivances have been resorted to, from time to time, to supply, by mechanical means, the loss of substance in such a manner as to fulfill, more or less perfectly, the functions peculiar to this structure. To C. W. Stearns, surgeon, formerly of London, whose extended researches into the nature of palatal fissures and successful treatment of them has so intimately identified him with this specialty of dental practice, the profession is greatly indebted for the most perfect and successful contrivances which have ever been

devised for the relief of the defects in question. Another and very recent contribution has been added to this department by Mr. Stearns, entitled "Palatine Fissure: Its Remedy by Artificial Means Considered." The able and highly instructive character of this paper would doubtless render the introduction of it without abridgment acceptable. Omitting, however, the introductory portion, the author feels fully warranted in presenting to the reader the somewhat lengthy extract which follows.

"Cases of Congenital Palatine Fissure may all be classed under two species. 1st. Those in which the fissure extends only through the velum or soft palate, and leaving the palatine or maxillary bones forming the roof entire. 2nd. When the fissure extends quite through the roof and alveolar sockets, and usually complicated with hare-lip; but, as happens in other malformations, these two classes often run into one another. Thus, I have seen several cases of the first class where the fissure extended from one-eighth to three-quarters of an inch into the posterior margin of the bony roof;—one case where the roof was entire, but yet there had been a double hare-lip. Another case, I recollect, where the lip was full and perfect, yet the roof was widely fissured quite up to the alveolar sockets, but leaving the teeth straight and regularly developed.

"The late Doctor Arnott, of London, told me of a case he once saw, of a laboring man, whom he noticed was much given to the luxury of eating figs. Upon inquiring

the reason of his thus indulging his appetite, he learned that the poor man had a large congenital opening through the bony roof, while the velum was entire, and he used the skin of the fig to close the opening, as he found that by so doing he could speak much better!

"In cases of the first class, the fissure through the velum is a symmetrical parabolic arch of muscular tissue, having its apex at the margin of the palatine bones; and, on each side, about an inch below, a small fleshy nipple-like process, and which are obviously the remains of the imperfectly developed uvula. Continuing downwards, as far or below the tonsils, the muscular fibres join and interlace with those of the pharynx, and in part with the base of the tongue, or are inserted into the bone.

"This class of cases I regard as offering by far the most favorable chances for relief by the use of an artificial velum; and it is the only sort that the surgeon is ever justified in attempting to close by suture. These cases differ greatly from each other in the volume of muscular tissue forming the sides of the fissure, being in some subjects so thin and tense as to have but little muscular movement; in others they are round and thick, so that when in a state of relaxation or repose, they are seen to approach very near together. These are the rare cases where surgeons have succeeded by a masterly effort of operative skill in closing the opening by suture. They have also attempted numberless other cases, where, from scantiness of material, the operation has failed to

result in a union. Dr. Arnott (author of Elements of Physics) told me of a case he had seen where the imperfection of speech was very considerable, yet, on looking into the mouth, the velum at first sight appeared perfect. By the slightest movement of the palatine muscles, however, as in speaking, the two halves of the velum were instantaneously contracted and drawn to each side so as to show a very considerable opening, which allowed the voice to escape by the nasal passages. In a state of rest the edges of the fissure were closely in contact, the effort to speak drew them to each side as one would a window-curtain. Such a case would not only offer no chance for the introduction of any artificial appliance, but plainly invite a surgical operation.

"A great many of the less favorable cases of this class have been operated upon by eminent surgeons with various results. In two that I have seen, a firm union, with some degree of mobility, had been secured for a short distance below the palatine bones. In one, that Mr. Liston described to me as occurring in his own practice—a well-grown girl at the London (University) Hospital—he succeeded in getting a union for the whole length of the fissure; but after the parts were healed he found that, instead of a serviceable velum or muscular valve, capable of closing, narrowing, or opening the nasal passages at will, he had a rigid, fleshy septum stretched across from side to side; and this septum was not only in the way of the ordinary movements of the tongue, so

as to interfere with deglutition, but it also had the effect to divide or split the column of sound as it issued from the glottis, and so turn a part of it through the nasal passages. He was so dissatisfied with this result, that with one stroke of his bistoury he slit down the newly-formed velum, and undid, in a moment, all that a long and skillful operation, followed by patient attendance, had achieved.

"Other cases that have been operated upon are to be met with, where, by desecting off and freeing the soft parts to some extent, from their attachments to the palatine bones, the surgeon has sought to overcome the difficulties caused by the want of material, and consequent rigidity of the parts. In this way a union at the lower part of the fissure has been secured; but there remained an oval-shaped hole above and just below the margin of the bone, where the edges presented scarcely more than a duplicature of the mucous membrane to be scarified and forcibly drawn together by suture.

"There will usually be found a great uniformity in the shape and general appearance of the fissure in cases ranked under this first division, and the two sides of the opening are quite symmetrical.

"In cases of the second class, where the opening extends through the palatine and maxillary bones, and usually accompanied by a hare-lip, which has been closed by a surgical operation in early childhood, a great diversity in the form and size of the opening will be met

with. Upon first looking into the mouth, a large, shapeless cavity will be seen; but the fleshy part of the fissure is more symmetrical than that of the bony part, resembling, in this respect, the cases of the first class, excepting that the gap is usually much broader. The irregularity of shape is owing to the malformation and malposition of the bones forming the roof. Though the fissure through the bones may be nearly on the median line, yet, in the great majority of instances, the vomer or septum nasi is brought down so as to meet and articulate on one side with the plate of one or the other of the superior maxillary bones, thus forming one tolerably perfect *naris*, generally the one on the right side, while the other *naris* has no floor, but makes one continuous cavity with the fauces, extending upwards to the base of the cranium. In some cases of this second class, the opening will be found more symmetrical, having the septum or vomer incomplete, and which is seen dependent from the base of the cranium on the median line, but not reaching down far enough to intersect and unite with the plate of either maxillary bone, so that neither naris is completely inclosed, but both together form one continuous cavity with the mouth, the incomplete plates of the maxillary bones making a projecting ledge or shelf on each side, continuous with the fleshy edges below. And it is these firm projecting ledges, on one or both sides, that I make available for supporting the instrument, and keeping it firmly fixed in its place. The opening of

the fissure through the alveolar sockets may be so wide as to equal the space occupied by two, four, or even six, of the front teeth, but commonly the edges of the bony fissure at the region of the teeth are closely in contact, so as to seem, in fact, united, but any thin substance, like a quill tooth-pick, may be passed freely between them, showing that there is no continuity, but only close contact.

"The cases belonging to this second class, as just described, will be found to require, from any one undertaking to relieve them by artificial appliances, all the skill in manipulation that he is master of, both in copying the malformation by impressions taken with plastic substances, and after that, making an instrument from his models thus obtained that will correspond to the shape of the parts to be fitted at points *not visible*, as well as those in plain sight. *Hoc opus hic labor.*

"The conditions required to be fulfilled in any successful attempt to construct an artificial palate, or 'obturator,' as it has been more briefly named, are a nearly perfect adaptation to the irregular shape of the opening, and a combination of the properties of elasticity and durability in the material of which the instrument is constructed. The vulcanized '*soft rubber*' possesses these in a remarkable degree, and which, added to its highly plastic quality, leaves hardly any better material for the purpose to be desired. In fact, the vulcanized 'soft rubber' may, with some propriety, be termed, in this connection, *artifi-*

cial flesh, and the vulcanized 'hard rubber,' now much used by dentists, may, with even greater reason, be called *artificial bone.* The properties of the vulcanized soft rubber, in respect to durability, are quite remarkable when we reflect that, placed in the mouth, it is there subjected to the combined action of *five* destructive agents, viz: animal heat, moisture, motion, the salivary acids, and the oils of the food,—all acting together and incessantly upon it. When this is molded to the shape required, and with a high degree of elasticity, it is yet flexible and soft as the finest kid, we may say that we are supplied with just the right material; and it only remains for us to make a good use of it. The *degree* of elasticity is a point that must be carefully attended to in manipulating the rubber, for, if the velum is made too hard and stiff, it will cause pain, and otherwise embarass the action of the soft muscular parts with which it is in contact. If, on the other hand, it is too soft and yielding, it will not react or expand quickly enough, but will be liable to be clogged by food and the viscid fluids of the mouth; nor will it long sustain, as it must do, not only the ordinary pressure upon it in speaking and swallowing, but also the more violent and spasmodic efforts of coughing, sneezing, vomiting, etc.

"I will now proceed to explain, as clearly as I am able to do in words, the plans and methods I have used in adapting artificial vela to relieve the different forms of palatine fissure already described; and trust, by the aid

of the accompanying drawings, to make myself understood by those who may happen to be especially interested in the subject.

"All cases require, in the first place, a plate or roof of gold, or some other convenient substance to be prepared, to the posterior margin of which the flexible and elastic velum is to be attached. Where the fissure does not extend into the bony roof, as in cases belonging to the first class, a narrow arch of gold plate from the molar teeth on one side to those on the other, will be sufficient for our purpose. But when, as in cases of the second class, the opening reaches far forward, then an artificial roof has also to be supplied; and plates made of gold are found too heavy; but the valcanized hard rubber, by its combined lightness and strength, is much to be preferred. The plate or artificial roof having been properly fitted to the bony surface, the making of the velum is next to be proceeded with.

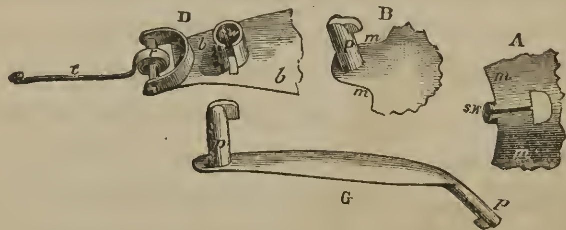
"As the velum is to be fitted to the fleshy, and therefore mobile region of the fissure, its shape and size must be determined by a resort to some expedients other than what are used to get a cast of the bony portions; for it is manifest that however soft and plastic the wax or other substance might be, the sensitiveness of the fleshy parts would cause them to retract instantly from contact with foreign substance; so that the form of the fissure must, for the moment, be changed to something different from what it is while in a state of rest. Added to this,

the degree of pressure, however slight, required for taking an impression of parts that in fact have no more solidity than the lips or the tongue, must of necessity cause some displacement; I therefore resort to other means for getting the shape of the lower portion; but for the upper portion, say half or three-quarters of an inch above and below the point where the muscular fibres are attached to the bones, I am enabled to get pretty accurate plastic impressions. I have always found much greater irregularity in the form of the soft parts, *behind* the edges of the opening, and which are out of view, than is seen on the anterior surfaces, which are pretty symmetrical. This irregularity of the shape of the posterior surfaces is caused by the abnormal position and form of the palatine bones, to the edges of which the long slender muscles forming the columns of the soft palate are superiorly attached. The artificial roof being extended backwards to a point where the fleshy tissue begins, I first get the form and breadth of the opening from that point as far down as the little pendent nipple-like processes, by using a lamina of wax, not softened, attached obliquely to the end of a stick, paring the edges with a knife until the wax can be passed backwards and forwards through the fissure, and is seen to correspond in shape. This lamina of wax, thus brought to the required shape, I afterwards extend downwards by the addition of another and broader piece, which reaches as low as the union of the slender palatine muscles with the base

of the tongue and the pharyngeus. The pattern thus obtained represents the flat, central portion, or *velum-proper*, but to which afterwards are added certain lateral appendages, covering both the anterior and posterior surfaces of the fissure, and considerably increasing its size. To the edges of this flat pattern are added two wings of thin wax, extending from the top about one inch downwards, and projecting obliquely forwards, and so bent and shaped as to cover the anterior surfaces of the fleshy sides of the fissure. These wings are indicated by the letters *w w*, in figures 107, 108, and 109, representing the rubber velum. The lower margin of the wax pattern very nearly touches the muscular surface of the pharynx, and its rounded corners enter the narrow cavities made by the junction of the long palatine muscles with the pharyngeus, by which I ascertain the whole length required for the velum-proper, and also its greatest breadth at its lower end. I now proceed with a wire probe, bent at right angles half an inch from the point, and which is guarded with a pellet of wax, to sound the depth and shape of the cavity behind the columns or edges of the fissure for some distance upwards. Lastly, I take a small stick of soft wood, with a handle shaped on one end, and a flattened bulb-shaped head, carved obliquely, on the other end. This bulb is to be covered with softened wax or warm gutta-percha, and then by passing it through the fissure, and drawing it forwards and upwards, I am able to get an impression of the shape

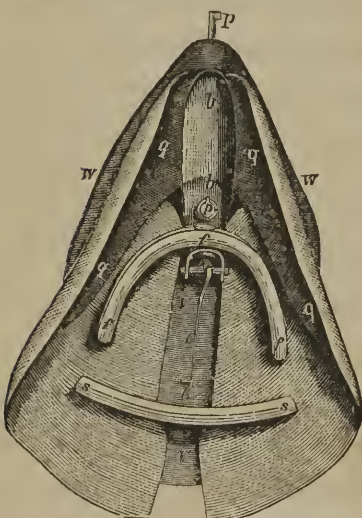
and size of the cavity above, and which is hidden from view by the projecting edges of the fissure. The head

Fig. 106. Gold Attachments.—View considerably enlarged.



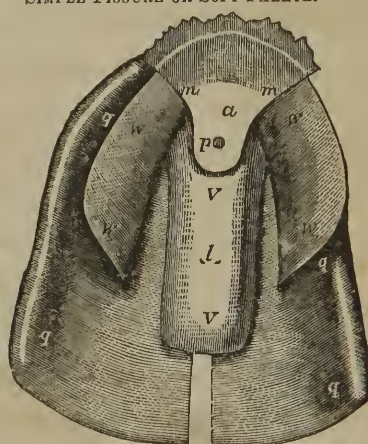
A and *B*, portions from posterior margin of roof-plate; *p*, toothed pin or pivot; *s w*, slotted tube or swivel; *r*, chonchoidal spring, with hooked tail-piece *t*.

Fig. 107. Posterior view of Rubber Velum for case partially closed by Surgical Operation.



W W, anterior wings; *q q*, posterior do.; *f f f*, upper bow or spring; *s s*, lower do.; other letters the same as in Fig. 106.

Fig. 108. Anterior view of Velum for Simple Fissure or Soft Palate.

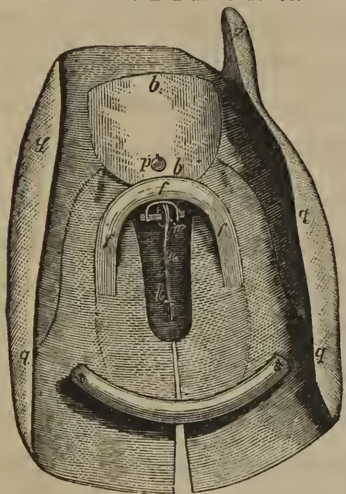


W W, wings covering anterior surface; *q q*, parts of velum lying behind the fissure; *V V*, valve covering the central opening; *m m* and *p* are the same as in Fig. 106.

of the stick must have a broad, deep notch cut in its upper margin, so as to clear or admit the septum when

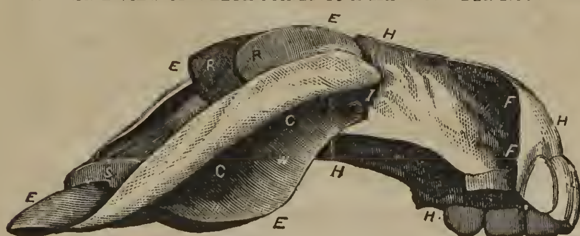
taking the impression. By this last process we gain a knowledge of the shape of parts not visible to the eye, and where it is of great importance to have the artificial velum well fitted. By the aid of this impression I proceed to attach to each side of the wax model, and behind the wings, a longer and thicker lamina of wax, projecting obliquely backwards, so that when placed in the mouth it will cover the posterior surface of the fleshy edges of the fissure, and also prolonged upwards half an inch or more beyond the upper end of the velum-proper, so as to lie upon the projecting bony shelf. This

FIG. 109. POSTERIOR VIEW OF VELUM MADE FOR HARE-LIP SUBJECT.



Same letters refer to similar parts as in Figs. 107 and 108.

FIG. 110.* SIDE VIEW OF VELUM JOINED TO A HARD RUBBER ROOF-PLATE.



E E E E, velum; *H H H H*, the hard rubber roof-plate; *C C*, the groove at side of velum to receive the edges of fissure; *R R*, rubber processes rising vertically each side of the vomer; *s*, lower rubber bow or spring.

* Copies of the above engravings were kindly furnished by Dr. Stearns, for which, and other courtesies, the author would express his obligations.

posterior appendage is indicated by the letters *q q* in the drawings, and it will be seen that by the two on each side a groove (*c c*, Fig. 110.) is formed along the edge of the velum, adapted to receive the edges of the fissure. This wax model then, with its lateral wings, and also the velum to be made from it, comes to be of a size very much larger than the mere width and length of the gap which it is designed to close. Many of those I have made, when held in the hand and examined, appeared truly formidable from their great size, but when looked at in the mouth, appeared small enough; in fact, I never yet had to alter my models to make a velum smaller, but have often had to enlarge them. From this it will also be understood that an artificial velum must be something more than a mere curtain suspended in the plane of the fissure, and just touching its fleshy edges when at rest. Such an appliance could effect no improvement in the speech, and would be liable to very frequent displacement by coughing, sneezing, or even the ordinary act of swallowing. But if the velum is made as large as the surrounding parts will possibly admit, it is then acted upon with force by the muscles in contact with it, and, what is also of great importance, it is, in great part, self-supporting, and even aids to bear the weight of the solid roof to which it is attached; so that in fact the only real necessity for an artificial roof is to fill up the gap in the bones, if there is one, and also to keep the velum from being carried backwards in swallowing.

"If the wax model, as thus completed is attached obliquely to the end of a slender stick, like a penholder, or held in a port-crayon, it may be tried in the mouth, by passing it far down into the pharynx, so as to get its upper end behind the edges of the fissure, and then raising it, and at the same time drawing it gently forwards, when the operator may see how nearly he has brought it to the required form. If it is pretty well adapted, the model will settle into its place, and show some disposition to stay there. This trial should be made slowly and gently, for the wax being inelastic, is not suited to yield to the spasmodic coutraction of the muscular parts, and therefore patients should be cautioned to control themselves for a few moments during the process.

"From this wax model, the making of a mold on which to vulcanize the elastic rubber velum, is next to be proceeded with. This mold consists of several detached pieces, which when laid together, inclose a hollow space of the same form as the rubber velum to be vulcanized in it. For making this mold, either plaster-paris, hard wood, or type-metal may be used. A plaster mold will serve for only once, but from hard wood or type-metal molds an indefinite number of vela may be vulcanized. It would be difficult, by mere verbal description, to specify both the number and exact shape of the several pieces of which the mold consists; nor, perhaps, is this necessary, as any one acquainted with the process of 'piece molding,' as practised by sculptors and modellers, or that of 'false coring,' used by

bronze-figure casters, can contrive the proper arrangement of the several pieces after understanding the anatomy (if I may be allowed the word) of the several parts of the artificial velum.

"Though I have carved most of my molds from blocks of close grained mahogany, those who will hereafter undertake these cases had better use type-metal or some similar compound; for wood can only be used for vulcanizing with a 'dry heat,' and most, if not all, of the rubber compounds now made by the manufacturers, require to be vulcanized by a 'steam heat,' and will not vulcanize in the old way by a dry heat. The molds consist chiefly of three pieces, if made of wood, or more conveniently of four pieces, if made of metal, viz: one large piece for the base, on which the posterior surface of the velum is formed; two lateral or cheek-pieces to form the wings *w w*, *q q*, and the groove *c c*; and a top-piece or cope, as broad as the base, which closes over the other three pieces, and gives form to the anterior surface of the velum. Thus all the pieces of the mold, which placed in their relative position and locked together, will inclose a vacant space of the shape required for the rubber velum to be vulcanized in it.

"Having explained thus generally my methods of proceeding, applicable alike to all artificial vela; it now remains for me to illustrate the subject in a still more particular and practical manner, by taking cases from each class, and describing minutely and as intelligibly as I am able, what I regard as essential to the purpose.

"Let us begin with a case where the natural roof is entire, or nearly so, the lesion being limited to the soft parts or natural *velum palati*. For this an arch of gold plate or 'hard rubber' is first to be fitted to the roof of the mouth, and secured by clasps to the teeth, or by atmospheric pressure. This plate should extend backwards so far that its posterior margin may be about on a line with the apex of the fissure (*B*, Fig. 106). Just at this middle point a strong *tongue-like process*, about one-quarter of an inch wide and three-eighths long, projects from it obliquely downwards and backwards in the plane of the fissure. On the back, and near the end of this process, is inserted at a right angle to it, a pin or *pivot*, *p*, of thick gold wire, about one-fourth of an inch long, and with a small tooth-like process at the extremity. A short gold tube, *s w* (*D*), with a slot in one side, is then made to be slipped on to the pin, so that, if turned either way, it is held there by the tooth at the end of the pin. This slotted tube, or *swivel*, *s w*, is then soldered on to the upper side of a *back-plate*, *b b*, which is a small gold plate bent or swedged to correspond to the posterior surface of the rubber velum at its upper end—the velum to have a hole through it corresponding to the position of the pin on the back of the tongue piece and the swivel on the back plate. By passing the pivot through the hole in the velum, and the swivel of the back plate laid on above it, and then turning it a quarter round, the velum will then be held between the two plates, and thus

securely attached to the roof. The velum can turn on the pivot but very little while in the mouth, but taken out, it can be turned a quarter round, so that the tooth on the end can pass through the slot, and the two plates be detached.

"At the lower end of the back-plate, (*D*), *b b*, is a delicate *conchoidal spring*, *r* of flattened gold wire, terminating in a straight portion or *tail*, *t*, which passes through an eye or *loop* of wire, *l*, which is baked or vulcanized into the rubber. The necessity for this spring will be explained further on, when describing the parts of the rubber velum.

"In those cases that will sometimes present themselves, where the fissure has been closed by a surgical operation for a distance of one-half or three-fourths of an inch from the bone, I connect the velum to the roof by a method differing somewhat from that just described, that is by a *flexible* attachment. At the middle or highest point on the posterior margin of the roof plate, (*A*), *m m*, I insert a slotted tube or swivel, *s w*, horizontally from before backwards. I then take a piece of gold wire, about one-twentieth of an inch in diameter (*G*), and solder a tooth to one end, so that it may be passed into and held by the horizontal swivel in *A*. The middle portion of this wire is then flattened, by hammering very thin, so as to make of it a delicate and elastic spring, and somewhat flattened, also, quite to the lower end. On the back and upper side of the flattened lower end I

solder an upright toothed pivot, *p*, similar to that described on foregoing page, and which passes through a hole in the velum proper, near its apex, and then through the swivel on the back-plate, as before described. Thus it will be understood that in these cases two swivels are used—one horizontal, the other verticle. The spring formed by the flattened wire connects the velum to the roof-plate, and accomodates itself to the limited muscular movement from before backward, which may result from the partial union of the soft parts previously effected by the surgeon.

"I come now to the more formidable class of cases, where the fissure extends quite through the maxillary bones, and sometimes includes two or more of the alveolar sockets. In all cases of this sort I would advise the use of the 'hard rubber' for the roof-plate, gold being quite too heavy for so large an artificial roof as is required in these cases to fill the opening. The substance of the roof-plate is continued backwards to a point a little beyond that where the hard bony edges of the fissure end and the soft edges begin. No tongue-like continuation, nor any spring of flattened wire, as described in the preceding cases, is required for these; but near the posterior margin, and at the middle, a verticle toothed pivot is to be firmly vulcanized into the substance of the hard rubber, and which is to pass through the velum and socket on the back-plate, in the same manner as before described. The greater difficulty met with in

getting good casts of these cases, where the opening is so extended and irregularly shaped, requiring to be filled and fitted by an instrument of corresponding size and irregularity of shape, adds considerably to the labor. Figure 110 is a side view of an instrument made for a very wide fissure of this class. The 'hard rubber' roof-plate, *HH HH*, was made and several front teeth attached to it by a skillful dentist of this city. In adapting elastic velum, *EEEE*, I proceeded on the same plan as in other cases, excepting that the vomer, which was incomplete and pendent from the base of the cranium on the median line, was somewhat in my way. The letters *RR* indicate two pretty thick and firm rubber processes, on the upper or back side of the velum (admitting the vomer between them), and through which passed two horns, made by soldering a piece of gold wire across the back-plate. This latter feature I have never before found it necessary to adopt; but in order to give the velum firmness, without at the same time impairing its elasticity, I thought it desirable to steady it from a point as high up as possible.

"In this figure the letters *CC* indicate the lateral groove adapted to receive the fleshy edges of the fissure; and also at the letter *s* may be seen a portion of the bow or inferior rubber spring, on the back surface of the velum, connected with it only at its ends. This lower spring or bow is particularly necessary in vela of very large size, to insure their permanent elasticity.

"In this class of cases it will be found necessary to mold the under surface of the artificial hard rubber roof much deeper or more concave than is seen in the well-formed natural roof, and from the upper surface to carry up two walls or ridges of the material toward the base of the cranium, one on that side where the vomer articulates with the maxillary bone, to be inclined a little inwards towards the median line, the other to be inclined a little outwards, so as to overhang the projecting edge of the imperfect maxillary on that side. By looking at the drawing (Fig. 110) it will be seen that the upper or forward end of the elastic velum at *I* projects considerably forwards so as to overlap, for half an inch or more, the posterior margin of the hard rubber roof, and also that it is much broader on the side than the roof-plate. It is by this arrangement that the instrument is firmly held in its place at the middle and posterior region of the fissure, while the clasps and atmospheric pressure keep up the plate anteriorly. This is a very important point to be attended to, as giving an equal and easy support to the whole apparatus, which cannot be done *permanently* by clasps to the teeth, or any jointed mechanism in the artificial roof.

"Having now described the solid and metallic parts composing the roof and the attachments of the velum to it, I will now proceed to the different essential parts of the artificial soft rubber velum. The vela are all constructed on essentially the same plan for each of the

different varieties of fissure, but will differ greatly in their shape, size, and proportions. Thus in a case where the fleshy parts have been partly united by a surgical operation, the general shape of the velum will be that of an equilateral triangle (vide Fig. 107). For a case of fissure extending through the bony roof, the velum will have more the shape of an oblong quadrilateral (vide Fig. 109); and for simple fissure of the soft parts the velum will have a shape somewhat between the two other forms (vide Fig. 110). The engravings, Figs. 108, 109, 110, are views of the three forms that will be found adapted to all forms of *congenital* fissure, the same letters referring to similar parts in all.* The lower or posterior margin of the velum is curved, to adapt it to the shape of the pharynx, with which it comes in contact. The corners are rounded so as to enter and lie in the deep narrow spaces made on each side by the meeting of the lower extremity of the slender palato-pharyngeus muscle with the pharyngeus, and a little lower down than the tonsils which lie in front of them. The surface of the velum-proper at its lower third is slightly concave in front and convex behind, to adapt it to the shape of the pharynx, in which it is placed. Through the middle of the velum is a slit, extending from its lower margin up-

* For cases of syphilitic fissure no plan is here given, as I have never had but one subject, and in that one the opening was almost a full circle, about three-fourths of an inch across, the muscularity being much limited by cicatrices and attachments. The velum for this somewhat resembled a large flute key, both in its shape and action.

wards to one-half or more of its length. Above this slit (see the posterior views, Figs. 108 and 109), and continuous with it, is an opening about one-eighth or three-sixteenths of an inch wide, extending quite up to the junction of the velum with the roof-plate. In front of this opening, on the anterior surface of the velum (see Fig. 108), is a tongue-piece of rubber, half an inch wide, *V V*, attached to the velum at its upper end, so that it acts as a valve to close the opening through the middle just described; thus the two halves of the velum proper are allowed to slide freely one over the other by the compression of the surrounding muscles, and the whole forms, in fact, *a valve within* or *upon a valve.**

The anterior surface of the velum (Fig. 108,) with valve *V V* covering the central opening, presents a smooth and slightly concave surface, and therefore needs no particular demonstration. Referring to figures 107 and 109, a view is had of the posterior surface of the velum, H, and more is seen that needs to be explained;

* I wish here to be understood as saying, in exact terms, that I consider the slit and opening through the centre, and its closure by a sort of valve on the anterior surface, as an essential feature of all artificial vela; and also, that I do not acknowledge the remotest obligation to any other person for this one idea; and which did not present itself to my mind until I had occupied myself with my first case (in '41 and '42) for more than a year. Previous to that, all my time had been occupied in futile attempts to mold the plastic rubber to a copy of the natural velum. The moment this idea of the middle opening and valve suggested itself, I felt confident that a great point was secured, and that contractility, if not muscularity, was attained; for to give muscularity to any work of human hands is manifestly as much beyond our reach as to make a glass eye that shall receive and convey impressions to the brain.

for it is on the posterior surface of the artificial velum, where there is plenty of room, that we can place all the mechanism that we may wish to adopt for the purpose of attaching the velum to the roof-plate, and also for giving to it that delicate and permanent elasticity fitting it for the place it is designed to fill. Half an inch or more above the lower margin, on the posterior surface, is seen a rubber *bow* or spring, *s s* about one-eighth of an inch thick, an inch long, laid across and attached to the velum only at each end, so as to allow the opposite halves or flaps of the velum to glide freely one over the other.

"This *bow* or spring at the lower part I consider very necessary in all vela of large size, and perhaps useful in the smallest. A large velum without it will soon begin to lose some part of its original elasticity, and become warped out of its shape, so that the wearer will be suddenly conscious of not deriving so much benefit from its use as he has been accustomed to do; so I would advise those who may undertake the work, not to omit this lower spring, though it adds considerably to the labor.

"Near the upper end, on the back side, is another rubber bow or spring, *f f f*, also essential to the elasticity of the velum. The back plate, *b b*, is seen to cover a part of the posterior surface of the upper end of the velum, and its lower end passes under the bow, *f f*, between it and the valve, *V V*, on the anterior surface. Here it receives the conchoidal spring, *r*, which termi-

nates in a cue or tail, passing through an eye or loop of wire, *l*, which has been vulcanized into the substance of the rubber. The use of this spring is to keep the valve *V V* gently pressed against the anterior surface of the velum, and prevent it from drooping, so as to open the passage for the escape of sound upwards. The lateral attachments to the body of the velum proper, *q q*, covering the posterior surfaces of the edges of the fissure, and *W W*, covering in like manner the anterior sufaces, have already been referred to. That part of the upper end of the velum which is prolonged forwards so as to overlap the roof-plate, (see *I*, Fig. 110), and also widened so as to bear upon the superior surface of the projecting edges of the fissure, should be made considerably thicker and firmer than the body of the velum below.

"From this description of the form, plan, and size, of elastic artificial velum, it will be understood that it is in no respect a copy of the perfectly formed natural organ, but an elastic valve acted upon and compressed by the surrounding muscular tissue with which it is closely in contact. The natural organ has muscular *vis insita*, which is a vital quality that no art can give to inanimate substance. The best substitute for this vital contractile power is the plan here detailed, of making the body of the velum to consist of three parts, joined at the top, and which can slide freely one over the other, and thus expand and contract by the lateral pressure of the surrounding muscles. It was this idea of the three pieces

that decided the success of my first case. Eighteen years have since elapsed, and I have not yet conceived any other possible way of constructing an instrument at once simple, delicate, and durable, than in this *triple* form; and though I trust and believe that others will hereafter improve upon my methods, I am confident that this one feature will be preserved in all successful "Obturators."

"There is one physiological fact to encourage the operator who may undertake to remedy imperfect speech by his mechanical appliances: that speech, or articulated sound, is not a vital function, like the circulation, respiration, or digestion, but a mechanical function, performed by mechanical agents. The characteristic sound of several of the letters of the alphabet is constantly produced by certain familiar objects around us. Thus the rapid passage of steam or of air through a crevice produces a hissing sound which is identical with that of the letter S, which is also made by forcing the breath through the interstices of the teeth. The buzzing of the wings of insects, or the sound made by a flat splinter of wood tied to the end of a cord and then whirled rapidly through the air is simply the letter Z. On inverting a bottle filled with water so that the liquid may flow out by intermittent jets, the perfect sound of G (hard) is at once recognised. The sudden breaking of a stick will give the sound of X or K S. In short, the elementary sounds of all the letters of the alphabet have long ago been imitated more or less perfectly in automata made by patient and ingenious mechanicians for public exhibition.

"The object of the labor and skill bestowed in making and adapting an artificial velum is not attained when the instrument is completed, be it performed never so skillfully, for the speech remains almost unchanged; nor is there much involuntary improvement, but at first only a sufflated tone, like that of a person with a cold. There remains a course of *vocal practice* to be entered upon and patiently persevered in, before any great improvement in speech* is attained.

"The necessity for this instruction and training delays the beneficial results of the operation, and is what some patients are disinclined to undergo; and this delay and difficulty, presenting itself in the course of my experience, has had considerable weight with me in withdrawing my attention from the subject. But patients should be made to understand clearly, at the outset, that after the instrument is made, then *they* have something to do; that they must in some part 'minister to themselves.' To do this, they, of course, will need specific instruction; and I had proposed to explain a system of vocal practice, that I

* Ever since my attention was first given to this subject, I have, from time to time, met with newspaper accounts of persons, with congenital fissure of the palate, "being enabled to articulate perfectly," &c., &c., by the aid of some piece of mechanism that some one had just made for them. Now, I wish here to take the responsibility of saying, in plain words, such a result is physically impossible; and all statements of that kind can only cruelly disappoint those who are confidently hoping for relief from a life-long infirmity. Only in cases of grown persons, where the soft palate has been partly destroyed by syphilitic disease, or in those very rare congenital cases where the fissure extends only through the bony roof, leaving the soft palate entire, will the adaptation of any artificial apparatus cause immediate and marked improvement in speech.

have arranged and made use of, for the development of the faculties of speech in those who, all their lives before, have never posessed the organs needed for perfect articulation. This plan or system of vocal practice I have, however, decided to reserve for a future essay, if what I have already written, to illustrate the mechanical part of the subject, should prove of sufficient interest to make any further publication desirable. My remarks already have covered more space than I at first anticipated; yet I must add some further observations, taken disconnectedly from written memoranda, copies of letters, &c., not originally meant for publication.

"I. The pain or inconvenience to patients, on beginning to wear the instrument is inconsiderable—surprisingly so; in fact, I have myself been astonished to find that they were not unwilling, on the first day, to walk home through the streets with a mechanical apparatus in the mouth, so long as to reach from the front teeth to the anterior process of the fourth cervical vertebra (which vertebral process can be seen and felt just under the mucous membrane of the pharynx), and so broad that the sides of the velum, near its lower end, touched the styloid processes of the sphenoid bone (which can also be felt with the end of the finger, behind the columns of the fissured velum), and so high, also, as almost to reach the base of the cranium; so that if I may, hereafter, be thought to have achieved very little, in comparison with what future years of experience and

improved skill may bring to pass, I have at least demonstrated that a very large piece of artificial work can be worn in the throat, with ease and comfort, while eating, drinking, sleeping, coughing, sneezing, vomiting, &c. In a late case, the patient persisted, contrary to my advice, in sleeping at night without removing the instrument.

"II. It will not be of much use to undertake the case of *uneducated* persons. I recollect that, while in Paris, Amusat sent for me one day. On going to his house, I found standing about the gateway quite a collection—a small crowd, in fact—of cases, of both sexes, of all ages. I was obliged to say to him that I could hardly hope to do them any good, for they have neither the time nor means to spare, and if supplied with the instrument, they would not take the proper care of it, nor be likely to improve by vocal practice; and what is more to the point, they feel but very little want of anything of the sort.

"III. Young persons, with palatine fissure, are often quite indifferent to the chances of getting relief; the reason of which is, that they are not fully aware of the extent of their difficulty. They are, perhaps, conscious of a want of vocal power, but do not know that they fail to articulate the sound of a great many of the letters. They do not hear their own voices as others hear them.

"IV. One of my patients was as much surprised and pleased as M. Jourdain (see Moliere's *Bourgeois Gentilhomme*), when taking a lesson from his philosophical

teacher, on being instructed how to place and move the tongue or lips in order to produce the characteristic sound of any given letter, and that such a movement would invariably produce that sound and no other. Of this necessity they have never before known, because they were without the complete natural mechanism. Sound is the natural stimulant of the action of the vocal organs, as much as the blood of the heart, the air of the lungs, the food of the stomach. If this stimulus of sound cannot be confined and controlled for a moment, but if, the moment it issues from the glottis, it is dissipated through the nasal passages, the tongue and lips do not fully get their appropriate stimulus, and fail to act only in a partial manner. In fact, if they were to act with the same rapidity and power as in persons with a normal state of the organs, the imperfection of speech would be thereby rendered more striking, because they force yet more of the sound through the nasal passages. The soft palate is the antagonist of the lips and tongue, in the same manner that the thumb is the antagonist of the four fingers. So the sound, or voice, or vowels of the alphabet, are grasped, impressed, and molded—stamped with constant letters, as a coin is struck between *two* dies, or iron is shaped by the smith between the hammer and the anvil. If one die be wanting, or the iron should be held up in the air and struck, no impression could then be made upon it. So that a person with palatine fissure, instead of being instinctively stimulated to perform the act and function

of articulation, is instinctively discouraged from such efforts, from finding that the sound supplied as the material of speech instantly eludes the muscular impact, and therefore receives no impression. I have reasons for believing, moreover, that in these cases the muscles at the upper part of the neck, just about the larynx, remain in a dormant and flaccid state, because that region, just below the jaw, usually has a lean appearance externally; and, in one case, where the instrument has now been worn for years, I know that the neck has acquired a more full and fleshy appearance.

"V. I have been often asked, At how young an age may it be practicable or advisable to adapt an artificial instrument? and I have answered, Not younger than 16 or 17, probably. In this opinion I am by no means fixed, or, rather, I have changed to quite a different one, and will now answer, At as early an age as the patient has intelligence enough to handle the instrument, and take the proper care of it. The instrument, as made several years ago, being so delicate and complicated as to be liable to derangement, even in the hands of grown persons, and also fastened wholly to the teeth, so that it must interfere with the natural growth of the bone, was doubtless unsuited for the case of a very young subject; but as now made, without the spiral springs, and supported chiefly by the edges of the fissure, it may be adapted, in my judgment, with benefit to a child. The natural growth and enlargement of the parts would necessitate

the making of a second and third instrument. The advantages of applying the instrument as early as possible, are: 1st. Present convenience and improvement, saving thereby several years of an embarrassing impediment. 2d. The early natural use and action of the muscles concerned in speech would be promoted. Grown persons, with fissure, never, according to my observation, make the appropriate movements of the tongue for certain letters, as K, G (hard), D, R, and often P, B, V, and F; and, after adapting the instrument, it has taken a great deal of persevering instruction to make them place the tongue so as to utter a given sound. But a child of six years, with pretty large fissure, that I saw a few months since, when I gave her a word with K, did make precisely the necessary movement of the tongue that would have produced the sound of that letter, had there been no opening into the nasal passages. My deduction is, therefore, that as she grows up she will cease, instinctively, to make an effort which habitually fails of it purpose; but if she is supplied with something to close the opening, her tongue will continue to perform its functions effectually. Now she is like a person blowing a fire with a large hole in the leather sides of the bellows. I have been requested by the parents to adapt an instrument to her case, and I shall proceed with it, if I can attach the artificial roof in such a way as not to interfere with the growth and expansion of the bones."

INDEX.

Craigie's General and Pathological Anatomy.

Price, $3.00.

Carnochan's Operative Surgery and Surgical Pathology.

Large 4to., illustrated with Colored Plates; to be completed in Ten Parts. Parts 1, 2 and 3 now ready. Price, per Part, 75 cents.

De Boismont's History of Hallucinations,

Apparitions, Visions, Ecstacies, &c. A New and Complete Edition. Cloth, $2.00.

Dixon's Guide to the Practical Study of Diseases of the Eye.

12mo, Cloth, $1.50.

Flint's Clinical Reports on Continued Fever.

Cloth, $2.00.

Graves and Gerhard's Clinical Medicine.

8vo., Sheep, $2.00.

Gooch's Practical Midwifery.

8vo., Sheep, $1.50.

Hewson's Manual of Surgical Diagnosis.

One Volume, Octavo. Preparing.

Harris's New Dictionary of Medical Terminology,

And Dental Surgery. Second Edition, containing 8000 New Words. One Volume, Royal 8vo., $4.50.

Hastings' Lectures on Yellow Fever.

Cloth, 50 cents.

Hastings' Minor Surgery,

The Application of Dressings, &c. &c. Cloth, $1.50

Handy's Text-Book of Human Anatomy.

With over 300 Illustrations. 8vo., Sheep, $3.00.

Headland on the Action of Medicines in the System;

Being the Fothergillian Prize Essay. Third Edition, Enlarged. Cloth, $2.00.

Henderson's Homœopathy Fairly Represented,

In reply to Prof. Simpson; from the Third Edinburgh Edition. Cloth, $1.25.

Henle's Treatise on General Pathology,

One Volume, 8vo., $2.00.

Jameson on Epidemic Cholera, &c.

One Volume. Cloth, $1.25.

Johns' German-English and English-German.

Clinical Phrase Book, with Lexicon, &c. 18mo., Half Bound, $1.25; in Tucks, with Pockets, $1.50.

Morris on Scarlet Fever.

A new Revised and Enlarged Edition. 8vo., Cloth, $1.25.

Meigs' Practical Treatise on the Diseases of Children.

Third Edition, Much Enlarged. Octavo, Sheep, $3.50.

Mendenhall's Medical Student's Vade-Mecum;

A Compendium of Anatomy, Surgery, the Practice of Medicine, &c. Sixth Edition, Enlarged, with numerous Illustrations. Royal 12mo., Sheep, $2.00.

Murphy's Review of Chemistry for Students.

Cloth, $1.00.

Paget's Lectures on Surgical Pathology,

With numerous beautiful Illustrations. Second Edition. Octavo, Sheep, $3.50.

Pereira's Pocket Prescription Book.

Second Edition. Cloth, 63 cents; Tucks, 75 cents.

Reese's Analysis of Physiology;

A new Enlarged Edition. Sheep, $1.50.

Reese's American Medical Formulary.

Cloth, $1.00.

Reese's Syllabus of Chemistry,

For the Use of Students, $1.00; the same, Interleaved, $2.00.

Rand's Medical Chemistry for Students.

12mo., Cloth, $1.00.

Ryan's Philosophy of Marriage.

A new Edition. 12mo., Cloth, 75 cents.

Simpson on Homœopathy:

Its Tenets and Tendencies. 8vo., Cloth, $1.25.

Skoda on Auscultation and Percussion.

Translated by W. O. Markham. 12mo., Cloth, $1.00.

Smith's Domestic Medicine, Surgery, &c.

A Family, Plantation, and Ship Medicine-Chest Companion; particularly adapted for heads of families, overseers, or owners of plantations, captains of ships, &c. &c. A new and Enlarged Edition. Octavo, Sheep, $2.00.

Stokes on the Diseases of the Heart and Aorta.

A new Edition. 8vo., Sheep, $3.00.

Tanner's New Manual of the Practice of Medicine.

16mo., Cloth, $1.25.

Tanner on the Diseases of Infancy and Childhood.

1 vol. 12mo., $1.50.

Tilt's Elements of Health and Principles of Female Hygiene.

1 vol. Royal 12mo., $1.25.

The Physician's Visiting List, Day Book and Memoranda,

For 25 Patients.	Published Annually.	Cloth, Flexible, 50 cents.
"	"	Leather, with Tucks, 75 cents.
For 50 Patients,	"	Cloth, Flexible, 75 cents.
"	"	Leather, with Tucks, $1.00.
For 100 Patients.	"	1 vol. Tucks, $2.00.
"	"	2 vols. Tucks, $2.50.

INTERLEAVED EDITION.

For 25 Patients weekly, interleaved and bound in Cloth, 75 cents.

" 25	"	"	"	Tucks, with Pockets, $1.00.
" 50	"	"	"	Cloth, $1.00.
" 50	"	"	"	Tucks, with Pockets, $1.25.

Thompson's Clinical Lectures on Pulmonary Consumption.

Two Plates, 8vo. Cloth, $1.25.

Todd's Clinical Lectures on Paralysis,

Diseases of the Brain, the Nervous System, &c., $1.50.

Walton's Operative Ophthalmic Surgery.

Edited by S. Littell, M.D. With 169 Illustrations. Octavo, Sheep, $3.00.

Walker on Intermarriage.

A New Edition. Illustrated. 12mo., Cloth, 75 cents.

Wythe's Pocket Dose and Symptom Book.

Second Edition. Cloth, 63 cents; Tucks, 75 cents.

DENTAL.

Harris's Dictionary of Medicine and Dental Surgery.
Second Edition. A Royal 8vo. volume. Sheep, $4.50.

Harris's Principles and Practice of Dental Surgery.
Seventh Edition, greatly enlarged, with over 200 Illustrations. 8vo. Sheep, $4.00.

Tomes' System of Dental Surgery.
1 vol. 8vo., with 207 Illustrations, $3.50.

Tomes' Dental Physiology.
1 vol. 8vo., Illustrated, $3.50.

Taft's Practical Treatise on Operative Dentistry.
1 vol., Octavo, Illustrated, $2.75.

Richardson's Mechanical Dentistry.
With over 100 Illustrations. Octavo, $3.25.

Fox and Harris on the Human Teeth.
A new Improved Edition, with 264 Illustrations. 8vo., Sheep, $3.00.

Piggot's Dental Chemistry and Metallurgy.
With numerous Illustrations. Octavo, Sheep, $3.00.

Handy's Text-Book of Anatomy,
For Students of Dental Surgery, with over 300 Illustrations. 8vo., Sheep, $3.00.

Bond's Practical Treatise on Dental Medicine,
As connected with the study of Dental Surgery. Third Edition, Sheep, $

Arthur's Manual of Diseases of the Teeth.
12mo., Cloth, 50 cents.

PERIODICALS.

Ranking's Half-Yearly Abstract of the Medical Sciences.
Fifteen vols., bound in Half Cloth. Price, per vol., $1.50.
" " Leather. " $2.00.
Published Annually in January and July. Price, per Annum, $2.00.

The British and Foreign Medico-Chirurgical Review.
London Edition. Quarterly, per Annum, $5.00.

The American Journal of Dental Science.
Edited by Profs. Harris and Piggot. Quarterly, $5.00.

SCIENTIFIC.

Wetherill on the Manufacture of Vinegar,
Its Theory and Practice. With Illustrations. 12mo., Cloth, $1.25.

Campbell's Scientific and Practical Agriculture.
For the School and Farm. Illustrated. 12mo., half Roan, $1.00.

Miller on Alcohol, its Place and Power.
16mo., Flexible, Cloth, 50 cents.

Lizars on Tobacco, its Use and Abuse.
16mo., Flexible, Cloth, 38 cents.

Alcohol and Tobacco, Miller & Lizars.
Bound in 1 vol. 16mo., Cloth, 75 cents.

Morfit's Chemical and Pharmaceutical Manipulations.
New Edition, Much Enlarged. 500 Illustrations. Octavo, Sheep, $4.00.

Kurten's Recent Discoveries in the Manufacture of Soap
And Candles. 12mo., Cloth, $1.00.

Peisse on the Art and Manufacture of Perfumery.
With Illustrations. 12mo., Cloth, $1.25.

Noad's Chemical Analysis,
Quantitative and Qualitative, with Illustrations. 8vo., Cloth, $1.50.

Walker on Intermarriage.
With Plates. 12mo., Cloth, 75 cents.

Ryan's Philosophy of Marriage.
12mo., Cloth, 75 cents.

Wythe's Microscopists' Manual,
With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, Enlarged. Cloth, $1.25.

Piggott on Copper Mining, Copper Ores, &c.
With Illustrations. 12mo., $1.25.

Wright's American Receipt Book,
Containing 3000 Receipts in all the Useful and Domestic Arts. $1.00.

Overman's Practical Mineralogy, Assaying and Mining.
Second Edition, 12mo., Cloth, 75 cents.

Darlington's Flora Cestrica.
Third Edition, 12mo., Sheep, $2.25.

Coultas' Principles of Botany.
12mo., Cloth, 50 cents.

Harris's Principles and Practice of Dental Surgery.

By CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D., D.D.S., Professor of the Principles and Practice of Dental Surgery in the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery; Member of the American Medical Association, &c. &c. The Seventh Enlarged Edition, with 236 Illustrations. One Volume, Royal Octavo. Price, $4.00.

We have read this excellent work with much satisfaction, and we are only giving the author the credit he most honorably deserves, when we say, that the views and opinions put forth in the present treatise merit the attention of every surgeon dentist who wishes not only to be a skillful operator in his department of practice, but also a scientific practitioner.—*London Medical Times.*

Harris's Dictionary of Medical Terminology,

Dental Surgery, and the Collateral Sciences. A New Edition, with 8000 New Words. By CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D., D.D.S., &c. &c. In One Volume, Royal Octavo. Price, $4.50.

The title-page of this work explains its character; and the demand for a second edition shows that it has been found useful. It is intended, more especially, for those who practice dental surgery, than for the general practitioners of medicine; but may be consulted advantageously by all. The multiplication of works upon dentistry, their extensive sale, and the liberal patronage of the several schools of dental surgery, constitute an American peculiarity to which no one has so much contributed as Professor Harris, who, by his zeal and ability, has placed his profession upon higher grounds in the United States, than it enjoys in any other country.—*Southern Medical and Surgical Journal.*

Fox and Harris on the Human Teeth:

Their Natural History and Structure, the Treatment of the Diseases to which they are Subject, the Mode of Inserting Artificial Teeth, &c. By JOSEPH FOX, Surgeon Dentist, Lecturer at Guy's Hospital, &c.; and CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D., D.D.S., &c. In One Volume, with 250 Illustrations. Price, $3.00.

The present edition comes forth with the advantages of a careful revision, and the sanction of a distinguished teacher and practitioner of the dental art. That these additions are judicious, we need no better guarantee than the known competency of the editor.—*Philadelphia Medical Examiner.*

The American Journal of Dental Science.

Published Quarterly, on the First of January, April, July, and October. Edited by CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D., D.D.S., and A. SNOWDEN PIGGOT, M.D. Terms of Subscription, $5.00 per Annum. Two Copies for $9.00, or one Copy for Two Years, if paid for in Advance.

This is the oldest established journal in the English language, exclusively devoted to the interest of dental science; it has always aimed to elevate the standard of the profession, and to preserve in it a high moral tone. The editors, constant in their efforts to this end, have also kept in view the necessity of presenting, in the pages of the Journal, such material as must prove of practical value to the subscribers; and, in order to keep pace with the advance of the age, and to improve its efficiency and increase its value, they have made arrangements with many gentlemen distinguished in the profession, to contribute one, two, or three articles per annum to its pages, with the view of securing a constant supply of original matter upon every subject embraced within the range of dental practice. Every effort will be made to give variety, as well as value, to its contents.

Taft's Practical Treatise on Operative Dentistry.

By JONATHAN TAFT, D.D.S., Professor of Operative Dentistry in the Ohio College of Dental Surgery, &c. With eighty well-executed Illustrations. In One Volume. Price, $2.75.

An examination of Mr. Taft's treatise enables us to speak most favorably of it. It is very thorough and very clear, showing that the author is practically familiar with the art which he teaches. The engravings are abundant and excellent, and, in fact, the whole mechanical execution of the volume is admirable, and reflects much credit on the publishers.—*Boston Med. and Surg. Journal.*

Dr. Taft evinces an intimate and practical knowledge of what he is writing about, and in all cases uses such simple and well-chosen language that there is no mistaking the idea he wishes to convey. This is one of the most valuable books ever published for the use of students of Dental Surgery.—*Chicago Med. Journal.*

The book speaks for itself. It is most readable in its style, carefully and laboriously compiled, well illustrated, and containing much valuable information. We, therefore, hail it as another valuable addition to our stock of information on the subject.—*Edinburgh Med. Journal.*

Richardson's Practical Treatise on Mechanical Dentistry.

By JOSEPH RICHARDSON, D.D.S., Professor of Mechanical Dentistry in the Ohio College of Dental Surgery, &c. In One Volume, Octavo, with over 100 beautifully-executed Illustrations. Just Ready. Price, $3.25.

Handy's Text-Book of Anatomy,

And Guide to Dissections. For the use of Students of Medicine and Dental Surgery. By WASHINGTON R. HANDY, M.D., late Professor of Anatomy and Physiology in the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery. With 312 Illustrations. One Volume. Price, $3.00.

We heartily commend it to both the medical and dental profession, as a thorough, faithful, and physiological treatise on anatomy.—*American Journal of Dental Science.*

Bond's Practical Treatise on Dental Medicine;

Being a Compendium of Medical Science, as connected with the study of Dental Surgery. By THOMAS E. BOND, M.D., Professor of Special Pathology and Therapeutics in the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery. The Third Edition preparing. One Volume. Price, $

We have spoken, or intended to speak, heartily in praise of Dr. Bond's work. It has unmistakable evidence of thorough medical science in its subject matter, and of a capital authorship in its style and treatment.—*American Medical Journal.*

Piggot's Dental Chemistry and Metallurgy.

Containing Physiological Chemistry, as applied to Dentistry, &c. By A. SNOWDEN PIGGOT, M.D., Professor of Practical and Analytical Chemistry, &c. In One Volume, Octavo. Price, $3.00.

We think the work is one which should be in the hands of every dentist. Much labor and research has been spent on it, and an immense amount of useful information combined and given in a very desirable form to the profession.—*Dental Register.*

PAGET'S SURGICAL PATHOLOGY.

THE SECOND EDITION, NOW READY.

These lectures form the very basis of a correct knowledge of surgical diseases, and hence of correct practice.—*N. Y. Journal of Medicine.*

Lectures on Surgical Pathology,

Delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons of England, by JAMES PAGET, F.R.S., late Professor of Anatomy and Surgery to the College, Assistant Surgeon and Lecturer on Pathology at St. Bartholomew's Hospital.

SUBJECTS:

HYPERTROPHY, ATROPHY, REPAIR, INFLAMMATION, MORTIFICATION, SPECIFIC DISEASES AND TUMORS.

Second American Edition. With 116 beautifully executed Illustrations.
One Volume Octavo. Price, $3.50.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

It is equally distinguished by the two great qualities of range and clearness of thought. —*British and Foreign Medico-Chirurgical Review.*

Mr. Paget's work, in a scientific and practical point of view, is by far the most finished treatise with which we are acquainted.—*Medical Times.*

It is the contribution of an original mind, representing the result of many years of profound research, careful study, large practical experience, and widely-extended reading. The book is eminently instructive.—*Dublin Quarterly Journal.*

We think we no not err in saying that, since the publication of Mr. Hunter's works, no contribution has been made in the English language of so much value, in Surgical Pathology, as this of Mr. Paget.—*London Lancet.*

It is a work that cannot fail to be at once necessary and serviceable to the physician as well as the surgeon.—*Edinburgh Medical and Surgical Journal.*

The splendid generalizations of the beginning of this work, and the solid facts of the latter portions, render it a prize both to daring theoretical minds, and to the lovers of sound practical knowledge.—*Peninsular Journal.*

Mr. Paget has long been ranked among the foremost minds of the profession in Great Britain, and his advantages, both as a teacher and practitioner, have been admirably turned to account in the masterly work before us.—*Examiner.*

A more complete system of instruction in the departments embraced by the learned author has not appeared in any language.—*Boston Medical and Surgical Journal.*

We regard the work as one of comprehensive aim, executed with a complete knowledge of the present state of pathology, together with a thorough acquaintance with the whole range of ancient and modern literature.—*Edinburgh Monthly.*

MANUALS AND POCKET COMPANIONS
FOR PHYSICIANS AND STUDENTS.

Mendenhall's Vade Mecum.

A COMPENDIUM OF

Anatomy,
Physiology,
Chemistry,
The Practice of Medicine,
Surgery,
Obstetrics,
Diseases of the Skin,
Materia Medica,
Pharmacy,
Poisons, &c. &c.

By George Mendenhall, M.D., Professor of Obstetrics, and the Diseases of Women and Children, in the Ohio Medical College, Member of the American Medical Association, &c. &c. With over 200 Illustrations. Sixth Edition. Price, $2.00.

Biddle's Review of Materia Medica,

For the Use of Students. By John B. Biddle, M.D., late Professor of Materia Medica in the Franklin Medical College, Fellow of the College of Physicians, &c. Price, $1.00.

Murphy's Review of Chemistry,

For Students. Adapted to the Courses as Taught in the Principal Medical Schools in the United States. By John G. Murphy, M.D. In One Volume. Price, $1.00.

Pereira's Physician's Pocket Prescription-Book;

Containing Lists of Terms, Phrases, Contractions, and Abbreviations, used in Prescriptions, with Explanatory Notes. Also, the Grammatical Constructions of Prescriptions, &c.; to which is added a Key, containing the Prescriptions in an unabbreviated Form, with a Literal Translation, intended for the use of Medical and Pharmaceutical Students. By Jonathan Pereira, M.D., F.R.S., &c. Second American, from the Twelfth London, Edition. Price, 63 cents, in Cloth; 75 cents, in Tucks, with Pocket.

Wythes' Physician's Pocket Dose and Symptom-Book;

Containing the Doses and Uses of all the Principal Articles of the Materia Medica and Chief Officinal Preparations; also, Tables of Weights and Measures, Rules to Proportion the Doses of Medicines, Common Abbreviations Used in Writing Prescriptions, Table of Poisons and Antidotes, Dietetic Preparations, Table of Symptomatology, and Outlines of General Pathology and Therapeutics. By Joseph H. Wythes, M.D., author of "The Microscope," "Curiosities of the Microscope," &c. &c. Second Edition, Revised and Improved. Price, 63 cents, in Cloth; 75 cents, in Tucks, with Pocket.

Wythes' Microscopist's Manual.

Being a Complete Manual for the Use of the Microscope. By JOSEPH H. WYTHES, M.D. A New, Revised and Enlarged Edition. Beautifully Illustrated. Price, $1.25.

Rand's Outline of Medical Chemistry,

For the Use of Students. By B. HOWARD RAND, M.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Philadelphia College of Medicine, &c. Price, $1.00.

Reese's Analysis of Physiology:

Being a Condensed View of the most important Facts and Doctrines, designed especially for the Use of Students. By JOHN J. REESE, M.D., Professor of Medical Chemistry and Pharmacy in the Pennsylvania Medical College, Physician to Wills' Hospital, &c. Second Edition, Enlarged. Price, $1.50.

Reese's American Medical Formulary.

Including numerous Standard Formulæ, derived from American and European Authorities, together with the Medical Properties and Uses of Medicines; Poisons, their Antidotes, Tests, &c. By JOHN J. REESE, M.D. Price, $1.00.

Reese's Syllabus of the Course of Lectures on Medical Chemistry;

Delivered in the Medical Department of Pennsylvania College. By JOHN J. REESE, M.D., Professor of Chemistry, &c. Price, $1.00.

An English and German Clinical Phrase-Book.

Containing the usual Questions and Answers employed in Examining and Prescribing for Patients, Questions in Asking for and Buying Medicines, &c.; with an English-German and German-English Pronouncing Lexicon of all the words occurring in the Phrases, with the chief Technical Terms of medical writers and apothecaries, Grammatical Appendix, Table of Idioms, &c. Designed to aid Physicians and Surgeons in Hospitals, Alms-Houses, and Private Practice; also, Druggists and Pharmaceutists in Dispensing their Prescriptions. By MONTGOMERY JOHNS, M.D. Price, in Half Roan, $1.25; in Tucks, with Pocket, $1.50.

Hasting's Minor Surgery.

Including Bandaging, the Application of Dressing, &c. By JOHN HASTINGS, M.D., late Lecturer on Operative Surgery, Surgical Anatomy, &c. With 145 Illustrations. Price, $1.50.

WATER,

AS A PRESERVATIVE OF HEALTH, AND A REMEDY FOR DISEASE

A New and Revised Edition of

A TREATISE ON BATHS,

INCLUDING COLD, SEA, WARM, HOT, VAPOR, GAS, AND MUD BATHS;

ALSO ON HYDROPATHY AND PULMONARY INHALATION.

With a Description of Bathing in Ancient and Modern Times.

BY JOHN BELL, M.D.,

FELLOW OF THE COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS, ETC. ETC.

In one volume. 12mo. Price, $1.25.

"No work in our language contains so large an amount of well-digested information respecting the above subject, and we have reason to feel proud that such an addition to the permanent literature of the profession should have been made by one of our citizens."—*Report of the Committee of the American Medical Association on Medical Literature.*

"The work is divided into fifty-six chapters, in the course of which every department of the subject of Bathing is handled with skill and effect. The extensive array of facts respecting the history of Baths and Bathing, would alone suffice to render the book valuable, because it can be conveniently referred to, and the author's reputation enables us to rely upon his statements; but it has other claims to consideration, such as are of a most important character. It is not enough that people should bathe, but they should do so intelligently, or a good thing in itself may be productive of evil consequences. How, when, where, and under what conditions, bathing is most likely to benefit men, women, and children, are points concerning which Dr. Bell affords his readers all the information that can be necessary. While commending his work to all, generally, we may add, specifically, that it is just the sort of book that should be taken to sea resorts by those who are so fortunate as to be able to spend their summers there; so that they may learn how to pursue a renovating exercise and pleasure in a proper manner. —*Transcript.*

ALCOHOL:

ITS PLACE AND POWER.

ALCOHOL: ITS PLACE AND POWER, by JAMES MILLER, F. R. S. E., Professor of Surgery in the University of Edinburg; President of the Medico-Chirurgical Society; Author of Miller's Principles and Practice of Surgery, etc. etc.

"I never got a patient by water drinking, but thousands by strong liquors."—*Dr. Gregory.*

CONTENTS

This little volume was prepared by Prof. Miller at the instance of The Scottish Temperance League, who were anxious to have a work of high authority, presenting the medical view of the Temperance question. It has already passed through *nineteen editions* in Scotland, and the publishers trust that their reprint of it will meet with equal favor in this country.

One volume, 18mo. Price, 50 cts.

TOBACCO:

ITS USE AND ABUSE.

THE USE AND ABUSE OF TOBACCO, by JOHN LIZARS, late Professor of Surgery to the Royal College of Surgeons, etc. etc.

This little work is reprinted from the *Eighth* Edinburg Edition, in the preface to which the author remarks:

"The object of the author will be attained, if his observations have an appreciable tendency in arresting the progress of excessive smoking, by drawing the attention of the public to so important a subject. It is difficult to estimate either the pernicious consequences produced by habitual smoking, or the number of its victims among all classes, old and young."

Price, 38 cts.

ALCOHOL AND TOBACCO.

As there appears to be a natural affinity between Prof. Miller's work on *Alcohol*, and Prof. Lizars' on *Tobacco*, the publishers have bound them together, and will furnish them so to those who prefer it.

Price, 75 cts.

THE SUBSCRIBERS call the particular attention of the DENTAL PROFESSION to the NEW WORKS, also NEW EDITIONS of Works, on DENTAL SCIENCE, published by them, as per the enclosed Catalogue, any of which, or of their Medical Publications, they will send by mail, free of postage, upon the receipt of the retail price.

LINDSAY & BLAKISTON, Publishers,
PHILADELPHIA.

(The Oldest Established Dental Journal Published in the English Language.)

THE

AMERICAN JOURNAL OF DENTAL SCIENCE,

PUBLISHED QUARTERLY,

ON THE FIRST OF JANUARY, APRIL, JULY AND OCTOBER.

THIS JOURNAL, having been the first one published in the English language, exclusively devoted to the interest of Dental Science, has always aimed to elevate the standard of the Profession, and to preserve a high moral tone. The editors, constant in their efforts to this end, have also kept in view the necessity of presenting, in the pages of the Journal, such material as must prove of practical value to the subscribers; and, in order to keep pace with the advance of the age, and to improve its efficiency and increase its value, they have now made arrangements with the following gentlemen, many of them distinguished in the profession, to contribute one, two, or three articles per annum to its pages, thus securing a constant supply of original matter upon every subject embraced within the range of Dental practice. Every effort will be made to give variety, as well as value, to its contents, which will be arranged under the following headings:—

Original Communications upon Subjects of Importance to the Profession.
Editorial Articles.
Reviews of New Books.
Selections from Foreign and Domestic Journals.
Quarterly Summary of Dental News.

LIST OF COLLABORATORS.

ALFRRD HILL, Esq., London.
W. R BALLARD, D.D.S., London.
C. R. COFFIN, M.D., D.D.S., Manchester.
T. H. THOMSON, M.D., Glasgow.
A ABBOTT, D D.S., Berlin, Prussia.
A. A. BLANDY, M.D., D.D S., Baltimore.
J. L. LEVISON, M.D., D.D.S., London, Eng.
JAS. ROBINSON, D D.S., London, Eng.
C. W. HARVEY, M.D., Buffalo, N.Y.
PROF. T. E. BOND, M.D., Baltimore, Md.
PROF. P. AUSTEN, M.D., D.D.S., Baltimore, Md.
JOHN ALLEN, M D., D.D.S., New York.
ROBT. ARTHUR, M.D., D.D.S., Baltimore.
B. F ARRINGTON, M.D., D.D.S., Goldsborough, N.C.
JOS. BLANDY, D.D.S., Baltimore, Md.
G. F. J. COLBURN, D.D.S., Newark, N.J.
D. S. CHASE, D.D S., Augusta, Ga.
JOHN S CLARKE, D.D.S., New Orleans, La.
J. SMITH DODGE, M.D., D.D.S., New York.
ISAIAH FORBES, D.D.S., St. Louis, Mo.
FRANK FULLER, D.D.S., Portsmouth, N. H.
FERD. GORGAS, D.D.S., Harrisburg, Pa.
T. B GUNNING, D.D.S., New York.
D. P. GREG, D.D.S., Greensborough, N.C.
A. HILL, D.D.S, Norwalk, Ct.
J. S. TULL, M.D., Baltimore, Md.
A. J. BROWN, D.D.S., Baltimore, Md.
LEON F. HARVEY, M D., Buffalo, N.Y.
JAS. HARRIS, D.D S., Philadelphia, Pa.
H. H. HARVEY, D.D S. Hagerstown, Md.
PROF. C. JOHNSTON, M.D., Baltimore, Md.
CHAS. KNOWER, D.D.S., St. Louis, Mo.
J. B. KNAPP, D D.S., New Orleans, La.
EDWARD MAYNARD, M.D, D.D.S, Washington, D C.
SETH P. MILLER, M.D., D.D S, Worcester, Mass.
SAML. MALLET, D.D.S., Hartford, Ct.
JOHN McCALLA. D D.S., Lancaster, Pa.
S. T. CHURCH, M.D., D.D.S., Baltimore, Md.
L. T. McGILL, M.D., D.D.S, Frederick, Md.
S. A. McDOWELL, D.D.S., Goldsborough, N.C.
THEODORE PHILLIPS, D.D.S., Louisiana.
ALBERT PHILLIPS, D.D S., Jefferson City, Mo.
S. W. ROGERS, M.D., Utica, N.Y.
W. G SMULL, M.D., Baltimore, Md.
F. N. SEABURY, D.D.S., Providence, R.I.
S. M. SHEPHEARD, D.D S., Petersburg, Va.
SAML. SEVIER, D.D.S, Tuscumbia, Ala.
T P. THOMPSON, D.D.S, Providence, R.I.
PROF. R. N. WRIGHT, M.D., Baltimore, Md.
JOHN WAYLAN, D.D.S., Lancaster, Pa.
H. N. WADSWORTH, D.D.S, Washington, D.C.
C. C. WILLIAMS, D.D.S., Philadelphia, Pa.

The JOURNAL is edited by CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D., D.D.S., and A. SNOWDEN PIGGOT, M.D. The volume or year commences in January.

TERMS OF SUBSCRIPTION, $5 per Annum. Two Copies will be furnished for $9, or one Copy for Two Years, if paid for in advance.

93107

1045

18q

med — ~~2.50~~

L.S.L.

Dental list